

# Cindex™ for Mac® 3.0



## USER'S GUIDE

---

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice, and does not represent a commitment on the part of Indexing Research. The program described in this document is provided under a license agreement and may be used only in accordance with the terms of that agreement. Neither the program nor this guide may be copied in any form for any purpose other than the personal use of the purchaser.

Cindex™ Copyright © 1996-2012 Indexing Research. All rights reserved.  
Cindex is a trademark of Indexing Research.

Apple, Mac, Macintosh, are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

If you have comments about Cindex or about this Guide, please contact Indexing Research.

E-mail: [info@indexres.com](mailto:info@indexres.com) Web: <http://www.indexres.com/>

First printing: April 2012

---

## *Cindex 3.4 Update*

---

These notes describes capabilities and features of Cindex™ added since the publication of the Cindex 3.0 User's Guide. The changes were introduced in various versions through Cindex 3.4.

You should read these notes in conjunction with the User's Guide.

### **Language Support**

Cindex 3.4 provides more support for indexing in languages other than English.

Cindex can work with entries that contain multiple scripts, for example Cyrillic, Hebrew, Chinese. When an index uses more than one script, Cindex normally follows a Unicode standard to determine the sorting precedence of letters and other characters (Latin letters have the highest precedence, followed by Greek letters, then letters and characters from other scripts).

When you choose a language for sorting, you can specify that characters from the script for that language have precedence over characters from other scripts, so that entries in that script will be placed ahead of entries in all other scripts. To set this check Language Script has Precedence (this is always checked if the sort language uses the Latin alphabet). When Language Script has Precedence is unchecked, Cindex uses the default script ordering.

If you are working in a right-to-left reading language such as Arabic or Hebrew, Cindex will lay out entries correctly as long as it knows the language you are using. Specify the language via Sort settings in the Tools menu. You can override the natural layout by choosing from the Text Alignment submenu in the Character menu (Windows) or the Format menu (Mac).

---

### **Labeling Records**

When you label or unlabel a record Cindex no longer automatically marks the record as 'modified' (i.e., it does not update the date stamp and user identifier). If you prefer to have the record marked as modified you can set a new preference (Preferences->Editing->Label Sets Change Flag).

### **Keyboard Shortcut**

There is a new keyboard shortcut for adding or removing small caps: Ctrl+Q (Windows) or Command+Shift+C (Mac).

# *Contents*

---

<b>CHAPTER 1</b>	<b>Overview</b>	<b>1</b>
	Major Features of Cindex	1
	How to Use This Guide	4
	On-Screen Help	5
	Updates	5
	Cindex Documents	5
<b>CHAPTER 2</b>	<b>Starting an Index</b>	<b>7</b>
	The Elements of an Index	7
	Creating and Saving Indexes	8
	Setting Preferences	11
<b>CHAPTER 3</b>	<b>Adding and Editing Entries</b>	<b>15</b>
	Index Records	15
	Making New Entries	18
	Editing Existing Entries	33
	Working Efficiently with Records	34
	Using Function Keys	43
	Abbreviations	43
	Duplicating Records	47
	Deleting and Restoring Records	49
	Labeling Records	49
<b>CHAPTER 4</b>	<b>Viewing, Finding and Printing Entries</b>	<b>53</b>
	Views	53
	Selecting Entries	61
	Working with Subsets of Records	62

Finding Entries .....	65
Printing Entries .....	78
<b>CHAPTER 5     Advanced Editing .....</b>	<b>81</b>
Searching for and Replacing Text .....	81
Adjusting References .....	86
Reconciling Heading Levels .....	91
<b>CHAPTER 6     Checking Spelling .....</b>	<b>95</b>
Checking Words in Entries .....	95
Checking Only Part of the Index .....	99
Spelling Options .....	101
<b>CHAPTER 7     Cross-References .....</b>	<b>105</b>
How Cindex Identifies Cross-References .....	105
Verifying Cross-References .....	108
Converting Cross-References to Fully-Qualified Entries .....	111
Generating Cross-References Automatically .....	113
Placing and Formatting Cross-References .....	115
<b>CHAPTER 8     Page References .....</b>	<b>123</b>
How Cindex Identifies Locators .....	123
Working Efficiently with Page References .....	127
Checking Page References .....	128
Evaluating and Sorting Page References .....	128
Formatting Page References .....	136
<b>CHAPTER 9     Sorting Entries .....</b>	<b>145</b>
Language .....	145
Field Evaluation Order .....	145
Alphabetical Sorting .....	149
Overriding Sorting Rules for Individual Entries .....	158
<b>CHAPTER 10    Formatting the Index .....</b>	<b>165</b>
Margins and Columns .....	165

Headers and Footers . . . . .	168
Grouping Entries . . . . .	170
Style and Layout of Entries . . . . .	172
Typography and Punctuation of Headings . . . . .	180
Style Sheets . . . . .	183
 <b>CHAPTER 11    Exchanging Documents with Other Applications . . . . .</b>	 <b>185</b>
Saving Formatted Indexes . . . . .	185
Managing Markup Tags . . . . .	191
Direct Transfer of Index Entries . . . . .	198
Saving Index Records . . . . .	199
Importing Records . . . . .	203
 <b>CHAPTER 12    Managing Index Documents . . . . .</b>	 <b>209</b>
Specifying the Structure of Records . . . . .	209
Managing Fonts . . . . .	212
Specifying Attributes of New Indexes . . . . .	214
Getting Information About Indexes . . . . .	215
Expanding Index Entries . . . . .	219
Compressing Index Entries . . . . .	220
Managing Groups . . . . .	223
Cumulating and Combining Indexes . . . . .	225
Breaking an Index into Parts . . . . .	227
 <b>CHAPTER 13    Patterns . . . . .</b>	 <b>229</b>
Forming Patterns . . . . .	229
Using Patterns with Find . . . . .	239
Using Patterns when Replacing Text . . . . .	239
Using Patterns when Altering References . . . . .	245
 <b>CHAPTER 14    Reference . . . . .</b>	 <b>249</b>
Scope of Operations . . . . .	249
Cindex Menu . . . . .	251
File Menu . . . . .	258
Edit Menu . . . . .	263

---

**Contents**

View Menu..... 272

Format Menu..... 274

Document Menu ..... 275

Tools Menu ..... 290

Index..... **305**



## CHAPTER 1    *Overview*

---

Cindex™ is a uniquely capable program for preparing indexes to books, newspapers and other periodical publications. It offers the professional indexer unmatched features and ease of use. You can also use it to prepare glossaries, or to create subject authority lists based on existing indexes. Cindex does not replace you as the indexer, but supports you through a host of features that greatly simplify index preparation and enable you to produce the finest indexes in virtually any format.

In many respects Cindex behaves like a word-processing program—it displays the index in a document window, formatted like a printed index, and you can explore and move through this document as you would any document on a word-processor. In other fundamental respects Cindex is unlike a word-processor. For example, when you make a new index entry, you do not type into the document directly, but into a *record*—analogous to an index card—and Cindex, following alphabetizing rules you have specified, determines where this entry will appear in the index.

### MAJOR FEATURES OF CINDEX

---

#### Instant, Automatic Alphabetizing

As you make or change entries, Cindex instantly alphabetizes them, and you see your index in alphabetical order as you work with it. You may sort entries using letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing (following language-specific conventions), or by order of page references or by date. If you wish, Cindex will alphabetize main headings and place subheadings in ascending or descending order of page number. Numbers and symbols appearing in entries are ignored or evaluated at your option. Cindex automatically ignores any of a selected set of

---

## Major Features of Cindex

words (usually leading prepositions), or any phrases that you mark for special handling. You can override the standard sorting rules when you need to.

### Automatic Formatting

You do not format or punctuate entries as you enter them, or merge duplicate entries or arrange cross-references; Cindex does all these things automatically, providing you with a fully up-to-date index at all times. You have full control over the appearance of the finished index, which you can see on the screen exactly as it will appear on paper. You can choose from several formats in addition to the standard indented and run-in (paragraph) styles. Special formatting options make Cindex ideal for the production of magazine or newspaper indexes.

### Documents for Typesetting

Cindex can provide finished indexes as documents designed for word-processing programs, and document layout programs. Cindex will also make fully marked-up XML and SGML documents. You can define your own markup tags for particular publishers.

### Embedding Index Entries

Cindex can embed index entries directly in word-processing documents (for example, those used by Microsoft Word), so that page numbers and index formatting can be provided by the word-processor.

### Instant Recall of Words and Phrases

If you use a certain phrase often in an index—such as a standard subheading for a magazine index, or a clinical condition in a medical index—you can create an abbreviation to represent it. When you type the abbreviation, Cindex will instantly recall the full word or phrase that it represents. You can keep different sets of abbreviations for different kinds of indexes.

### Search and Replace

You can find any entry instantly by specifying the letters it starts with, or you can find any word or phrase in the index regardless of its position in the entry. You can make a conditional search for words and phrases—for example the presence of “friends” *and* “foes” in the same entry. In addition to searching for and replacing specific words or phrases, Cindex allows you to search for *patterns* of characters. For example, you might want to find “any word beginning with an uppercase letter and ending in ‘ing,’” or “any four-digit number beginning with 19 and enclosed in parentheses.” A global search and replace function allows you to modify entries quickly and easily throughout the index.

---

## Major Features of Cindex

Powerful Spelling Check	Cindex includes a powerful spell-checker that quickly finds and helps you correct misspelled words. Dictionaries for many languages are freely available.
Working with Groups of Records	If you want to work with only a subset of the entries in the index (for example, those for a particular chapter), Cindex can act as though these are the only records in the index.
Cross-References	Cindex will place cross-references (e.g., <i>See</i> and <i>See also</i> ) immediately following main headings or as the first or last subheadings, as you prefer. Cindex will automatically apply designated typographical effects (e.g., <i>italics</i> ) to text forming the lead to a cross-reference or the body of it, and will punctuate the cross-references automatically in any way you require. It will also check your cross-references and will provide a list of questionable ones and ones that are of the wrong type or refer to missing entries. Cindex will also tell you which entries have references made <i>to</i> them, it can generate cross-references automatically when it encounters terms you specify, and it can convert cross-references to fully-qualified entries.
Page References	Cindex handles page references in virtually any form, including mixed Roman and Arabic numerals, dates (including names of months) and multi-part references of the kind often found in periodicals. Cindex can sort dates and complex references in virtually any way you might want, no matter how they are entered in records. When Cindex displays or prints the formatted index it will arrange references in ascending or descending order, and will abbreviate them (for example, printing 321–325 as 321–25), conflate them (for example, printing 23, 24, 25–26 as 23–26) and suppress component parts as you require. If a publisher adds or removes pages in a book that you have already indexed, Cindex can adjust page references automatically. Cindex can also check whether entries contain too many unqualified references.
Managing Subheadings	Cindex can identify entries that contain orphaned subheadings, or unnecessary levels of subheading. If you wish Cindex will automatically convert redundant subheadings to modifiers of the heading at the level above. Cindex will also identify modified headings that should properly be organized as heading and subheading, and if you wish will make that conversion too.

---

## How to Use This Guide

### Work on Indexes Concurrently

Cindex allows you to work on multiple indexes concurrently, so that, for example, you can prepare author and subject indexes together as you work through a book. You can instantly move from one index to the other as you make or modify entries.

### Cumulations and Spin- off Indexes

Should the need arise, you can combine (cumulate) separate indexes into one large one, and Cindex will automatically merge the entries. You can just as easily split a large index into parts.

### Importing and Exporting Entries

Cindex can import index records from, and export records to, XML documents and plain text documents of the kind produced by database programs. Cindex can also import records stored in the formats exported by the indexing programs *Sky Index* and *Macrex*.

---

## HOW TO USE THIS GUIDE

This Guide to Cindex is organized in two parts. Chapters 1 through 13 take you through the steps required to make an index, explaining features at each stage. Chapter 14 provides a reference to all the capabilities of Cindex, organized by the menus in which they appear. Use the first part to familiarize yourself with Cindex and what it can do for you; use the reference to find explanations of menu commands and pointers to tutorial discussions (these pointers appear in square brackets beside each item in the reference).

The *Guide* assumes you are familiar with your Mac, with the mouse, and with menus and panels. It also assumes that you understand folders and that you know how to start an application program. These features of the Mac are explained in help provided with your computer.

## Notational Conventions

This *Guide* uses the following conventions:

<b>Tempo Font</b>	Identifies a menu item or an item in a panel.
SMALL CAPS	Identifies a keystroke or keystroke combination that you type.
[ <i>NV</i> ]	Reference (Chapter 14). Identifies the page on which a topic is discussed fully.

## ON-SCREEN HELP

---

Cindex provides comprehensive on-screen help. Choose **Cindex Help** from the Help menu.

Most of the panels that Cindex displays have a ? button. Click the button to learn more about the function of the panel.

## UPDATES

---

From time-to-time Indexing Research releases updates to improve the performance of Cindex. When Cindex is installed it is set to check automatically for updates. If an update is available Cindex will notify you and ask if it should download the update. You can turn off the automatic check if you prefer not to be notified (see “Checking for Updates” on page 12).

## CINDEX DOCUMENTS

---

Cindex makes and uses several different kinds of files on your computer. Each type of file has a distinctive icon associated with it. The following paragraphs introduce these documents. Later sections of this *Guide* describe fully the various kinds of documents that they represent.

---

## Cindex Documents

### Indexes



Index files hold index entries, from which you produce the finished index. Index files, which carry the filename extension `.ucdx`, work with both Cindex for Mac and Cindex for Windows.

### XML Records



XML Record files hold index entries in a open format suitable for interchange with any software that parses XML. XML Record files carry the filename extension `.ixml`.

### Archives



Archive files hold index records in a compressed form. Archives cannot represent the full range of accented letters and symbols accommodated by Cindex 3, and are recommended only for interchange with earlier versions of Cindex (both Mac and Windows). Archive files carry the filename extension `.arc`.

### Templates



Template files hold models of indexes. They contain all the information about how entries should be formatted and sorted, etc., but contain no entries. Template files, which carry the filename extension `.utpl`, work with both Cindex for Mac and Cindex for Windows.

### Style Sheets



Style sheets contain information about the style of an index and how index entries are formatted and laid out on a page. You can keep different style sheets for different layouts. Style sheets files, which carry the filename extension `.ustl` work with both Cindex for Mac and Cindex for Windows.

### Abbreviations



Abbreviation files hold abbreviations you have defined to represent long words or phrases. You can insert the word or phrase in an index entry merely by typing its abbreviation. You can maintain different sets of abbreviations for different purposes. Abbreviation files work only with Cindex for Mac, and carry the filename extension `.abrf`.

## CHAPTER 2    *Starting an Index*

---

### THE ELEMENTS OF AN INDEX

---

A Cindex index is a collection of *entries* that you can view and print in any form you wish and in any order you wish. Each entry is a complete reference to some material in the work being indexed. Cindex maintains each index entry as a distinct entity in the document, so that it can display entries in the style and order that you prefer.

An index entry consists of a *heading* and one or more *locators* (usually page numbers, sometimes cross-references to other entries) that show where the indexed material can be found. An entry may contain *subheadings* as well as headings. Subheadings are used to avoid making unqualified headings that would otherwise contain too many locators.

Cindex can display and print entries in any order and in a wide variety of formats, as long as you prepare entries in a standard way. To help you do this, Cindex uses *records* to hold the text of index entries. A record always contains a heading and a page reference or a cross-reference; it may also contain one or more subheadings.

A record is usually, but not always, equivalent to an index entry. When Cindex displays or prints a formatted index it may combine several records (identical except perhaps for page references or cross-references) to form a single entry.

## CREATING AND SAVING INDEXES

---

### *Creating the Index*

To start a new index choose **New...** from the File menu. Cindex will display a panel that asks you to name the index. (Unlike a word-processor, Cindex cannot work with a new “untitled” document—you must create and name a new document before you make entries). It is often useful to give the index a name that identifies the material being indexed.

When you click **Save**, Cindex will open a new document window in which the index entries are displayed as you make them. Most of your commerce with the index will be through this window. When you close this window, Cindex closes and saves the index document.

### Standard Settings

To make a properly organized index out of a collection of records, Cindex needs to know how the entries held in records should be sorted (for example, alphabetically, or in order of page number) and how they should be formatted for display (for example, in indented style, or in run-in style). Cindex also needs to know what restrictions (if any) you want to place on the contents of entries (for example, it can require that locators conform to some specification, or that entries may not have sub-subheadings).

When you create a new index, Cindex endows it with standard settings. These settings are initially taken from a special set built into Cindex. You can change both the standard settings and the settings for individual indexes:

To review or change the way in which entries are sorted, see Chapter 9 “Sorting Entries” on page 145.

To review or change the way in which entries are formatted, see Chapter 10 “Formatting the Index” on page 165.

To review or change the properties of index records, see Chapter 12 “Managing Index Documents” on page 209.



### Using Templates

Cindex can create a new index from a template—an existing index that serves as a model for the new one. The new index inherits all its settings from the template. “Using Templates” on page 215 explains how to set up and use templates.

### *Setting an Index Aside*

To close an index at any time click the close button in its main window, or choose **Close** from the File menu. Cindex automatically saves changes to the index, and remembers the size and position of its window. To close all open indexes and quit Cindex, choose **Quit** from the File menu.

### Backing-up Your Work

When you finish a session of work on an index always make a copy of it (preferably on some other disk). You can copy an index using the Finder, or you can use Cindex to save a copy of any index you have open for work.

To save an exact copy of the active index, choose **Save A Copy...** from the File menu.

You can make a plain text document that contains all the information about the content of entries (though not information about the document format, or about how the index entries are alphabetized) by choosing **Save To...** from the File menu, then selecting **XML Records** format. For more information see “XML Records” on page 200.

### Saving Changes

As you add or modify index entries, Cindex automatically saves them. To allow you to work quickly, however, Cindex does not do this immediately for every small change you make. Cindex is initially set to save changes automatically every ten minutes; you can change that interval, or you can disable automatic saving. See “Automatically Saving Changes” on page 12.

### *Opening an Existing Index*

To open an existing index, choose **Open...** from the File menu. Cindex displays a list showing the names of indexes it can open. Click the index name to select it in

the displayed list, then click **Open**. To open an index from the Finder (and start Cindex if necessary), double click its icon.

To open a recently-used index choose from **Open Recent** in the File menu.

You can configure Cindex so that when you start it up it will automatically open the last index you worked on. See “Opening an Index on Startup” on page 11.

### Checking Index Integrity

Cindex checks the integrity of each index it opens. If Cindex finds errors or damage it will ask if should attempt repairs. It is generally advisable to allow this. If records have been damaged Cindex will report the number of repairs made and will “mark” the repaired records so that you can later find and examine them. For more information on marked records see “Marked Records” on page 83

### Preserving and Discarding Changes

For each open index Cindex keeps a private copy that it updates each time it saves the index automatically, or you save the index with **Save**. If you make changes to an index and then wish to discard them, you can restore the index to its last-saved state by choosing **Revert to Saved** from the File menu.

To save an exact copy of the active index at any time, choose **Save A Copy...** from the File menu.

## *Working with Several Indexes*

Cindex allows you to work on multiple indexes concurrently (for example, subject and author indexes to the same volume), while keeping each index completely separate from the others. Choose **New...** or **Open...** from the File menu to create or open each index you want to work on.

If you have more than one index open, Cindex operates only on the index whose window is active; to make an inactive index active, click its window, or select it by name from the Window menu.

## SETTING PREFERENCES

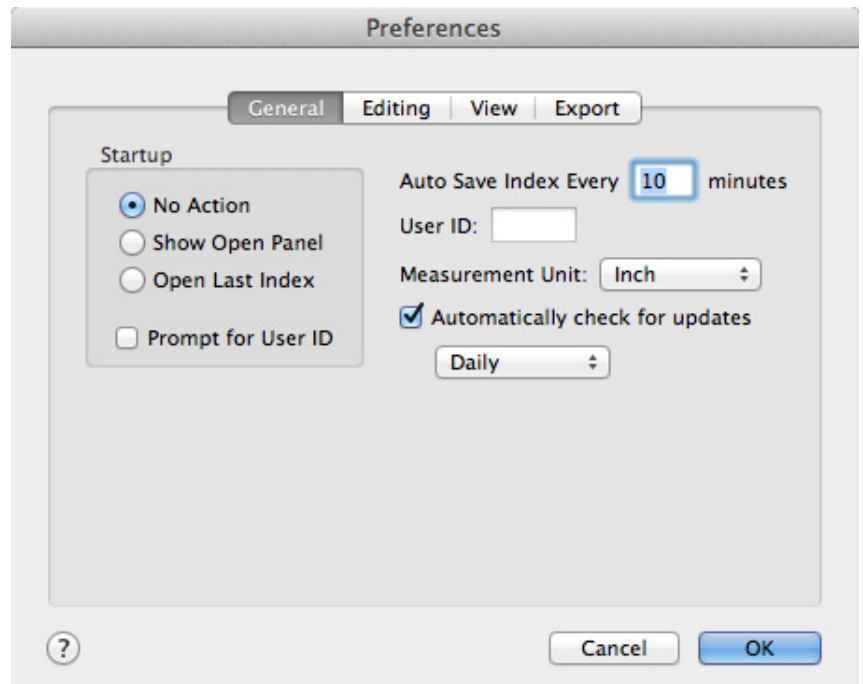
---

You can customize Cindex to suit your preferences. Some settings govern how Cindex deals with all index documents; others pertain to individual indexes.

### *Setting General Preferences*

#### Opening an Index on Startup

You can set Cindex so that when you start it by double-clicking its icon (rather than by opening one of its documents with the Finder), it will automatically open the last index you worked on or will display a panel through which you can open a document. To specify how Cindex should behave when it starts, choose **Preferences...** from the Cindex menu (Figure 1).



**FIGURE 1.** Setting General Preferences

---

---

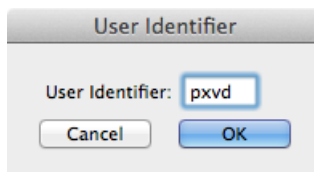
## Setting Preferences

Under **Startup**, click **Open Last Index** or **Show Open Panel**.

### Identifying the Indexer

Cindex can include in each record information that identifies the person who made or modified the record. To include such information in records, choose **Preferences...** from the Cindex menu (Figure 1 on page 11) and enter up to four identifying characters at **User ID**. Cindex will attach the identifier to each record you make or modify (this information is not part of the record text).

If you want to use a different identifier in different sessions with Cindex, check **Prompt for User ID**. Each time you start Cindex it will display a panel (Figure 2) through which you can enter your identifying initials.



**FIGURE 2.** Specifying the User Identifier

---

### Automatically Saving Changes

Set **Auto Save Index Every...** to the interval at which you want Cindex automatically to save changes to your index. If you set the interval to 0, Cindex will not save changes automatically. Regardless of your setting, Cindex always saves changes when you close an index or end your session. To save changes to the document at any time choose **Save** from the File menu.

### Checking for Updates

Check **Automatically check for updates** to let Cindex check automatically and notify you when an update is available from Indexing Research. If you turn off the automatic check you can at any time check for an update by choosing **Check for Update** from the Cindex menu.

### Default Font and Size

When you start a new index Cindex establishes a default font and size in which all entries are displayed, except for parts explicitly marked for display in some other font. The default font is initially set to Helvetica, 12 point, though you can change it at any time. For more information See “Fonts and Styles” on page 31.

---

## Setting Preferences

### Editing Records

Cindex provides several features for simplifying the editing of records, and checking for mistakes you might make while entering them. These settings, made through the Preferences panel, are described in “Working Efficiently with Records” on page 34.

### *Setting Preferences for Individual Indexes*

Three broad classes of settings govern the way Cindex works with individual indexes.

### Views

Cindex provides several settings that allow you to specify what parts of an index it should display, and how it should display them. You make these settings through the View menu. Chapter 4 “Viewing, Finding and Printing Entries” on page 53 provides information on views.

### Style and Layout

Cindex can display formatted index entries in several styles (for example, indented or run-in) laid out on pages in different ways. Chapter 10 “Formatting the Index” on page 165 describes the formatting options.

### Sorting

Cindex can sort entries in whichever way you prefer (for example, alphabetically, or by order of page reference). Chapter 9 “Sorting Entries” on page 145 explains how to set up the sort order you prefer.

### *Toolbars*

Cindex provides toolbars with buttons that execute some of the most often-used commands. One toolbar is displayed at the top of the main index window. A second toolbar appears when you add or edit entries. You can customize both toolbars.

To move a button drag it while holding down the COMMAND key. To remove a button, drag it off the toolbar while holding down the COMMAND key.

To add or restore buttons, separators and spaces to the toolbar in the active window, choose **Customize Toolbar...** from the View menu.

---

## Setting Preferences

To hide or show a toolbar, click the rounded rectangular button at the top right-hand corner of the window, or choose **Hide/Show Toolbar** from the View menu.

## *CHAPTER 3 Adding and Editing Entries*

---

This chapter describes how to make and edit index entries. As you work on your index, you might need more information than is provided here. The following chapters provide full discussions of topics mentioned here:

- For information on cross-references, see Chapter 7 “Cross-References” on page 105.
- For information on page references, see Chapter 8 “Page References” on page 123.
- For information on sorting entries, see Chapter 9 “Sorting Entries” on page 145.

### INDEX RECORDS

---

#### *The Need for Records*

Consider the following fragment from an index to a book on neurology:

Homonymous hemianopsias, 215  
pituitary tumors and, 222, 225-227f

This contains two entries (there are references to two distinct topics) and were you preparing entries on index cards you would make them initially on two separate cards. One card would contain the entry

Homonymous hemianopsias, 215

---

## Index Records

and the other would contain the entry

**Homonymous hemianopsias  
pituitary tumors and, 222, 225-227f**

If you did not use two cards, but prepared both entries on a single card, as in the first illustration, any entry you made later, such as

**Homonymous hemianopsias  
optic tract damage causing, 312**

could not easily be fitted between the other two. So that Cindex can rearrange headings as you add and remove entries, each distinct entry (a heading with one or more subheadings and a locator such as a page reference, or cross-reference) must occupy its own record.

### Record Structure

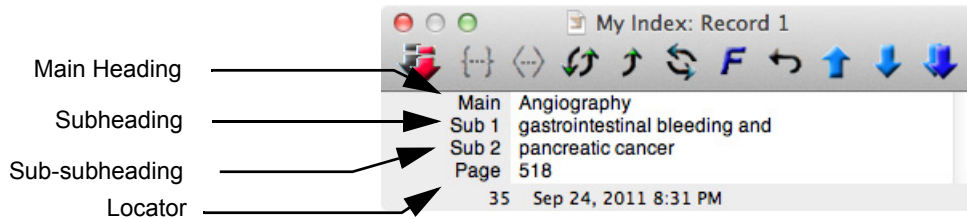
You can think of a record as a computerized index card on which you type the entry, just as you would type an entry on an ordinary card. Cindex assigns a number to each record you make. This number serves merely to identify the record—it is not part of the content of the record—and reflects the order of the record's addition to the index. You can (but need not) use record numbers in locating and managing index entries. Records generally retain their numbers permanently.

The entry you make in a record must have a heading and will usually (though need not) have a locator. The entry may have a subheading and sub-subheadings. Each distinct element of an entry (heading, subheading, etc.) occupies a separate *field* of a record. Each field has a name that indicates the kind of element it contains.



---

## Index Records



**FIGURE 3.** The record window, showing a record with four fields

---

Figure 3 shows a record with four fields (three heading fields and a locator field), each labeled to identify its contents. Cindex provides default names for the fields of records. You can provide your own names if you prefer. For more information on this see “Specifying Field Names, Sizes and Contents” on page 211.

By keeping elements of entries segregated in fields, Cindex can arrange and manipulate entries in exactly the way you want. For example, Cindex can sort page references in a wide variety of formats, and can alter or remove page references selectively. It can also combine, conflate and abbreviate references to identical headings. To accomplish these things Cindex has to know what part of the record contains the page reference. To ensure that Cindex can always identify references, these are placed in a separate locator field (often called the Page field).

Every record must have a field for a main heading and a field for a locator. The locator field (called the Page field in the window shown in Figure 3) is always the last field in a record. Between the main heading and the locator there can be other fields for a subheading, sub-subheading, sub-sub-subheading, etc. When Cindex is installed it is set up to accept records with up to four levels of heading (i.e., records that might contain sub-sub-subheadings) plus a locator. If you want your index to accommodate more levels of heading, you can increase the number, up to fifteen. See “Specifying the Structure of Records” on page 209.

Cindex normally allows records to contain a variable number of fields. Every record contains at least two (for the main heading and the locator), but Cindex

---

## Making New Entries

normally adds fields for subheadings only when you need them. Some kinds of indexes require every entry to be organized with a fixed number of headings. If you are preparing an index of this sort you can set Cindex so that records in the index will always have a fixed number of fields. See “Specifying the Structure of Records” on page 209.

Some publishers require that headings conform to certain specifications—for example, they must not contain more than a specified number of characters, or may not contain particular characters. You can, if you wish, place constraints on the characters Cindex will accept in particular fields of records. See “Specifying Field Names, Sizes and Contents” on page 211.

An index record can hold only a certain number of characters. When Cindex is installed, this number is set to 100, which is adequate for many indexing purposes. You can increase this number whenever you need to. See “Specifying the Structure of Records” on page 209.

## MAKING NEW ENTRIES

---

This section illustrates the steps in making a record, using as an example an entry that when formatted would appear as:

Homonymous hemianopsias  
parietal lobe lesions and, 222, 225-227f

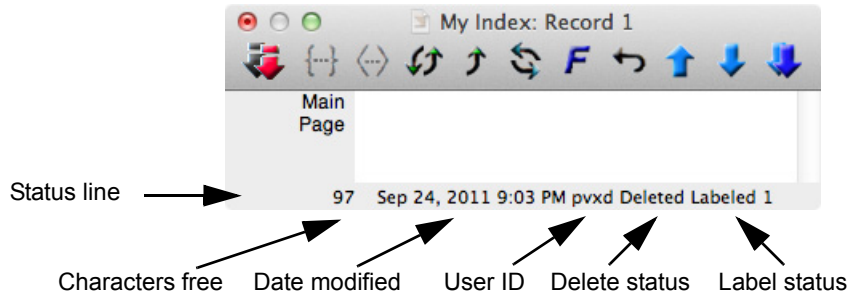
To begin a new entry, choose **New Record** from the Edit menu. Cindex will open a record entry window like the one in Figure 4, in which you type the text of the entry. You can set the window to any convenient size by dragging the box at its lower right corner. You can position the window by dragging its title bar.

The toolbar underneath the title contains tools that control how the index is displayed. Figure 4 shows the standard arrangement of tools; you can add or remove tools (and specify how they are displayed) by choosing **Customize Toolbar...** from the View menu. To learn the function of a tool, move the mouse pointer over it.

---

## Making New Entries

While you are working in a record you can use any of the shortcuts shown in Table 1.



**FIGURE 4.** Elements of the record entry window

---

The record entry window is divided into three parts: at the top, a toolbar, in the middle, an area where you type the entry; at the bottom, a status line. The status line shows, at left, the number of characters you can add to the record, then the date and time at which the record was last modified. Sometimes Cindex displays additional status information.

Follow these steps to make the record:

1. Type the heading *Homonymous hemianopsias* beside the 'Main' prompt. Cindex provides all the standard editing capabilities for you to select and correct text as you type it. You can clear, cut, copy, or paste text by choosing the appropriate item from the Edit menu. Cindex provides additional shortcuts for working with words or fields as units of text. Table 1 on page 20 summarizes these.

As you enter characters in the record (or remove them), the display in the status line changes to show how much space you have used and how much is available in the record (Figure 4). If you use all the space Cindex will warn you with a beep, and will not allow you to enter further characters. The section "Changing Record Size" on page 210 describes what to do if you find that a record cannot hold the text that you want to enter.

## Making New Entries

Key(s)	Action
↓	Move insertion point to next line [plus SHIFT to select]
↑	Move insertion point to previous line [plus SHIFT to select]
COMMAND ↓	Move insertion point to last line
COMMAND ↑	Move insertion point to first line
←	Move insertion point back one character [plus SHIFT to select]
→	Move insertion point forward one character [plus SHIFT to select]
OPTION ←	Move insertion point back one word [plus SHIFT to select]
OPTION →	Move insertion point forward one word [plus SHIFT to select]
OPTION ↓	Move insertion point to end of field (or next field if at end) [plus SHIFT to select]
OPTION ↑	Move insertion point to start of field (or previous field if at start) [plus SHIFT to select]
TAB	Move insertion point to start of next field
SHIFT TAB	Move insertion point to start of previous field
OPTION DELETE	Delete text to start of word
OPTION DEL	Delete text to end of word
COMMAND DELETE	Delete text to start of field
COMMAND DEL	Delete text to end of field
CONTROL +	Exchange heading at insertion point and the one below it (Full flip) [with SHIFT reverses the Smart Flip preference setting]
CONTROL -	Replace heading at insertion point with the one below it (Half flip)
CONTROL ]	Increase by 1 the last page reference in the locator field
CONTROL [	Decrease by 1 the last page reference in the locator field
CONTROL SHIFT S	Exchange the leading text in a field with parenthesized text that follows
CONTROL N	(N is a number key). Inserts text of heading level N from the last-edited record
CONTROL 0	Insert text of locator field from the last-edited record
CONTROL F	Set selected text in default font
COMMAND RETURN	Enter new/changed record in index, close window
ENTER (keypad)	Enter new/changed record in index, close window
PAGE DOWN	Enter new/changed record, move to next
OPTION PAGE DOWN	Enter new/changed record, leave a copy as a new record

**TABLE 1.** Shortcuts for managing text in the record entry window

---

## Making New Entries

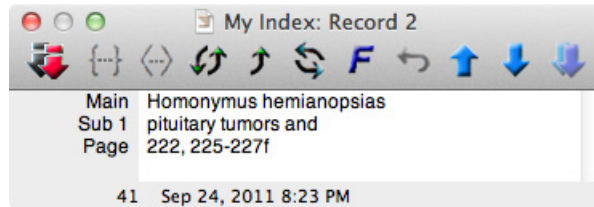
Key(s)	Action
PAGE UP	Enter new/changed record, move to previous
ESC	Discard changes to record, close window
OPTION ESC	Restore record to its initial state
Mouse	To select a word, double-click it. To select a whole field, triple-click it. To extend the current selection in a unit of the size last selected, SHIFT-click.

**TABLE 1.** Shortcuts for managing text in the record entry window

2. To complete the heading and create a field for a subheading, hit the RETURN key. Beside the 'Sub1' prompt type the subheading `pituitary tumors` and . Do not type leading spaces to indent it. This is unnecessary because Cindex produces the indentations automatically when it displays or prints the formatted entry. If you leave leading or trailing spaces in any part of a record, Cindex will remove them when it saves the record.  
  
Each time you hit RETURN Cindex opens a field for a new level of heading. You can break any field (except the very last field) into two new fields by hitting RETURN; you can combine two fields by placing the entry point at the beginning of the second and hitting DELETE. If you leave any fields empty, Cindex will remove unnecessary ones when it saves the record in the index.
3. When you have completed the subheading, click to the right of the 'Page' prompt (or hit TAB) to move the text entry point to the locator field. Insert as many references as you want (up to the limit of the available space in the record), separating each from the next by a comma. You need not insert spaces between adjacent references and can save space by not doing so; Cindex will generate the spaces between the references automatically when it displays the formatted index. When you have finished with the record, it should resemble the one shown in Figure 5.

---

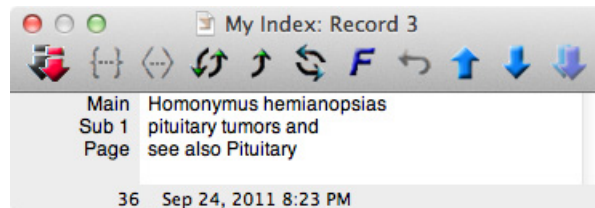
## Making New Entries



**FIGURE 5.** A record with a heading, subheading, and page references

---

A similar entry with a cross-reference might look like this:



**FIGURE 6.** A record with a heading, subheading, and a cross-reference

---

## Characters

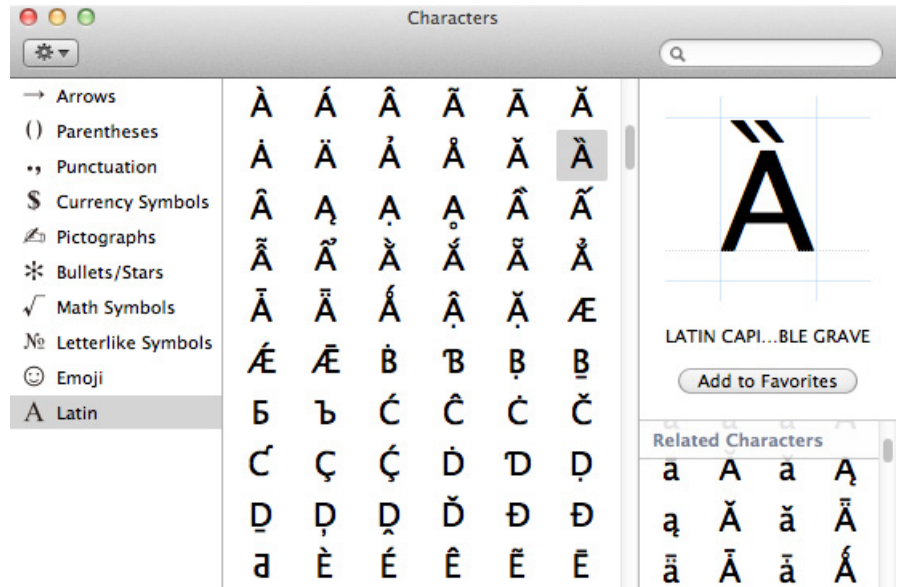
### Accented Letters and Symbols

Cindex uses Unicode to represent characters. A record may contain any character that you can type on the keyboard (including characters your form when you hit a key while holding down the OPTION key). You can also choose characters from the character palette. Choose **Special Characters...** from the Edit menu. Cindex will display the palette shown in Figure 7.

To insert a character from the palette into a record, click in the record window at the place where you want to insert the character, then double-click the character in the palette.

---

## Making New Entries



**FIGURE 7.** Character Palette

---

### Reserved Characters

The characters `<` `>` `{` `}` `~` and `\` have special significance in the sorting of entries (“Overriding Sorting Rules for Individual Entries” on page 158 explains their functions). To include one of these characters as a literal character in a record, place `\` immediately before it. Thus, to use `\` as a literal character you would type `\\` in a record; to use `~` as a literal character you would type `\~`. When Cindex displays the index entry it shows only a single `\` or `~`.

### *Formatting and Punctuating Entries*

Headings and subheadings will sometimes be too long to fit on a single line in the record window, or too wide fit on a line in the main index window. You should not try to organize headings into lines of the proper length, nor should you worry about indenting runover lines or providing punctuation at the end of field (for example a comma that would appear before page references. Cindex

---

## Making New Entries

automatically breaks long lines, indents runover lines and inserts appropriate punctuation when it displays or prints the formatted index, following a document layout specified for the index. Cindex will not be able to format an entry properly if you provide leading or trailing punctuation in record fields. For information on how to specify the document layout see “Formatting the Index” on page 165.

There is generally no limit to the length of text in a single field (providing it is less than the total record size) and if you type beyond the edge of the record window Cindex will wrap the heading around to the next line (you can set the size of the window to display the text in the way you prefer). How Cindex breaks lines of text in the record window has no bearing on the appearance of the entry in the formatted index. Use the RETURN key only to indicate the end of a heading or subheading; do not use it to break a long line of text at the edge of the window.

### *Saving a New Entry*

When you have completed your entry, hit COMMAND RETURN (or ENTER on the keypad). Cindex will close the window and display the new record in the main document window, formatted in the manner dictated by current settings. If your record is empty Cindex will discard it automatically.

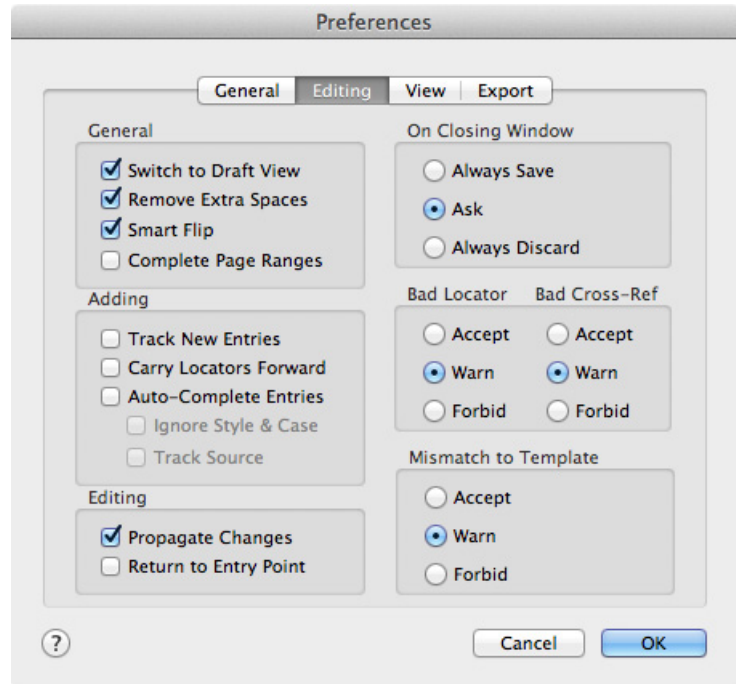
**NOTE:** To close the window and discard the entry hit ESC.

You can also save an entry by clicking the close button on the record window, or by choosing **Close** from the File menu. If you use either of these methods, Cindex normally asks if you want to save (or discard) the record. You can set Cindex so that it will not query you, but instead always discards changes to the record, or always saves changes to the record. To specify how Cindex should behave when you close the record window, choose **Preferences...** from the Cindex menu and click the Editing tab. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 8. Choose the behavior you want by clicking the appropriate item in the box labeled **On Closing Window**.



---

## Making New Entries



**FIGURE 8.** Preferences for adding and editing records

---

- If you click **Always Save**, Cindex will always save a record, no matter how you close the window.
- If you click **Ask**, (the default setting) Cindex will prompt you to decide what it should do if you close the window by clicking the close box or choose **Close** from the File menu.
- If you click **Always Discard**, Cindex will always discard changes if you close the window by clicking the close box or choose **Close** from the File menu (it always saves changes if you hit COMMAND RETURN, or ENTER on the keypad).

Cindex remembers your setting.

---

## Making New Entries

### Displaying New Entries

As you add each record to the index, Cindex displays it in the main window. If that is set to display index entries in draft view, Cindex will display a bullet beside the lowest level of heading in the new entry to indicate that the record has been changed during your current session with Cindex.

While you are adding new records, Cindex normally displays them in record-number order so that you can see the most recently-added records in their order of entry. If you prefer, Cindex will display each new record in its sorted position in the index.

To make Cindex display new entries in their sorted positions, choose **Preferences...** from the Cindex menu, and click the Editing tab. Cindex will display the window shown in Figure 8 on page 25. Check **Track New Entries**.

### Checking Entries

As you store each record Cindex checks for certain typographical errors. It automatically removes leading or trailing spaces in any field, and removes excess blank fields. If you have used parentheses or square brackets or quotation marks to enclose any part of a heading or any part of a page reference, Cindex checks for matching pairs. If it finds a mismatch, it will warn you with a beep and will highlight the field that contains the mismatched elements. If you really do want to leave the mismatched characters in a field, Cindex will accept the record when you make a second attempt to save it.

If you have enclosed text in < > or { } —special characters that Cindex uses to control the sorting of entries—Cindex checks that these occur in matched pairs in a field. If Cindex detects a mismatch, it will display a warning message and highlight the field that contains the mismatched elements. Cindex will not allow you to enter the record until you correct the error.

Cindex allows you to impose your own restrictions on the contents of individual fields of records—for example, you can stipulate that the locator field must contain only numerals. For information on how to do this see “Specifying Field Names, Sizes and Contents” on page 211. If you have imposed some restriction on the contents of a field, Cindex will warn you with a beep (and will highlight

---


## Making New Entries


the offending field) if you try to save a record that contains forbidden characters or character sequences.

### Stamping Records with Date and User Identifier



When you add a new record to the index, or modify an existing record, Cindex stamps it with the date and time at which the record was added or changed, and the user identifier (if any) you provided when you began your current session with Cindex. This information is held separately from the record text. When you view a record in the record window Cindex displays the date and time of modification, and the user identifier, in the status line at the foot of the window. You can find records by their date of modification. “Controlling the Scope of the Search” on page 71 explains how to do this.

### *Making a Series of Entries*

To make several new records in succession, save each new one in the index by hitting PAGE DOWN (or clicking ) rather than COMMAND RETURN. Cindex will save the record and clear the record window for a new one.

To save a new record and leave a copy of it as the foundation of another one, hit OPTION PAGE DOWN, or click .



### *Moving Through Entries*

When the record window is open you can click the  or  buttons, or use the PAGE DOWN and PAGE UP keys, to move forward or backward through the records displayed in the main index window, bringing each in turn into the record window. You can change the text of any record in the window; the changed record will be saved automatically when you move to another one. When you move beyond the last record in the index, Cindex will leave the record window empty for a new entry.

To edit any entry visible in the main document window, double click it, or click to select it and hit RETURN, or choose **Edit Record** from the Edit menu. Cindex will open the record entry window for you to make the changes you want. When

---

## Making New Entries

you are finished, hit COMMAND RETURN to save changes and close the window or click  or  (or hit PAGE UP or PAGE DOWN) to save the record and move to the previous or next one, or click OPTION PAGE DOWN to save the record and leave a copy as the foundation of a new one. To discard changes and close the window hit ESC.

### *Page References and Cross-References*

Cindex has powerful capabilities for searching among and modifying locators, for sorting multiple locators that follow a single entry, and for formatting them in different ways. (“Page References” on page 123, and “Cross-References” on page 105, describe what Cindex can do with page references and cross-references.) Cindex can employ its capabilities only if knows where to find locators, and how to recognize multiple locators when an entry contains them. The following paragraphs introduce some basic principles you should follow when making and editing entries.

To ensure that Cindex knows where to find locators (both page references and cross-references), always put them in the locator field of the record. The locator field is always the last field in a record.

To ensure that Cindex can display cross-references and page references in their correct positions in the formatted index (these positions can vary with the index style you choose), *do not mix cross-references and page references in the same record*. If an entry has both page references and cross-references, you should make two records that contain identical headings, one with page references in the locator field, the other with cross-references in the locator field. Cindex provides simple ways to duplicate a record so that you need not type it twice.

To ensure that Cindex can recognize multiple locators when you place more than one in the locator field, you should use a standard character to separate one reference from the next. This character should not be one that would ever appear within a locator. When parsing locator fields Cindex assumes that page references are separated from each other by a comma, and that cross-references are separated from each other by a semicolon. If you want to use other characters as

---

## Making New Entries

separators, you must designate them explicitly. “Specifying the Structure of Page References” on page 124 explains how to do this for page references; “Specifying the Structure of Cross-References” on page 106 explains how to do this for cross-references.

### Page References

To find or adjust page references, Cindex needs to know what character denotes an inclusive range (e.g., 55-57). Cindex normally recognizes a reference to an inclusive range of page references by the appearance of a hyphen between the numbers, but you can use another character if you wish. “Specifying the Structure of Page References” on page 124 explains how to change that character. When Cindex displays entries in the fully formatted view it can translate this separating character to some other character or sequence of characters. For example, Cindex can display as ‘55 to 57’ a reference that exists in a record as ‘55-57’. “Formatting Page References” on page 136 explains how to arrange this.

When you need to specify a range of page numbers (e.g., 237-239), always enter the range in full, even if your publisher wants it abbreviated (e.g., 237-9). Cindex can abbreviate references automatically when it formats entries; if you abbreviate references when you place them in records, Cindex might not always be able to find locators when you search for them.

Cindex will work fluently with compound locators that consist of multiple components, including dates, roman numerals and letters. If you use compound locators do ensure that the character you use to separate distinct references (the default character is a comma) does not appear within a reference.

When you put several page references in one locator field, you need not place them in ascending order. Cindex will sort them when it displays the formatted entries.

### Cross-References

Cindex recognizes a cross-reference by identifying its introductory phrase as one of the following: See, See also, See under, or See also under. If your index uses cross-references that begin with some other kind of introductory word or phrase, you must designate that explicitly. Chapter 7 “Cross-References” on page 105 explains how.

---

## Making New Entries

When you type a cross-reference, you need not apply a style to the introductory phrase. When Cindex displays formatted entries it can apply different designated styles automatically to the introductory phrase and to the body of a cross-reference.

When you put several cross-references in one locator field, you need not place them in alphabetical order. Cindex will sort them when it displays the formatted entries.

### *Comments, Web Addresses and Other Special Text*

You may want to attach to your index entries comments that should not appear in the finished index, or special text such as web addresses (URLs) that augment normal locators in the last fields of records. This is most easily achieved by reserving a record field for the purpose.

When you want records to contain special text that is not part of the normal entry you can assign a special attribute to the last subheading field (the one that immediately precede the locator field), and can place the special text in that field. When you assign the special attribute Cindex ensures that the last text field is always attached to the locator field, and cannot be joined to any other, or split into multiple fields. Subheadings you add to the record are always inserted above the special field.

Text in the special field can be hidden when you view the formatted index, and can be ignored in sorting entries.

To configure your index records to have a special last text field preceding the locator field see “Special Last Text Field” on page 211.

To suppress the display of this field in the formatted index see “Typography and Punctuation of Headings” on page 180.

To ignore the contents of this field when sorting entries see “Field Evaluation Order” on page 145.

### *Fonts and Styles*

#### Fonts

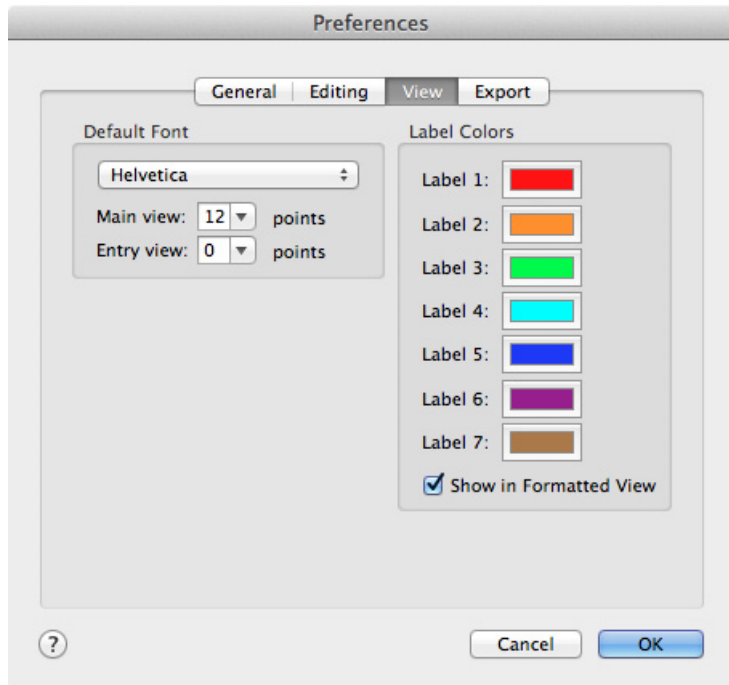
Except for parts of entries explicitly marked for display in a particular font, all entries are displayed in a standard font. When the main window for an index is active, you can change the standard font and type size by choosing from the appropriate drop down list in the main toolbar.

**NOTE:** When you start a new index Cindex establishes a standard font and size in which all entries are displayed. By default, Cindex also uses this font and size when it displays records for editing in the record window. The standard font is initially set to Helvetica, 12 point.

To change default fonts and sizes, choose **Preferences...** from the Cindex menu and click the View tab (Figure 9). Under Default Font use the popup menu to set the font that Cindex will assign initially when it creates a new index. At **Main View** set the size of text to be used initially for displaying entries in the main index window; at **Entry View** set the type size to be used when you work in the record window (you cannot change the type size locally within a record). If you set this to 0, Cindex will always set the text in the record window at the size used for display in the main window.

---

## Making New Entries



**FIGURE 9.** View Preferences

---

When you are working in the record window, you can set any part of an entry in a font of your choosing. Select the text you want to change, then choose **Show Fonts** from the Format menu. Cindex will display a font panel through which you can choose the font you want.

To restore to the standard font any segment of text set in some other font, select the text, then click **F** in the record window toolbar, or CONTROL-click and choose from the contextual menu.

### Styles

The default style for an index is plain text. You cannot apply another style to a complete index, but you can apply a style automatically to particular elements of



---

## Editing Existing Entries

entries. For example, Cindex can display all main headings in boldface capitals, regardless of how you entered the headings in records. Similarly, Cindex can display and print the introductory *See* or *See also* phrases of cross-references in a specified style (e.g., italics) and the body of a cross-reference in some other style, such as small caps. For more information about applying styles automatically to headings, see “Typography and Punctuation of Headings” on page 180; for information about applying styles to page references see “Formatting Page References” on page 136; for information about applying styles to cross-references, see “Placing and Formatting Cross-References” on page 115.

To apply a style to text in the record window, select the text, then choose the style from the Format menu or the contextual menu displayed when you right click or CONTROL-click in the record window. You can apply multiple styles to the selection. If you choose a style when no text is selected, that style will be applied to the next characters you type.

**NOTES:** If you apply the SMALL CAPS style, Cindex will display the text in the record window against a light gray background, with no change of case. In the main index window lowercase letters will appear as small uppercase letters.

Some fonts do not have boldface or italic variants. If you choose a font that lacks boldface or italics, you will not be able to set text in boldface or italics when editing records, and in the main window Cindex will display all text in the regular typeface. You can use the Font panel to check the typefaces in which a font is available.

To remove all styles from a selection choose **Plain** from the Format menu or the contextual menu. To remove a single style from a selection that contains several styles, choose that style from the menu.




### Case Conversion

To convert the case of selected text, choose the appropriate conversion option (**Uppercase**, **Lowercase**, **Initial Caps**) from the Format menu.

---

## EDITING EXISTING ENTRIES

From the main view of the index you can edit any record by double-clicking it or by selecting it then hitting RETURN or choosing **Edit Record** from the Edit menu.

Cindex will display the record in the record window. You can modify it using the techniques described in the preceding section. To discard any changes you have made, and restore the record to its original state, click  or hit OPTION ESC; to discard changes and close the window, hit ESC. When you have completed your changes, hit COMMAND RETURN to save the record and close the window, or click  or  (or hit PAGE UP or PAGE DOWN) to save and move to the previous or next record.

To leave behind a copy of the edited record as the foundation of a new record, hit OPTION PAGE DOWN or click .

### Restoring the View

When you finish editing a series of records, Cindex normally leaves the main view window showing the last-edited record. If you prefer, You can make Cindex restore the display to its state before you started editing. To do that, choose **Preferences...** from the Cindex menu, click the Editing tab and check **Return to Entry Point**.

---

## WORKING EFFICIENTLY WITH RECORDS

Cindex provides several features that help minimize errors and keystrokes when you make and edit entries. This section provides information about a range of techniques for working with individual records. “Advanced Editing” on page 81 introduces some methods for making changes to many records concurrently.

Cindex provides powerful features to help you find the records you want to edit. For information on how to use these, see “Finding Entries” on page 65.

### *Contextual Menus*

Some of the most often-used menu items are available in a pop-up menu that Cindex will display when you right-click (or CONTROL click) in the main index window or in the record-entry window. The set of items in the menu depends on the window in which you click.

## *Auto-Completion of Entries*

As you begin typing the text of a new entry, Cindex can automatically complete each record field if what you have typed matches text in the corresponding field of an existing record. To enable auto-completion of entries, choose **Preferences...** in the Edit menu (Figure 8 on page 25) and click the Editing tab. In the box **Adding** check **Auto-Complete Entries**.

When you enable auto-completion, and you begin typing the text of a heading in a new record, Cindex will look for any existing record whose heading begins with the text you have typed. If Cindex finds a match, it will append and highlight the text to complete the heading you are typing.

**NOTE:** Auto-completion works only when the index is sorted alphabetically. It does not work if your index is sorted by page number. If your index is sorted using letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing, Cindex will not attempt to complete an entry until you have typed enough of it to specify where the entry would appear in the index. For example, if you begin an entry with a quotation mark (which is ignored in letter-by-letter and word-by-word alphabetizing), Cindex will wait until you have typed further characters before looking for a matching entry. For this reason you may find it most convenient to use Simple alphabetizing while adding entries to the index. For more information on sorting entries see Chapter 9 “Sorting Entries” on page 145.

If the appended text is what you would have typed, you can accept it and open a new field by hitting RETURN, or you can accept it and move to the next field by hitting TAB. If you want to append text, hit →. If the supplied text is not what you want, continue typing. As you type, Cindex will automatically search for a record that has a matching heading, and will continually supply you with the first heading (if any) that matches exactly what you have typed. As soon as you type a character that would make the current record no longer match an existing one, Cindex will remove any highlighted text it has automatically appended.

Cindex can automatically complete subheadings at any level, as long as the main heading and any preceding levels of subheadings match an existing record in the index.

---

## Working Efficiently with Records

When you have checked **Auto-Complete Entries**, Cindex makes two other options available (Figure 8 on page 25). To make Cindex complete entries that match existing ones, regardless of letter case and type style, check **Ignore Style & Case**.

**NOTE:** If you have checked **Ignore Style & Case**, and Cindex completes an entry from a source that does not match in style and case, it automatically adjusts the style and case of the text you have typed.

If you wish, Cindex will display in the main view (behind the record-entry window) the entry it is using as the source of text to complete the heading you are typing. To enable this display, check **Track Source**.

**NOTE:** If you have checked **Track Source**, Cindex will display the source entry only if it would normally be visible in the current view of the index.

## *Manipulating Fields in Records*

### Cutting, Copying and Pasting Text

When you cut or copy text that spans more than one field, Cindex preserves the field divisions in the text; when you paste text into a record, the field boundaries are also pasted. If pasting text would cause a record to contain more than the maximum number of fields allowed in the index, Cindex will not paste the text, and will warn you with a beep. If cutting text from a record would cause it to have fewer than the minimum number of fields required by an index, Cindex will replace the cut text with empty fields.

**NOTE:** When you paste text Cindex normally also includes style and font information if it is available. To discard style and font information hold down the SHIFT key as you paste.

### Removing Superfluous Spaces

When two or more successive spaces are entered in a record, these are automatically reduced to a single space. To change this behavior, choose **Preferences...** from the Edit menu (Figure 8 on page 25) and click the Editing tab. In the box labeled **General** uncheck **Remove Extra Spaces**.

### Dragging and Dropping Text

When the record window is active, you can drag text between fields, or between the record window and the record window of another index. You can also drag text between a record window and another application program, such as a word-processor. To drag text, select it, release the mouse button briefly, then press the

mouse button and begin the drag. If dragging text into a record would cause the record to contain more than the maximum number of fields allowed in the index, or more characters than the record can hold, Cindex will not complete the drag, and will warn you with a beep.

When you drag text between index records Cindex always copies the text. When you drag text within a record, Cindex moves the text unless you have held down the **OPTION** key while completing the drag, in which case the text is copied. When you drag text out of a record, Cindex always copies the text; it does not remove text from the record.

**NOTES:** Cindex normally also drags and drops style and font information if it is available. To discard style and font information hold down the **SHIFT** key as you drop the text. Cindex always sets the text at the size specified for the record window.

### Retrieving a Field from the Last-Edited Record

While working on any record, you can retrieve headings individually from the last record you edited. To retrieve the text of a main heading from the last-edited record and place it at the insertion point, hit **CONTROL 1**; for other heading levels hit **CONTROL N**, where *N* is the level of heading to be retrieved (2 for sub-heading, 3 for sub-subheading, etc.). To retrieve text from the locator field of the last-edited record hit **CONTROL 0**.

### Managing Page Numbers

Cindex provides several ways to simplify the entry of page numbers.

- When you add a series of new records, the entries in successive records will often refer to the same page of text. You can set Cindex so that as it creates each new record it fills the locator field with the contents of the one you last made. To do this, choose **Preferences...** from the Edit menu (Figure 8 on page 25) and click the Editing tab. Check **Carry Locators Forward**.


When **Carry Locators Forward** is checked, each new record you create starts with its locator field holding the same references as the record you last added. When you alter the references in the locator field in a new record, the altered ones become the ones Cindex will load into subsequent new records.

- You can configure Cindex to generate the second part of a page range automatically when you type the character that connects the two parts of the range. For example, if a dash is the connecting character, and you enter 55- Cindex will complete the reference as 55-56. Cindex does this only if the *last* recognized component of the *last*

page reference in the locator field is a number in Arabic numerals. To enable auto-completion of page ranges, choose **Preferences...** from the Edit menu (Figure 8 on page 25) and click the Editing tab. Check **Complete Page Ranges**.

- With a single keystroke you can increment or decrement the last page number in the locator field (the text cursor can be anywhere in the record). To increment the page number, hit CONTROL ]. To decrement the page number hit CONTROL [. This operation affects only the *last* component of the *last* page reference in the locator field. If the last recognized component is not a number in Arabic numerals (e.g., it consists of Roman numerals or is an alphabetic suffix), the operation does nothing.

### Managing Acronyms

When a record field contains a phrase followed by text in parentheses (for example, an acronym followed by its expansion, or *vice-versa*) you can exchange the contents of the leading text with the text in parentheses by clicking the  toolbar button or hitting CONTROL P.

### Inserting Fields

To insert a subheading in a record that has only a main heading and a locator, place the insertion point at the end of the main heading and hit RETURN. Cindex will make a new field between the main heading and the locator. Use the same method to insert a sub-subheading. To demote a heading to a subheading, so that you can insert a new main heading above it, place the insertion point at the beginning of the main heading, and hit RETURN.

If you inadvertently add too many blank fields, do not worry about removing them. Cindex automatically removes excess blank fields and any fields that contain only spaces when you save the record. Cindex also removes leading and trailing spaces in any field.

### Breaking Fields

To convert a heading with a modifying phrase into a heading with a subheading, place the insertion point to the right of the comma before the modifying phrase, hit DELETE to delete the comma, then hit RETURN. Cindex will move the modifying phrase into a new subheading field. You can break any field (except the locator field) by placing the insertion point where you want the break then hitting RETURN.

**NOTE:** In the course of preparing an index you might create many records with modified headings that would be better arranged as headings with subheadings. To relieve you of the tedious task of finding and editing such entries individually, Cindex will do

---

## Working Efficiently with Records

the job for you automatically. For information on how to organize this, see “Reconciling Heading Levels” on page 91.

### Joining Fields

While you are making records, you will often produce them with subheadings (or even sub-subheadings) in the expectation of adding further entries for the same heading. If you do not in fact add other records, you will end up with isolated records that contain a single entry organized as heading and subheading, as in:



analgesia, 6.16  
anesthesia  
    general, 6.37  
anuria, 5.19

In such cases, you will normally want the isolated subheading to be removed or brought up as a modifier to the main heading.

To change a subheading to a modifier, place the insertion point at the beginning of the subheading then hit DELETE. Now type a comma, or another character you want to separate the heading from the modifier. You can use the same method to bring up a sub-subheading as a modifier to a subheading.

**NOTE:** You do not need to edit such records individually. Cindex will automatically convert redundant subheadings to modified headings. For more information on this, see “Reconciling Heading Levels” on page 91.

### Flipping (Exchanging) Fields

To exchange (flip) the contents of any two fields, place the insertion point anywhere in the upper field and click  or hit CONTROL +. To discard the contents of the upper field and pull up the contents of the lower field (half flip) click  or hit CONTROL -.

Cindex is initially set to make flips and half-flips that are ‘smart’. In a smart flip:

- A flipped heading inherits the case of the initial letter of the heading it replaces.

- If the subheading field that becomes the main heading begins with words from a set you specify, these words are moved to the end of the main heading that will become the subheading. If the lower field is the locator field and contains a *see* reference, the cross-reference prefix is removed as the field is promoted; if the locator field contains a *see also* reference, the prefix is transferred to what will become the new locator.
- (Full flip only) If the subheading field that becomes the main heading ends with words from the specified list, these words are moved to the beginning of the main heading that will become the subheading.

To disable smart flipping choose **Preferences...** from the Edit menu, click the **Editing** tab (Figure 8 on page 25), then uncheck **Smart Flip**.

When you make a full flip (CONTROL +) or a half flip (CONTROL -) you can override the current mode (smart or not) by holding down the SHIFT key while you give the command.

To edit the set of prefix and suffix words that can be moved during a smart flip, choose **Flip Words...** from the Document menu. Place a ~ immediately before any word (such as *and* or *versus*) that should maintain its prefix or suffix position as it is moved from one field to the other.

**NOTE:** If you set Flip Words when no index is open for work, your settings become the defaults applied to new indexes.



## *Propagating Changes to Subordinate Records*

When you work in the record window and change the contents of an index heading, you will normally want all succeeding records that shared that heading to be changed in the same way. When Cindex is installed it is set to ensure that when you change the text of one or more headings, and save a record, the changes are automatically propagated to all succeeding records that shared the original heading(s).

You can disable propagation generally, and reinstate it on a record-by-record basis, or you can enable propagation generally, and disable it on a record-by-record basis (this is how Cindex is initially set). To set the general behavior,



choose **Preferences...** from the Cindex menu (Figure 8 on page 25) and click the Editing tab then check (or uncheck) **Propagate Changes**.

If propagation is enabled generally, the toolbar button in the record window looks like this  when Cindex opens the record for editing. If propagation is disabled generally, the toolbar button looks like this  when Cindex opens the record window for adding or editing. Click the button to enable or disable propagation as required for each record.

**NOTE:** Automatic propagation of editing changes can save an enormous amount of work, but to use it to best effect you need to watch that you edit the right record. For example, to change a main heading, you should edit the *first* record in a series. Cindex does not propagate changes backward, so any records above the one you change will be untouched.

### *Checking Locators*

You can set Cindex to check locators and warn you about (or forbid) the entry of a record that has an empty locator field or a malformed range of page numbers (e.g., 95-93). Choose **Preferences...** from the Cindex menu (Figure 8 on page 25) and click Editing then click the appropriate button under **Bad Locator**.

- If you click **Accept**, Cindex will accept an empty locator field or a malformed locator.
- If you click **Warn**, Cindex will beep on your first attempt to enter a record with an empty locator field or malformed reference, but will accept a subsequent attempt.
- If you click **Forbid**, Cindex will never allow the entry of a record with an empty field or malformed reference.

Cindex remembers your setting.

**NOTE:** Cindex can also check that no entry contains too main unqualified page references. See “Checking Page References” on page 128.

### Identifying Acceptable References

Cindex can check that each reference you enter falls within limits that you specify. You can specify a value that no reference may exceed, and you can specify the greatest permitted span in a range of references. To specify limits choose **Refer-**

**ence Syntax...** from the Document menu. The relevant settings are under **Page References**.

To specify the largest permissible value for a locator (typically the number of the last page in the work being indexed), enter it at **Maximum Value**. This may be a compound (multi-part) locator if your index uses these. Do not enter a range of locators. To set no limit, leave **Maximum Value** blank.

To set the largest span acceptable in a range of references, enter the number of pages at **Greatest Range**. For example, to permit a span of 10 pages or less, such as 23-33, or 102-112, but not a span of eleven pages, you would enter 10. To place no restriction on the allowable span, set 0.

**NOTE:** Cindex uses any limits you specify for **Maximum Value** or **Greatest Range** only when reference checking is enabled (see “Checking Locators” on page 41).

For more information on the types of locators Cindex can work with, see Chapter 8 “Page References” on page 123.

## *Checking Cross-References*

Cindex can check that cross-references you enter in records have targets elsewhere in the index.

Choose **Preferences...** from the Edit menu, click the **Editing** tab (Figure 8) then click the appropriate button under **Bad Cross-Ref**.

- If you click **Accept**, Cindex will accept a cross-reference that has no target.
- If you click **Warn**, Cindex will beep on your first attempt to enter a record with an cross-reference that has no target, but will accept a subsequent attempt.
- If you click **Forbid**, Cindex will never allow the entry of a record with cross-reference that has no target.

**NOTE:** Cindex checks that a target heading begins with the text of each cross-reference in the locator field of a record. It does not check that the cross-reference is a full match to the target heading. For more rigorous verification of cross-references see “Verifying Cross-References” on page 108.

## USING FUNCTION KEYS

---

If your keyboard has a top row of keys labeled F1 etc., you can use these to simplify the editing of text in records.

You can attach frequently-used words or phrases to up to 16 keys, and by hitting the appropriate key you can insert the text in a record. The text you attach to a key can contain multiple fonts, and style attributes such as boldface and italics.

### Setting-up Function Keys

You can attach text to a function key whenever a record is open for editing. To do this, select the text you want to attach (this can span more than one field), then while holding down the COMMAND the OPTION keys, hit the function key to which you want to attach the text. For example, to attach the selected text to the F5 key, use COMMAND F5. Use the same procedure to change any text already attached to a key. You can attach text to any of the keys F1 through F16. The function key attachments apply to all indexes, and Cindex remembers them.

To review or edit the text attached to the function keys, choose **Function Keys...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will open a window in which it displays, beside the name of each key, the text attached to it. You can leave this window open while you work on the index.

To edit the text attached to any function key, double-click the text in the table. You can change the text attributes (boldface, italics, etc.) but you cannot change the font or type size.

### Using Function Keys

To insert text in a record, click where you want the text to appear (or select any text you want to replace), then hold the OPTION key down and hit the appropriate function key. If the text you want to insert would cause the record to contain too many fields, or too many characters, Cindex will warn you with a beep.

## ABBREVIATIONS

---

Cindex lets you use abbreviations to represent long words or phrases; when you type the abbreviations in records Cindex automatically expands them to the

---

## Abbreviations

phrases they represent. For example, you might define ards to represent *Adult respiratory distress syndrome*.

Cindex can maintain multiple sets of abbreviations that you can use in different kinds of indexes, but it can use only a single set at one time.

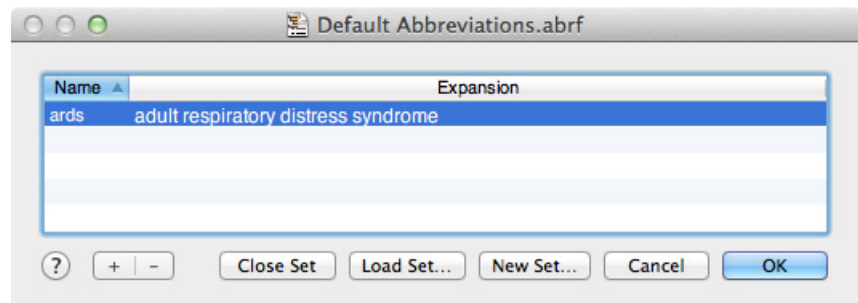
### *Defining Abbreviations*

Cindex initially has no abbreviations defined. You can define abbreviations and their expanded phrases as you work on an index, or independently of it. You can define abbreviations in two ways: by extracting a word or phrase from a record as you work on it in the record-entry window, or by working directly through the Abbreviations panel.

While you are adding or editing a record, you can define an abbreviation for any word or phrase that you have typed. Select the text for which you want to define an abbreviation, then choose **New Abbreviation** from the Edit menu or the contextual menu. Cindex will display the panel (Figure 10) through which you can name and save the abbreviation.

#### Working in the Abbreviation Window

Choose **Abbreviations** from the Tools menu. Cindex will open a window that shows all its abbreviations and the phrases they represent.



**FIGURE 10.** The Abbreviations panel

---

---

## Abbreviations

If you have opened the window via **New Abbreviation**, the phrase for which you want to establish an abbreviation will already be entered in the table. To complete the abbreviation enter at 'Name' the abbreviated form you will type in a record to recover the phrase. The name may contain any sequence of up to eight characters except a space and certain punctuation marks discussed page 46. If the expanded phrase should appear in records in with specified style, select the appropriate text and apply styles by choosing from the Format menu. (You cannot specify a font—abbreviations are always expanded in the font in use at the insertion point in a record.)

If you have opened the window via **Abbreviations...**, to add an abbreviation you must provide both its name and the phrase it represents. Click **+** to open a row in the table.

To edit the name of an existing abbreviation, or its expanded phrase, double-click it. The name of an abbreviation must be unique. If you edit an abbreviation so that its name matches an existing one, Cindex will warn you.

To remove an abbreviation, click to select its row in the table and click **-** or choose **Delete** from the Edit menu.

You can view abbreviations sorted alphabetically by abbreviation or by expanded phrase. To view table entries in order of abbreviation, click the title of the **Name** column (click the title again to switch between ascending and descending sort). To view the table entries in order of expanded phrase, click the title of the **Expansion** column.

Click **OK** when you are finished adding or editing abbreviations. Cindex will automatically save any changes to your set of abbreviations. If you did not previously have an active set of abbreviations, Cindex will ask you to provide a name and location of a file in which to store the new abbreviations. This then becomes the set that Cindex uses.

### *Saving and Loading Abbreviations*

Cindex works with one active set of abbreviations (its name is displayed as the title of the panel) and when you make a new abbreviation Cindex always adds it to the active set. You can maintain multiple sets of abbreviations for use on different occasions.

To begin a new set of abbreviations, click **New Set...** Cindex will close the current set and establish a new set that contains all the abbreviations contained in the table. The new set becomes the active set of abbreviations.

To deactivate the current set of abbreviations, leaving none active, click **Close Set**.

To load an existing set of abbreviations (and make it the active set) click **Load Set....**

Cindex keeps track of the active set of abbreviations, and automatically uses it when you start a new session.

## Using Abbreviations

To insert the expanded form of an abbreviation anywhere in a record, simply type the abbreviation. If there is enough room in the record Cindex will expand an abbreviation that is preceded by a space or any of these characters:

( [ " w i v

and succeeded by a space or any of these characters:

)], . . ; : " " ' ,

Cindex will not accept any of the above characters in an abbreviation, though they may appear in the expanded phrase. If there is not enough room to accommodate the expanded phrase, Cindex will beep.

---

## Duplicating Records

If you type the abbreviation at the end of a field, Cindex will expand it if you use ↓ or TAB or RETURN to move to the next field.

If you find that you must use an abbreviation literally, you can insert it in a record with the following procedure: append some spurious character to it, followed by the character that would normally trigger its expansion, then move the entry point back to the spurious character and delete it. Because Cindex checks abbreviations only when you type one of the special terminating characters that triggers expansion, it will not expand the abbreviation that results from deleting the spurious character.



To prevent conflict between acronyms you want to use literally and acronyms you want to use as abbreviations, begin your abbreviations with a character or symbol that you are unlikely to use in the index. For example, if you want to use CME both as an abbreviation for “Continuing Medical Education” and as an acronym, you could name the abbreviation !CME, @CME or #CME.




## DUPLICATING RECORDS

---

When you double-post entries you produce two very similar sets of entries, perhaps differing only in the organization of the main heading. For example you might have a series of entries under the heading “Dogs and cats” that you want also to appear under the heading “Cats and dogs.” Cindex makes it easy to produce one set of records based on another.

When the Record Entry Window is Active

To make a new record based on the one currently open in the record window, choose **Duplicate** from the Edit menu, or hit OPTION PAGE DOWN, or click . Cindex will make a new record from the one currently displayed (after saving any changes to the current record). The window's title shows you that it contains a new record. You can modify this new record as required. At any time before you save it you can click  (or hit OPTION ESC) to restore it to its original form.

Cindex will save the record when you click , , or , or use a corresponding shortcut. If you do not modify the new record—that is, the record remains an exact duplicate of the one on which it was based—Cindex simply discards it.

---


## Duplicating Records

### When the Main Document Window is Active

When the main document window is active, you can duplicate any records on display. Select those you want to duplicate, then choose **Duplicate** from the Edit menu. Cindex will duplicate the records and place the new one(s) properly in the index. For more information on finding and selecting records to duplicate, see “Finding Entries” on page 65.

### Working with Duplicated Records

Because you normally duplicate records as a prelude to modifying them, Cindex displays the new record(s) so as to facilitate editing:

- If you duplicate a single record, Cindex immediately opens it for editing in the record-entry window. Regardless of whether you subsequently modify it, the record remains a part of the index.
- If you duplicate several records, Cindex forms a temporary “group” from them, and displays just this group in the main document window. You can edit these records in the normal way. “Groups of Records” on page 63 explains what groups are and how to use them while preparing an index. To restore the display of all index records in the main document window, choose **All Records** from the View menu, or click  in the toolbar.

**NOTE:** You can also duplicate selected entries by choosing **Copy** from the **Edit** menu, then **Paste** from the **Edit** menu. If you use this method, Cindex does not open the record window (for a single record) or form a temporary group (for multiple records).

## *Copying Entries from One Index to Another*

To copy entries from one index to another, select them in the main index window, then drag them into the main window of the destination index. (For more information on selecting records, see “Selecting Entries” on page 61.) Alternatively, you can copy and paste the records. Select the records you want, then choose **Copy** from the Edit menu. Activate the main window of the index into which you want to paste the entries, then choose **Paste** from the Edit menu.

**NOTES:** You cannot undo this drag or paste, but you can restore the index to its last-saved form by choosing **Revert to Saved** from the File menu. See “Preserving and Discarding Changes” on page 10.

Cindex always inserts pasted records—it never replaces any records currently selected.

You can copy and paste, but cannot drag and drop, records within the same index.



---

## Deleting and Restoring Records

You cannot paste or drag records into an index when its record window is open.

If the records in the destination index cannot accommodate as many fields as are in the records being dragged or pasted, Cindex will ask you if you want to increase the permitted number of fields.

If the record size in the destination index is too small to accommodate the records being dragged or pasted, Cindex will ask if you want to enlarge the record size.

## DELETING AND RESTORING RECORDS

---

To remove a record (or records) from the index, select them in the main document window then check **Deleted** in the Edit menu. A deleted record is not physically removed from the index—it merely becomes hidden when you view a fully formatted index. In a draft or unformatted view, a deleted record is shown with ≠ (in blue) in the left margin beside it. Deleted records are never displayed in a formatted view.

To restore deleted records select them in the main document window and uncheck **Deleted** in the Edit menu.

In the record window you can delete the current record by checking **Deleted** in the Edit menu. You can restore a deleted record by unchecking **Deleted**. The status line at the bottom of the record window displays “Deleted” if the current record is deleted.

To remove deleted records permanently choose **Compress...** from the Tools menu. “Compressing Index Entries” on page 220 explains how to use **Compress**. Deleted records cannot be restored after you have compressed the index.

## LABELING RECORDS

---

Cindex lets you label records that it will display in a conspicuous color. A label serves as a marker you can use for any purpose you choose (for example to iden-

---

## Labeling Records

tify records that contain incomplete entries). The label has no other function than to make a record conspicuous. Cindex can use a label as a search criterion in find and replace operations. A record may carry one of seven different labels.

To label a record or records, select them in the main document window then choose the label you want from the **Labeled** submenu in the Edit menu, or right-click and choose from the contextual menu, or choose from the drop-down toolbar menu (if the item is in your toolbar).

A labeled record is displayed in a distinctive color. If you are working in a draft view of the index the whole record is displayed in that color; if you are working in a fully formatted view of the index, you can control whether the text is colored (see “Labeling Options” on page 50). You can also control whether labeled records are visible. See “Displaying Labeled Records” on page 55.

To change or remove the labels on records, select those you want to change:

- To remove all labels, choose **No Label** from the submenu or drop-down list.
- To remove only the label that matches the first record in the selection, choose that label from the submenu or the toolbar drop-down list.

**NOTE:** If the first record in the selection carries no label, choosing a label from the submenu will *apply* that label to all selected records.

To label or unlabel the record in the record-editing window, choose from the **Labeled** submenu in the Edit menu, or from the contextual menu, or from the drop-down toolbar menu.

### Labeling Options

To change the colors Cindex uses to denote labeled records, choose **Preferences** from the Cindex menu, click the View tab, then under **Label Colors** click the color well for the label you want to change. Cindex will display a panel through which you can choose the color you want.

Cindex normally applies the label color to records only when displaying index entries in a draft view (for information about different views of the index, see “Views” on page 53). To make Cindex use the label color in the fully formatted

---

## Labeling Records

view, choose **Preferences** from the Cindex menu, then on the View tab check **Show in Formatted View**.

In the formatted view the label color is applied only to the page references or cross-references from a record (or the lowest-level subheading if there are no page references or cross-references).

---

## Labeling Records

## CHAPTER 4 *Viewing, Finding and Printing Entries*

---

### VIEWS

---


Cindex provides several ways for you to view the index as you work on it. These range from a fully formatted view that lays out the index exactly as you would see it printed in a book to an unformatted view that makes explicit the structure of the records from which the index is formed. Cindex also allows you to display and work with only parts of the index.

The title of a main document window is always the name of the index. The toolbar underneath the title contains tools that control how the index is displayed. Figure 11 shows the standard arrangement of tools; you can add or remove tools (and specify how they are displayed) by choosing **Customize Toolbar...** from the View menu. To learn the function of a tool, move the mouse pointer over it.



The status bar at the bottom of the window (Figure 11) displays:

- A field in which you can type search text.
- The number of records accessible in the view.
- How many new records have been added in your current session.
- How entries are sorted.

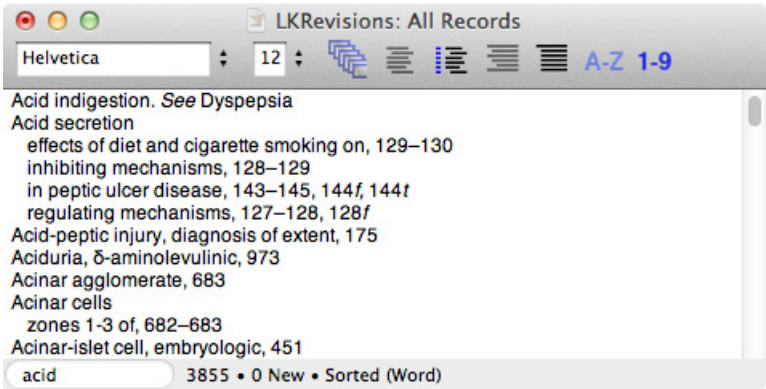
#### *Fully Formatted View*

To display the fully formatted index, choose **Full Format** from the View menu, or click  in the toolbar.

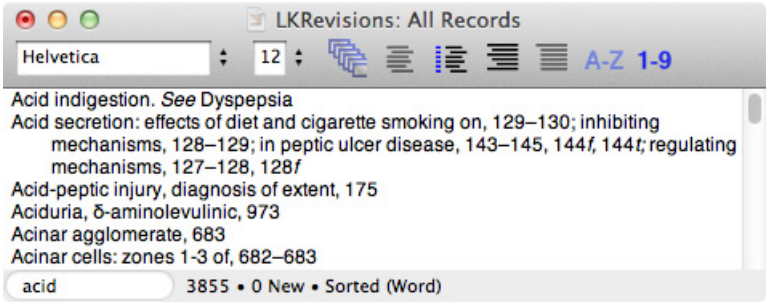
Views

In this view (Figure 11) index entries are displayed in fully finished form, in whatever index style (indented, run-in, etc.) you have specified. Cindex suppresses the display of duplicate headings, gathers together and sorts page references from the same heading, and gathers and sorts cross-references from the same heading. To view the index in indented style, click  in the toolbar; to view the index in run-in style, click . For full information on setting the style and layout see “Formatting the Index” on page 165.

Indented Subheadings



Run-in subheadings



Search text    Total in view    Total new    Sorted/Unsorted

FIGURE 11. Fragments of an index in indented and run-in styles

---

## Views

In the fully formatted view Cindex will hide deleted records and records that contain no text, and it will hide certain text in records—for example, phrases that you have inserted specially to control alphabetizing of entries.

You should always use a fully formatted view when printing the finished index or saving it for typesetting, but because this view obscures the structure of individual records you will probably find that during development of the index it is less useful than a draft formatted view (Figure 13).

To change the font in which the index is displayed, choose from the drop-down list at the left of the toolbar; to change the type size in which entries are displayed, choose from the drop-down list to its right.

**NOTES:** When entries are displayed in a fully formatted view, Cindex can display different levels of heading in different fonts and type sizes, overriding the standard settings (See “Typography and Punctuation of Headings” on page 180.). When any standard setting has been overridden Cindex displays the standard font or size in **red**.

To specify the standard fonts and sizes that Cindex will use when you create a new index See “Fonts and Styles” on page 31.

### Displaying Labeled Records

In the fully formatted view Cindex normally displays labeled records, though they will appear in their distinctive colors only if you have enabled that (see “Labeling Options” on page 50).

**NOTE:** In the formatted view only page references or cross-references from a labeled record will be colored. If a record has no page references or cross-references, the lowest-level subheading is colored.

You can use labels to control which records Cindex will display. To hide records that carry a particular label or labels (or no label at all) choose **Hide by Attribute...** from the View menu. Cindex will show the sheet in Figure 12.

---

## Views




**FIGURE 12.** Hiding Records by Attributes

---

For each class of record that you want to hide, check the corresponding box, then check **Enable Hiding**. Records that are hidden are generally treated as though they did not exist: for example, you cannot find them by searching through the index.

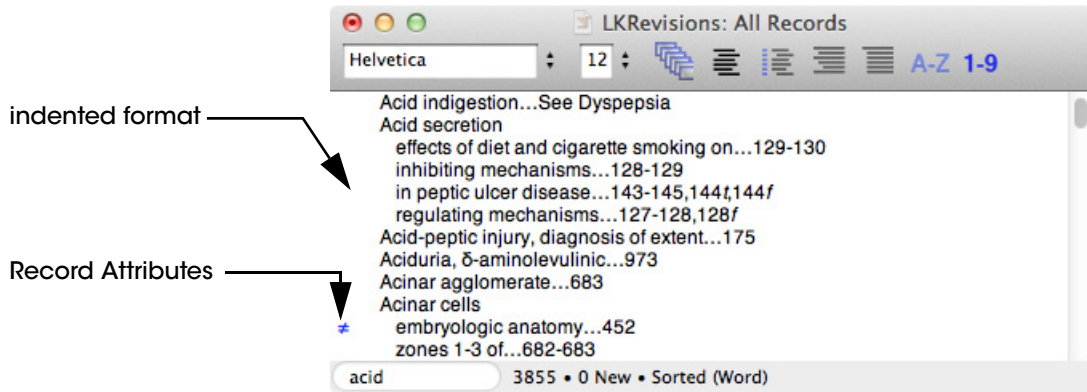
### *Draft Formatted View*

To display the draft formatted index, choose **Draft Format** from the View menu, or click  in the toolbar.



---

## Views



**FIGURE 13.** Fragment of an index in draft formatted view

---

In draft view Cindex displays all records, without hiding any content that it might make invisible in the fully formatted view. In draft view Cindex shows the entries in a standard indented format. Cindex permits you some control over the layout of entries (for example, margins and columns, line spacing, and placement of cross-references), but most of the more advanced style and layout options are unavailable in draft view. “Formatting the Index” on page 165 describes the format settings, and which of them apply to the draft view.

### Automatic Switching to Draft View

When Cindex opens the record window for you to add new records, it normally changes the display to show entries in draft view if the main window was displaying entries in a fully-formatted view. This makes it easier to see how complete entries are formed from records. If you prefer to add entries with the main window showing fully formatted entries, you can prevent Cindex changing the display.

To specify how Cindex should display entries in the main view while you are adding or editing records, choose **Preferences...** from the View menu and click the Editing tab (Figure 8 on page 25). Check or uncheck **Switch to Draft View**.

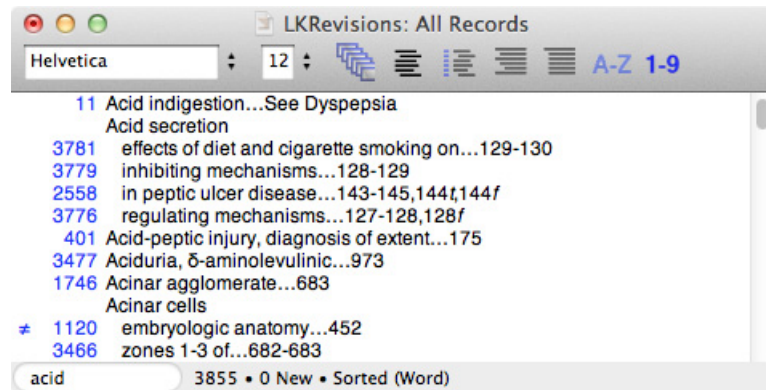
---

## Views

### Customizing the Draft View

You can customize the draft view in two ways:

1. **Showing Record Numbers.** As you add each record to the index, Cindex assigns it a unique number. You can use this number (although you never have to) in working with records. To see record numbers (Figure 14) check **Show Numbers** in the View menu. To hide record numbers, uncheck **Show Numbers**. The initial setting is to hide numbers. Cindex remembers your setting and uses it until you change it again.



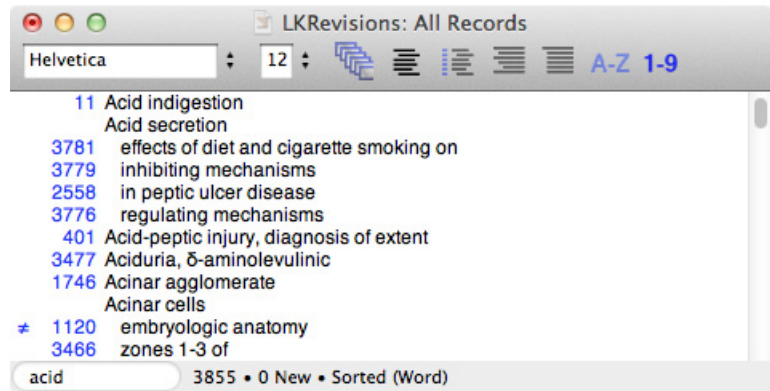
**FIGURE 14.** Draft view with record numbers displayed

---

2. **Depth of Headings to Display.** Cindex normally displays all fields in records. You can set it to display only main headings, or only main headings and subheadings, etc. (Figure 15). To display headings to a specified depth, choose a heading level from the **View Depth** submenu in the View menu. The initial setting is to show all levels of headings. Cindex remembers your setting and uses it until you change it again.

---

## Views

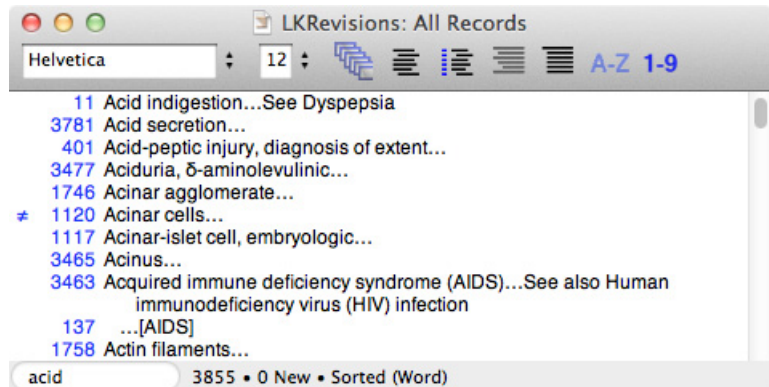


**FIGURE 15.** Draft view showing only main headings and subheadings

---

### *Summary View*

The summary view shows only the main headings of entries, together with cross-references made both *to* and *from* these entries.



**FIGURE 16.** Fragment of an index in summary view

---

---

## Views

Records that are the sources of cross-references are displayed to the heading level from which the cross-references originate; records that are the targets of cross-references are displayed to the depth of heading level referred to. To display the index in summary format (Figure 16) choose **Summary** from the View menu.

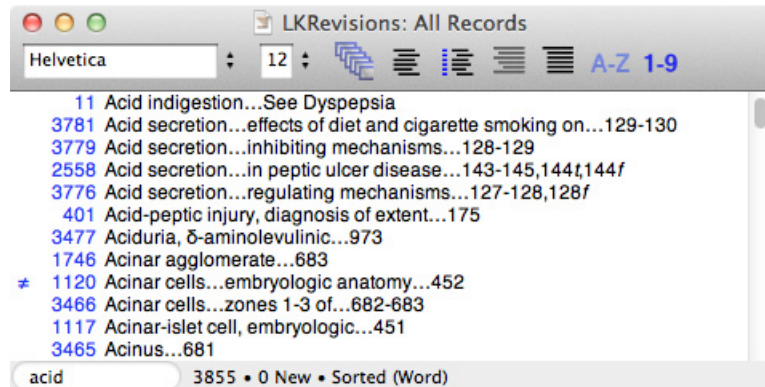
When Cindex shows the text of a cross-reference made to a heading, it displays the cross-reference in square brackets [...] appended to the heading. Each cross-reference is contained in a separate set of brackets. If the cross-reference was from a subheading, the contents of the brackets show the heading and the subheading, after a semicolon.

### Customizing the Summary View

When Cindex displays records in summary view, you can show or hide record numbers, as outlined under “Customizing the Draft View” on page 58.

### Unformatted View

In the unformatted view, all the fields of all records are displayed in full, with fields laid out sequentially. To display the index as unformatted entries (Figure 17) choose **Unformatted** from the View menu.



**FIGURE 17.** Fragment of an index in unformatted view

---

---

## Selecting Entries

### Customizing the Unformatted View

When Cindex displays records in this view, you can show or hide record numbers, and can control the depth to which headings are displayed, as outlined in “Customizing the Draft View” on page 58. You can also specify whether Cindex should wrap long entries on to continuation lines, or clip them at the edge of the window. By default Cindex wraps long entries; to display clipped entries, uncheck **Wrap Lines** in the View menu. To wrap lines, check **Wrap Lines**.

### *Sorted and Unsorted Views*

Cindex is set initially to display entries in alphabetical order, following rules described in “Alphabetical Sorting” on page 149. You can quickly switch between an alphabetical sort and a page order sort by clicking **A-Z** or **1-9** in the toolbar. “Sorting Entries” on page 145 describes how to change the sort rules to suit your requirements.

Cindex can also display index entries in record number order. This can be useful if you want to see the order in which you added records to the index. To display records in record number order, uncheck **Sorted** in the View menu. To display entries in whatever order is dictated by the sort rules in effect, check **Sorted** in the View menu.

## SELECTING ENTRIES

---

Many Cindex operations are undertaken on entries that are selected (highlighted) in the main document window.

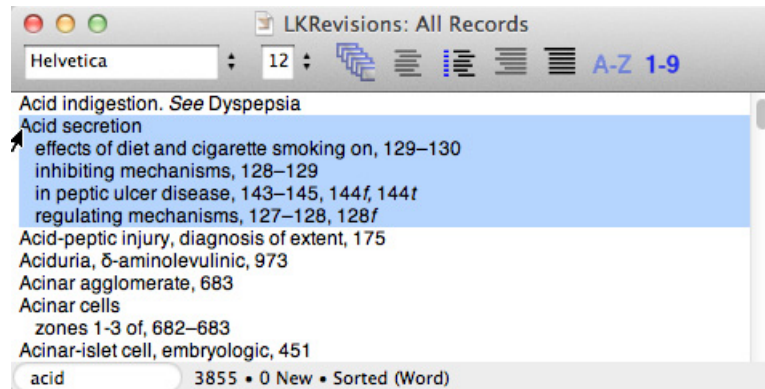
You can select any index entry by clicking it; you can extend the selection by dragging (forward or backward) through the displayed entries, or by SHIFT-clicking the entry at the other end of the range. You can also extend the selection by using the keyboard shortcuts shown in Table 2 on page 66. To clear any selection, hit ESC.

Cindex provides a shortcut for selecting blocks of entries under a heading. To select all the records under a particular main heading, move the mouse to the left

---

## Working with Subsets of Records

margin of the screen. The pointer will change from a left-arrow to a right-arrow (Figure 18) signifying that Cindex can select blocks of records. Click beside the main heading of the set of records you want to select. Cindex will select all the records under that heading. To select all the records under a particular subheading, place the mouse to the left of the subheading, then click. You can use the same method to select blocks of records under any lower level of heading.



**FIGURE 18.** Selection of a block of entries under a heading

---

To select all records, choose **Select All** from the Edit menu.

## WORKING WITH SUBSETS OF RECORDS

---

When you open an index you have access to all its entries through the main document window. Often you will want to work with only a subset of entries, which can be more conveniently done if these are isolated. Cindex provides several ways to isolate entries for work.

### *New Records*

To see only new records (that is, those added to the index since you began work in the current session) choose **New Records** from the View menu. If you have added no records in the current session, this item is dimmed.


Cindex will display (in order of entry in the index) only the new records. When you set the view to show new records, Cindex generally behaves as though these were the only records in the index. Suppose, for example, that your index contained 900 records, 100 of which were new. When the view is set to show new records, Cindex will behave as though the first 800 records do not exist, and operations such as searching the index (discussed later in this chapter), examine only new records. The status bar at the bottom of the main document window will indicate that you are viewing New Records, and that there are 100 of them. To restore the view of the complete index, choose **All Records** from the View menu.

**NOTE:** When viewing new records, you cannot use the tools **Expand** (described in “Expanding Index Entries” on page 219) **Compress** (described in “Compressing Index Entries” on page 220) or **Reconcile Headings** (described in “Reconciling Heading Levels” on page 91). These items in the Tools menu are dimmed.

### *Groups of Records*

Cindex can form defined subsets (“groups”) of records in the index, treating each group as though it contained the only records in the index.

#### **Making a Group**

You can make a group from any records in the main index window. To do this, select the records you want to work with, then choose **New Group** from the File menu (also available through the contextual menu Cindex displays when you CONTROL-click or right-click in the main window). Cindex will display just this set of records in the main document window, giving it the title Temporary Group. To restore the view of all records, choose **All Records** from the View menu, or click  in the toolbar. To view the group choose **Temporary Group** from the View menu.

---

## Working with Subsets of Records

The temporary group survives only until you create another group, finish your current session with Cindex, or explicitly make the group permanent (see below).

**NOTE:** Although the *group* is temporary, the records in it are permanent. That is, when Cindex discards a group it discards only the information about which records belong to a group; it does not discard the records.

### Working with Groups

When Cindex displays a group, it generally behaves as though the records in that group were the only ones in the index. For example, when Cindex searches for text in entries, it searches only among records in the group.

There are a few restrictions on what you can do with groups:

- You cannot switch between sorted and unsorted views of a group: Cindex displays records in the order in which they appeared when the group was formed. You can, however, change the sorted order of a group by choosing **Sort...** from the Tools menu to resort the group. This sort need not use the sort rules employed in the main index.
- When you modify records that belong to a group (for example, by editing a record), Cindex will display the changes but will not rearrange the order of the records in the group, which might no longer be correctly sorted. You can re-sort the group explicitly, if you wish. Records are always correctly sorted when you restore the view to show All Records.
- If you add a record to the index while you are viewing a group, the record does not become a member of the group, and Cindex therefore does not display it until you change the view to show All Records.
- Some Cindex tools cannot be used on groups. You cannot use the tools **Expand** (described in “Expanding Index Entries” on page 219) **Compress** (described in “Compressing Index Entries” on page 220) or **Reconcile Headings** (described in “Reconciling Heading Levels” on page 91). These items in the Tools menu are dimmed when a group is displayed in the main document window.

### Making a Permanent Group

You can preserve any temporary group as a permanent one. To save the group, first make sure it is on view (if necessary, choose **Temporary Group** from the View menu), then choose **Save Group...** from the File menu (or the contextual menu you obtain with CONTROL-click or right-click in the main window). Cindex will display a sheet through which you should provide the name you want to give the



---

## Finding Entries

group. When you click **OK**, Cindex will remember the group. Cindex automatically saves information about groups that belong to the index.

Each group you save becomes an item in the **Group** submenu in the View menu (it is no longer accessible through the **Temporary Group** item in the View menu). To view a group at any time, select it by name from the submenu. To restore the view of all records, choose **All Records**.

### Managing Groups

Cindex provides several tools to help you manage groups. For information on these see “Managing Groups” on page 223.

## FINDING ENTRIES

---

Cindex provides several ways for you quickly to find records you want to work on. You can display a particular entry instantly by typing the beginning text of its heading, or by entering its record number. You can search the index to find entries that contain specified text or references.

### *Navigation Shortcuts*

When the main index window is active, you can use the keys and keystroke combinations shown in Table 2 as navigation shortcuts.

---

## Finding Entries

Key(s)	Action
↓	Moves selection (if any) down one record or entry.
↑	Moves selection (if any) up one record or entry.
SHIFT ↓	Extends selection (if any) down one record or entry.
SHIFT ↑	Extends selection (if any) up one record or entry.
TAB	Brings selection (if any) into view.
SHIFT TAB	Selects record at top of window.
ESC	Removes highlighting from selected records.
PAGE DOWN	Moves display down one page (does not affect selection).
PAGE UP	Moves display up one page (does not affect selection).
HOME	Moves display to head of index (does not affect selection).
END	Moves display to foot of index (does not affect selection).
RETURN	Opens the first selected record for editing.
Other characters	Treated as the leading text in a record (or a record number, if digits). Cindex brings the matching record into view. Text you type appears in the status bar at the foot of the index window.

**TABLE 2.** Navigation shortcuts in the main document window

### Finding by Beginning Text in Headings

When the main document window is active, you can instantly bring into view and highlight any record by typing the character (or characters) that begin its heading. Cindex tracks the characters you type and displays them in the small rounded box at the bottom left of the main view. As you define more precisely the beginning of the heading, Cindex will narrow the range of displayed records. You need type only as much of the heading as you need to identify it unambiguously. If you type text that matches no heading, Cindex will beep and display your search text in red.

---

## Finding Entries

To locate a subheading under a heading, type enough of the heading to locate it, then type a semicolon, then the leading text of the subheading. For example, to find the subheading ‘international’ under the heading ‘Trade’ you might type

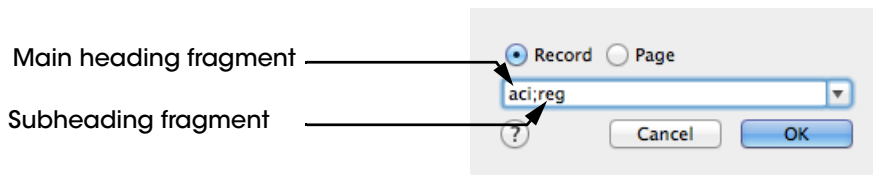
**tr;in**

if that were enough to identify the heading and subheading unambiguously.

**NOTE:** If the heading of the record you want begins with a numeral, you should type the character \ immediately before you start typing the beginning of the heading. If you do not use \ Cindex will assume you are looking for a record by its number.

Cindex knows that successively typed characters are part of the same heading as long as you type them at reasonable speed; if a long interval separates keystrokes, Cindex assumes you are starting to specify a new heading. The interval Cindex attends to is determined by standard Mac keyboard settings. To change the interval, use the System Preferences panel, and choose Keyboard. Adjust the “Delay until Repeat.”

If you need to enter a long sequence of characters to specify the target heading and any subheadings, choose **Go To...** from the View menu. Cindex will display the sheet in Figure 19. This allows you to enter text at your leisure.



**FIGURE 19.** Go To sheet

---

Type as much leading text as you need from the heading and any subheadings, separating levels of heading with a semicolon, click **Record** to tell Cindex that you are searching for a record, then click **OK**.

---

## Finding Entries

Cindex remembers previous **Go To...** search requests you have made in your current session. To recall and reuse a previous search specification, click the arrow beside the text box to display and select the specification you want.

### Finding by Record Number

When the main document window is active, you can bring a record into view by typing its number. Cindex will track the digits as you type them, and will highlight the record whose number matches what you type.

If you prefer, you can specify the record number by choosing **Go To...** from the View menu (Figure 19). Type the record number, click **Record** to tell Cindex that you are searching for a record, then click **OK**.

### *Finding by Printed Page Number*

To bring into view the entries that will appear on a particular page of the *printed index*, choose **Go To...** from the View menu. Cindex will display the sheet shown in Figure 19. Click **Page** to indicate that you want to see entries that fall on a particular page, then click **OK**. Cindex will display the entries that would appear on that page.

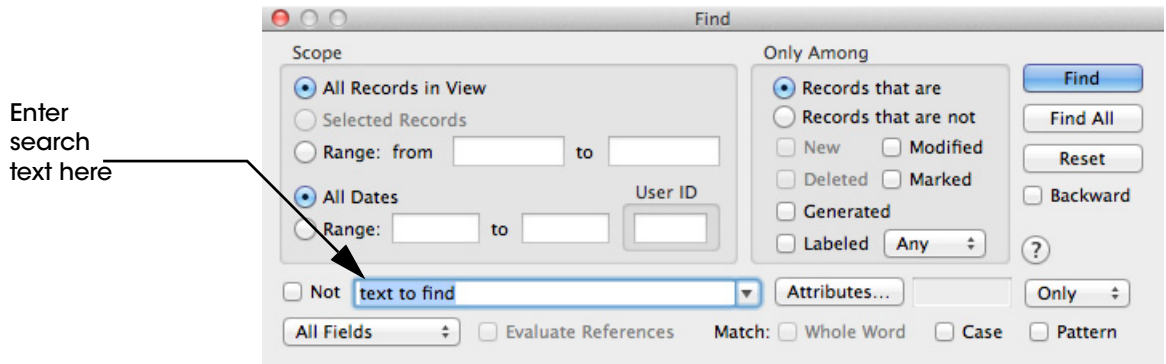
To find records that contain references to specified pages in the work being indexed, see “Searching for Locators” on page 73.

### *Finding Records that Contain Specified Text*

Cindex can find records that contain particular words or phrases anywhere in the record. To search for a word or phrase, choose **Find...** from the Edit menu. Cindex will display the window shown in Figure 20.

---

## Finding Entries



**FIGURE 20.** Find window

---

To make a simple search for a word or phrase, type that word or phrase where the indicator is blinking. Click **Find** (or hit RETURN) to begin the search for the first occurrence of the word or phrase.

**NOTE:** Cindex generally dims the **Find** button unless you have specified something it should search for.

When Cindex finds the first record that contains the target word or phrase, it highlights that record in the main document window.

To continue the search after Cindex has found a target, click **Find Again**, or choose **Find Again** from the Edit menu. Cindex will find the next record that contains the target text.

To work on the highlighted record, click the main document window to activate it, then double-click the record to open it for editing.

To resume the search after interrupting it, choose **Find Again** from the Edit menu, or click the Find window, then click **Find Again**.

---

## Finding Entries

To cancel a search, and restore Find settings to their default values, click **Reset** or hit ESC.

You need not keep the Find window open after you have specified what you want Cindex to search for. To find the next record that matches a search specification you have previously provided, choose **Find Again** from the Edit menu. When Cindex finds a record it will highlight it. To open any highlighted record for editing, double-click it, or hit RETURN.

**NOTE:** Cindex maintains a list of the words and phrases used in previous searches. To search for a word or phrase you have sought in the recent past, click the arrow button at the right side of the box that contains the search text, then choose from the list displayed.

### Finding All Matching Records

To find all records that contain the text you want click **Find All**. When you do this Cindex examines all the records that could be displayed in the current view and collects in a group all those that contain matching text. When it has completed the search, Cindex displays these records in the main window as a temporary group.

**NOTE:** **Find All** is dimmed if the record-entry window is open.

To switch the view to show all records, choose **All Records** from the View menu. To switch the view back to the records found in the last search, choose **Temporary Group** from the View menu. You can switch the view to this group at any time until you form another group, or save the group as a permanent group. (“Making a Permanent Group” on page 64 explains how to make a group permanent.)

When you make a permanent group from the results of a search, Cindex saves with the group information about the search criteria used to find the records that are in the group. As you add or modify records, some might become eligible for inclusion in the group, or some already in the group might no longer meet the criteria for inclusion. To cope with such situations, you can rebuild the group by applying the original search criteria to the modified index. For information on this see “Managing Groups” on page 223.

### Searching for Styles and Fonts

To search for text formatted in a particular style or font, click **Attributes...** Cindex will display a sheet through which you can specify the attributes of the text

---

## Finding Entries

you are looking for. Click **OK** to set the style(s) or font. To indicate that it will search for styled text, Cindex displays the appropriate letter (B for boldface, etc.) to the right of the **Attributes...** button. If Cindex will search for a font, it displays *f* beside the button.

Cindex can search for style and font attributes applied to *any* text. To find any text set in a particular style or font, click **Attributes...** to specify the style and font you want, but do not specify any search text. Then click **OK**.

### Controlling the Scope of the Search

Normally Cindex searches among all records that are accessible in the current view. Cindex can confine the search to certain parts of the index, or to records modified at specified times or by a particular user.

- To search among all records click **All Records in View**.
- To confine the search to records you have selected, click **Selected Records** (this is dimmed if no records are selected).
- To confine the search to a range of records in the view, specify the starting and ending records in **Range: from** and **to**. You can specify a range of headings by entering leading text, e.g., Abr through Doc. You can also specify a range of record numbers (e.g., 55 through 79) within which Cindex should confine the search. To search among specified headings, you need only provide as much of the beginning text as will identify a record uniquely. Your specification can include leading text from a subheading: append a semicolon to the heading text then add subheading text (see the example under “Navigation Shortcuts” on page 65). To specify a heading that begins with digits, place a \ before the first digit; Cindex will otherwise interpret leading digits as a record number.

If you omit the first part of the range Cindex will search from the head of the index until it finds a record that matches the end of the range. If you omit the second part of the range, Cindex will search from the starting record until it reaches the foot of the index.

**NOTE:** When Cindex searches among a range of records, it proceeds in whatever order the records are displayed on the screen. Before beginning the search it checks that the last-specified record appears after the first. If the last record appears before the first, Cindex will display a warning message.

- To search among records last modified between specified dates and/or times, type the starting and ending dates or times in the date boxes labeled **from** and **to**. Cindex interprets dates and times in the form appropriate to the country you are working in

---

## Finding Entries

(e.g., month, day, year or day, month, year) and can accept dates and times in a wide variety of forms (e.g., Jan. 1 96, 1/1/96, 1 January 96, January 1 1996, today, 3 pm). If you omit the year Cindex assumes the current year.; if you omit the month, Cindex assumes the current month; if you omit the day (providing only a time), Cindex assumes today. If you leave the starting date blank, Cindex assumes January 1, 1970; if you omit an ending date, Cindex assumes a date far in the future.

- To search among records made or edited by a particular user, enter the user's identifying initials in the **User ID** box.

**NOTE:** When you specify a range of records, or dates, or the User ID, and you do not specify text that Cindex should find, Cindex will find any record that meets your search criteria.

### Searching among Records with Particular Attributes

You can confine the search to records that possess specified attributes or lack specified attributes. In the **Only Among** box, click **Records that are** to confine the search to records that carry *all* the attributes you will check; click **Records that are not** to confine the search to records that carry *none of* the attributes you will check.

- To include or exclude new records (those created during your current session with Cindex) check **New Records**.
- To include or exclude records you have changed in the current session with Cindex, check **Modified Records**.
- To include or exclude deleted records (those that will not appear in the fully formatted index), check **Deleted Records**. For more information on deleted records see “Deleting and Restoring Records” on page 49.
- To include or exclude marked records (those on which Cindex was unable to undertake some global editing operation you had specified, usually because there was too little room in the record), check **Marked Records**. For more information on marked records, see “Marked Records” on page 83.
- To include or exclude records that contain automatically-generated cross-references, check **Generated Records**. For more information on generated records, see “Generating Cross-References Automatically” on page 113.
- To include or exclude labeled records, check **Labeled Records**. Use the drop-down list to specify a particular label, or any label. For more information on labeled records, see “Labeling Records” on page 49.



---

## Finding Entries

**NOTES:** When you are working with a fully formatted index, Cindex ignores deleted records and records that you have designated as hidden (see “Displaying Labeled Records” on page 55).

You need not specify target text (although you can) when deploying attributes (New, Modified, etc.) in a search. If you do not specify target text, Cindex finds any record that has all (or none) of the attributes you checked.

### Searching within Specified Headings

Cindex normally looks for the target text in all fields of a record. To confine the search to a specified field or fields use the pop-up menu at the bottom left of the window.

- To search among all fields choose *All Fields*.
- To search among all text fields (excluding the locator field) choose *All Text*.
- To search only within the lowest-level text field, choose *Last Text*.
- To search only within a specified text field (main heading, subheading, etc.) choose the field by name from the lower part of the list. You need not specify target text (although you can) when you confine the search to any single subheading field. If you do not specify target text, Cindex finds records in which that field contains no text. (You must always specify target text when you choose the main heading field, or *All Fields*, or *All Text*).

### Searching for Locators

To confine the search to the locator field choose *Page* from the pop-up menu at the bottom left of the window (this item—always the one immediately after *Last Text*—will have a different name if you have assigned a name to your locator field).

When you confine a search to the locator field, Cindex normally treats the search text as a locator specification, rather than plain text (the item **Evaluate References** is automatically checked). For example, if your search text is 57-66, Cindex will find any record that refers to a page within the range 57-66, rather than looking for the character sequence “57-66.” Cindex makes intelligent decisions about references. For example, if you ask it to find records that refer to any page in the range 22–35, it will also find a record in which the locator field contains a sequence such as 20–40. When you specify a range of pages, the second should be greater than the first. Cindex will warn you if you enter a badly-formed range.

---

## Finding Entries

Cindex can evaluate and search for complex locators (for example 1996: May 393) or ranges of them. “Evaluating and Sorting Page References” on page 128 provides more information on how Cindex evaluates these.

To find records that contain no page references, or contain badly-formed ranges of references, provide no page reference (leave the text field empty).

**NOTE:** Cindex understands that it should search for locators that fall within a range when it sees two locators separated by a hyphen, for example: 57-66. You may use another character as a connector that denotes an inclusive range, but only if you have told Cindex what this character is. “Specifying the Structure of Page References” on page 124 explains how to change the standard connecting character.

To prevent Cindex evaluating locators (and make it treat your search characters as plain text) when searching in the locator field, uncheck **Evaluate References**.

### Additional Options

Cindex normally accepts a match to the target text regardless of whether it forms a whole word or part of a word. To make Cindex accept matches to whole words only, check **Whole Word**. For this purpose a whole word is a continuous sequence of letters and digits. If your search text contains punctuation or spaces, the check box is dimmed.

Cindex normally ignores the case of letters when finding a match to the target text. To require matches of the same case, check **Case**.

In addition to searching for words or phrases, Cindex can look for more complicated sequences of characters that match a *pattern*, such as “any three digit number,” or “any occurrence of the word ‘and’ at the beginning of a line.” See “Patterns” on page 229 for a description of patterns and how to use them. To make Cindex treat the search target as a pattern rather than literal text, check **Pattern**. When Cindex searches for text that matches a pattern it dims the search options to evaluate locators, to find whole words, and to make case-insensitive matches.

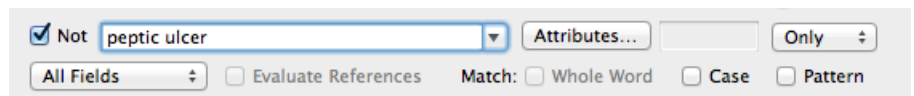
Cindex normally begins a search at the head of the index and progresses forward. To search backward from the end, check **Backward**; to search forward, uncheck **Backward**.

## *Conditional Searches*

Cindex lets you look for combinations of words or phrases, e.g., the occurrence of the word “university” and the word “finance” in the same record; it can also find an occurrence of a particular word or phrase *without* some other word or phrase, e.g., a reference to “Warsaw Pact” and no reference to “Soviet Union.”

The first step in finding such records is to form a simple statement of the conditions, e.g., Find university *and* finance, or Find Warsaw Pact *and not* Soviet Union, or Find cars *or* automobiles. When you do this it becomes clear that to make a conditional search you need to be able to represent the entities *and*, *or* and *not*. Cindex provides these entities (known as conditional or Boolean operators) for you to use in specifying conditions that a record must meet before it can be displayed.

To find records that do not contain the text, check **Not** (positioned immediately before the box where you specify the search text). For example, to find records that did not contain the phrase ‘peptic ulcer’, you would set up the search as shown in Figure 21.

The image shows a search interface with a text input field containing 'peptic ulcer'. To the left of the input field is a checked checkbox labeled 'Not'. To the right of the input field is a button labeled 'Attributes...'. Further right is a dropdown menu currently showing 'Only'. Below the input field is a dropdown menu showing 'All Fields'. To the right of this are three checkboxes: 'Evaluate References' (unchecked), 'Match: Whole Word' (unchecked), 'Case' (unchecked), and 'Pattern' (unchecked).

**FIGURE 21.** Finding records that lack specified text

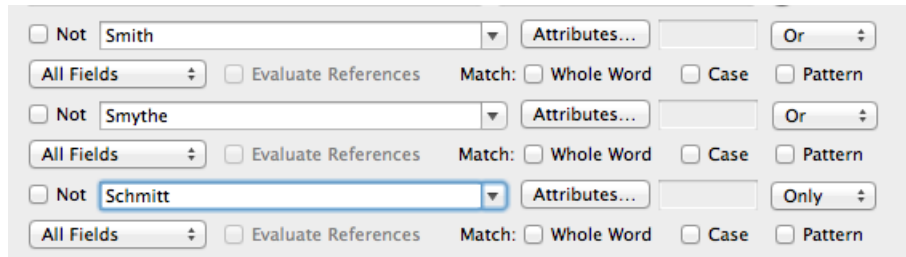
---

To find records that contain the specified text and/or some other text, select *and* or *or* from the pop-up menu to the far right of the text. Cindex will extend the window so that you can specify a second word or phrase to search for (and other attributes to be associated with it, such as a style or a whole word, etc.) By choosing *and* or *or* you can extend the window repeatedly for up to four search sequences. For example, to find any record that contained Smith *or* Smythe *or*

---

## Finding Entries

Schmitt, you would provide three search phrases, connecting the first to the second with *or* and the second to the third with *or*, as shown in Figure 22.

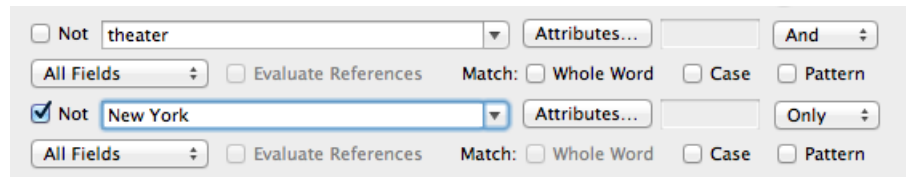


The screenshot shows a search interface with three rows of search criteria. Each row has a checkbox for 'Not', a text input field, a dropdown menu for 'Attributes...', and a dropdown menu for the logical connector. The first row has 'Smith' in the input field and 'Or' in the connector dropdown. The second row has 'Smythe' in the input field and 'Or' in the connector dropdown. The third row has 'Schmitt' in the input field and 'Only' in the connector dropdown. Below each input field is a dropdown menu for 'All Fields'. To the right of each row are checkboxes for 'Evaluate References' and 'Match: Whole Word', 'Case', and 'Pattern'.

**FIGURE 22.** Finding records that contain one of several sequences

---

To find any record that contained theater *and not* New York, you would enter the search phrases as shown in Figure 23.



The screenshot shows a search interface with two rows of search criteria. The first row has a checkbox for 'Not', a text input field with 'theater', a dropdown menu for 'Attributes...', and a dropdown menu for the logical connector. The second row has a checked checkbox for 'Not', a text input field with 'New York', a dropdown menu for 'Attributes...', and a dropdown menu for the logical connector. Below each input field is a dropdown menu for 'All Fields'. To the right of each row are checkboxes for 'Evaluate References' and 'Match: Whole Word', 'Case', and 'Pattern'.

**FIGURE 23.** Finding records that contain two different sequences

---

For each component of a conditional search you can specify the field (if any) to which Cindex should confine the search, whether or not Cindex should seek a whole word, whether or not the search is to be case-sensitive, and whether or not the search sequence specifies a pattern.

### Grouping elements of a Search

A search expression that contains several components might be interpreted in a number of ways. For example, a search for

NATO **and not** Warsaw Pact **or** China **or** Japan

---

## Finding Entries

could mean “find a record that refers to Nato *and* *not* to the Warsaw pact, *or* a record that refers to China *or* a record that refers to Japan,” or it could mean “find a record that refers to Nato *and* does *not* refer to the Warsaw Pact or to China or to Japan.”

Cindex interprets the expression in the first way, as a result of following these simple rules: **not** applies only to the component immediately following, because it takes precedence over the other operators. Cindex then groups the components connected by **and** because **and** has a higher precedence than **or**. If we could use parentheses to indicate how Cindex groups the components for evaluation, we would write the previous search sequence as

(NATO **and** (**not** Warsaw Pact)) **or** China **or** Japan

Bear these issues in mind if you need to construct a complex search sequence. For example, to look for records that contained NATO *and* bombs *or* missiles, where you intended

NATO **and** (bombs **or** missiles)

you would specify a search for

NATO **and** bombs **or** NATO **and** missiles

## Evaluation Order

Cindex evaluates search components from first to last, and stops evaluation as soon as a test is conclusive. Thus, were you searching for

Smith **or** Smythe **or** Schmitt

and a record contained ‘Smith’, Cindex would not look for ‘Smythe’ or ‘Schmitt’.

---

## Printing Entries

Were you searching for

theater **and not** new york

and a record did not contain ‘theater,’ Cindex would not look for ‘new york.’

## PRINTING ENTRIES

---

Before you print the index you should ensure that you have selected a printer, and that you have specified the page setup you prefer.

### *Page Setup*

To specify how Cindex should print documents, choose **Page Setup** from the File menu. Cindex will display a sheet through which you can specify the size of paper you will use, the page orientation (portrait or landscape) and certain other options that depend on the kind of printer you are using. The available page setup options are explained in the documents provided with your printer or your Mac.

### *Printing*

Cindex prints entries exactly as you see them on the screen. If you are viewing a fully formatted index, the printed pages contain fully formatted entries; if you are viewing a draft format, the entries are printed in draft format. The index style and the layout of entries on the screen or page are determined by settings you make through choices from the Document menu. These are described fully in Chapter 10 “Formatting the Index” on page 165. When Cindex is installed it takes standard settings that will be suitable for many purposes.

To print entries as they appear on the screen, choose **Print** from the File menu. Cindex will display a sheet through which you can specify what should be printed, and how. Except for options noted below, all the settings you can make

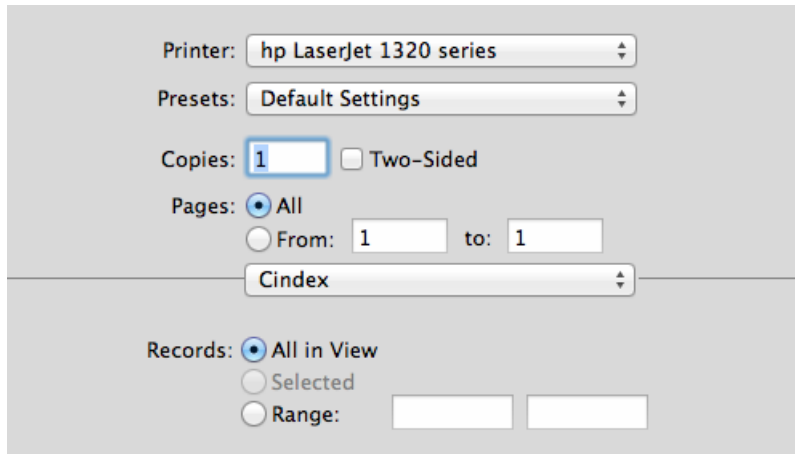
---

## Printing Entries

are determined by the software that controls your printer, not by Cindex, and are explained in the documents provided with your printer or your Mac.

### Choosing which Entries to Print

You can specify which entries should be printed from among those available in the current view of the index. To do this choose Cindex from the popup menu, as shown in Figure 24.



**FIGURE 24.** Cindex-specific settings for printing

---

- To print all the entries click **All in View**.
- To print selected entries, click **Selected** (this item is dimmed if no entries are selected).
- To print a range of entries, specify the starting entry at **From** and the ending entry at **To**. You may specify the entries by the leading text from their headings (for example, *Gov* through *Man*), or by their record numbers. If you need to print a range of subentries under a single heading, you can specify these by entering enough of the heading to specify it uniquely, then entering a semicolon, followed immediately by the beginning text of the subheading at which you want to start (or stop) printing. If you specify a starting entry but no ending one, Cindex will print entries from the starting one through the end of the index. If you specify an ending entry but no starting one, Cindex will print entries from the beginning of the index through the ending entry. To specify a heading that begins with a number, place a \ (backslash) immediately before

---

## Printing Entries

the first digit, otherwise Cindex will interpret the number as a record number. Because the \ has this special function, to specify any entry whose heading begins with \ you must place a \ before it (i.e., the specification must begin with \\).



## CHAPTER 5    *Advanced Editing*

---

Cindex provides several powerful capabilities that search for and replace text in records, adjust page references automatically (for example when pagination is changed after an index has been prepared), and consolidate or separate multiple references to the same heading. Cindex can also find orphaned subheadings and can reconcile headings so that these are removed or modified to ensure the index contains no unnecessary levels of heading.

### SEARCHING FOR AND REPLACING TEXT

---

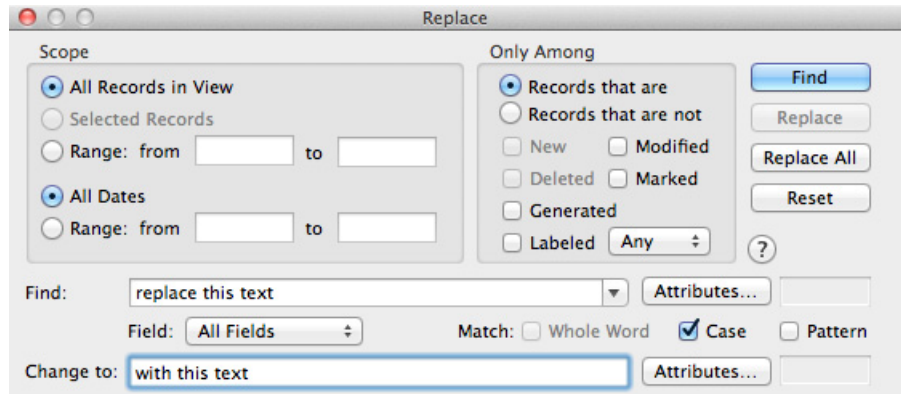
To search for and replace text anywhere in the index, choose **Replace...** from the Edit menu. Cindex will display the window shown in Figure 25. Through this you specify the text to be sought and the text to replace it.

**NOTE:** Although you can use **Replace** to make global changes to page references, Cindex provides a more flexible tool specially designed for adjusting page references. See the section “Adjusting References” on page 86.

To make a simple replacement of a word or phrase, type that word or phrase where the indicator is blinking in the **Find** field, and the text to replace it in the **Change to** field. Click **Find** (or hit RETURN) to begin the search.

---

## Searching for and Replacing Text



**FIGURE 25.** Replace panel

---

Cindex looks for matching text that falls entirely within a single field of a record; it will not find a phrase that straddles two or more fields of a record. When Cindex finds the first record that contains the target word or phrase, it displays the record in the main index window, and highlights the record (in draft view) or the whole entry (in fully formatted view). Click **Replace** to replace it, or **Find Again** to move to the next instance. Click **Reset** (or hit ESC) to clear a search.

**NOTE:** Cindex maintains a list of the words and phrases used in recent searches. To search for a word or phrase you have sought in the recent past, click the arrow button to the right of the **Find** box, then choose from the list displayed.

To replace all instances of matching text click **Replace All**. When you choose to replace all occurrences, Cindex continues its search from the current record and replaces all further occurrences of the matching text. It does not replace text in records you have already passed over.

**NOTES:** When using **Replace All** take care not to make unintended replacements. A common error is the substitution of embedded words. For example, if you changed all occurrences of “disc” to “disk,” you could produce words such as “diskussion” or “diskard.” You can avoid this hazard by checking **Whole Word**.

---

## Searching for and Replacing Text

You cannot undo replacements, but you can restore the index to its last-saved form by choosing **Revert to Saved** from the File menu. See “Preserving and Discarding Changes” on page 10.

To remove specified text from records, leave the **Change to** field blank. If you delete text that occupies a complete field in a record, Cindex will remove the empty field from the record (unless the record would contain fewer than the required minimum number of fields).

### Marked Records

If the replacement of one word or phrase by another would cause a record to exceed the space allowed for it, Cindex will not make the change. When this happens, Cindex puts a special internal mark on the record, and after it has completed its scan of the index, displays a warning message. When you view records in draft view, Cindex displays # beside any record that has been marked. The mark has no function other than to indicate that Cindex could not complete some operation on the record. The mark is never displayed when you view or print a fully formatted index. The record remains marked until you change it with **Edit Record**, from the Edit menu. You can search the index with **Find** (Edit menu) to find records that have been marked.

## *Finding and Replacing Styles and Fonts*

To search for text formatted in a particular style or font, click **Attributes...** (next to the **Find** text). Cindex will display a sheet through which you can specify the attributes of the text you are looking for. Click **OK** to set the style(s) or font. To indicate that it will search for styled text, Cindex displays the appropriate letter (B for boldface, etc.) to the right of the **Attributes...** button. If Cindex will search for a font, it displays *f* beside the button.

To change attributes or add attributes to text that previously lacked them, click **Attributes...**, next to the **Change to** text. Cindex will display a sheet through which you can specify changes you want to make.

- To leave a style unchanged (either present or absent) click the appropriate button under **Ignore**.
- To add a style click the appropriate button under **Apply**.

---

## Searching for and Replacing Text

- To remove a style click the appropriate button under **Remove**. (Buttons in this column are dimmed if you have not specified that you are *searching* for the style.)
- To leave the font unchanged, click **Ignore** in the **Font** box.
- To change the font click **Change** in the **Font** box. Choose <Default> to restore the font to the default, or choose a font by name to apply a particular font.

### Searching for and Replacing Text Attributes Only

To search for and replace styles or fonts regardless of the text they are attached to do the following:

- Specify search attributes without specifying search text
- Specify replacement attributes without specifying replacement text.

**NOTE:** The **Find** button is dimmed if you specify neither a font change nor a style change.

## Controlling the Scope of the Search

Cindex normally searches for and replaces text among all records accessible in the current view.

- To confine the search to records you have selected, click **Selected Records**.
- To confine the search to a range of records within the view, specify the starting and ending records in **From** and **To**. You can enter the beginning text of the headings that define the range (e.g., Abr and Doc) or a range of record numbers (e.g., 55 and 79). To confine the range to some subheadings under a heading, enter in each box as much text from the heading as you need to specify it uniquely, then type a semicolon followed immediately by the leading text of the relevant subheading. If you are specifying a heading that begins with a numeral, place a \ (backslash) immediately before the number. Otherwise, Cindex will interpret leading numerals as a record number. Because the \ has this special function in a record specification, to find any record that begins with this character you must place a \ before it; that is, \\ must appear at the beginning of the specification. If you omit the first part of the range Cindex will search from the head of the index until it finds a record that matches the end of the range. If you omit the second part of the range, Cindex will search from the starting record until it reaches the foot of the index.
- To search among records last modified between specified dates and/or times, type the starting and ending dates or times in the date boxes labeled **from** and **to**. Cindex interprets dates and times in the form appropriate to the country you are working in

(e.g., month, day, year or day, month, year) and can accept dates and times in a wide variety of forms (e.g., Jan. 1 96, 1/1/96, 1 January 96, January 1 1996, today, 3 pm). If you omit the year Cindex assumes the current year. If you omit the month, Cindex assumes the current month; if you omit the day (providing only a time), Cindex assumes today. If you leave the starting date blank, Cindex assumes January 1, 1970; if you omit an ending date, Cindex assumes a date far in the future.

### *Searching and Replacing among Records with Particular Attributes*

You can confine the search to records that possess specified attributes or lack specified attributes. In the **Only Among** box, click **Records that are** to confine the search to records that carry *all* the attributes you will check; click **Records that are not** to confine the search to records that carry *none of* the attributes you will check.

- To include or exclude new records (those created during your current session with Cindex) check **New Records**.
- To include or exclude records you have changed in the current session with Cindex, check **Modified Records**.
- To include or exclude deleted records (those that will not appear in the fully formatted index), check **Deleted Records**.
- To include or exclude marked records (those on which Cindex was unable to undertake some editing operation you had specified, usually because there was too little room in the record), check **Marked Records**.
- To include or exclude records that contain automatically-generated cross-references, check **Generated Records**. For more information on generated records, see “Generating Cross-References Automatically” on page 113.
- To include or exclude labeled records, check **Labeled Records**. Use the drop-down list to specify a particular label, or any label. For more information on labeled records, see “Labeling Records” on page 49.

**NOTE:** When you are working with a fully formatted view, Cindex ignores deleted records and records that you have designated as hidden (see “Displaying Labeled Records” on page 55).

### *Searching and Replacing in Particular Fields*

Cindex normally looks for the target text in all fields of a record. To confine the search to a specified field or fields choose from the **Field** pop-up menu under the **Find** field.

- To search among all fields choose *All Fields*.
- To search among all text fields (excluding the locator field) choose *All Text*.
- To search within the lowest-level text field, choose *Last Text*.
- To search only within a specified text field (main heading, subheading, etc.) choose the field by name from the lower part of the list.
- To confine the search to the locator field choose *Page* (this item—always the one immediately after *Last Text*—will have a different name if you have assigned a name to your locator field).

### *Additional Options*

Cindex normally finds and replaces the specified text regardless of whether it matches a whole word or part of a word. To make Cindex accept matches to whole words only, check **Whole Word**.

When Cindex searches for text to replace, it normally requires a case-sensitive match. To make Cindex ignore letter case, uncheck **Case**.

Cindex can search for and replace text that matches a pattern (sometimes known as a regular expression). “Patterns” on page 229 describes the syntax of patterns, and how to exploit them in making complex replacements. To make Cindex treat the search target as a pattern rather than literal text, check **Pattern**.

---

## ADJUSTING REFERENCES

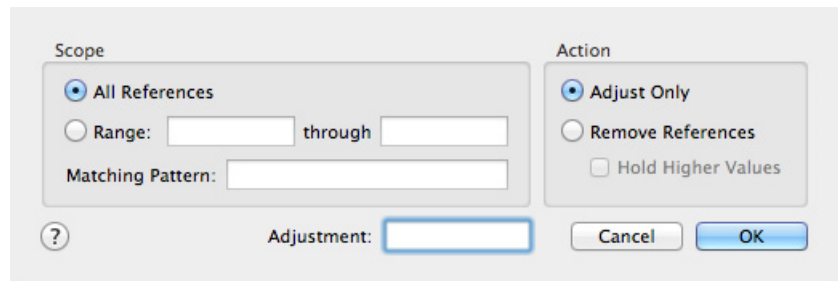
Indexes often are prepared when final pagination is uncertain, requiring you to change page references when the correct numbers become known. Page numbers might also need revision if a previously indexed volume is split into parts, or several separate volumes are combined into a single one. Cindex provides special

---

## Adjusting References

tools for adjusting page references. These tools allow you to add offsets to page numbers or subtract offsets from them. For example, you can add 2 to every reference to pages between 550 and 634.

To make adjustments to page numbers, choose **Alter References...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display the sheet shown in Figure 26.



**FIGURE 26.** Alter References sheet

---

**NOTE:** Before using any of the procedures described in this section you should ensure that Cindex knows what character you use to denote an inclusive range of references, and what character you use to separate successive references when more than one appears in a page field. “Specifying the Structure of Page References” on page 124 explains how to specify these.

### *Adding an Offset to All Page Numbers*

To add an offset to all page references given in Arabic numerals, in all records accessible in the current view:

1. Under **Scope** click **All References**.
2. Under **Action** click **Adjust Only**.
3. Enter in **Adjustment** the number you want to add to (or subtract from) every page reference in the index.
4. Click **OK** to adjust all page references.

---

## Adjusting References

Cindex ignores references in Roman numerals, cross-references, and any references that contain no Arabic numerals (e.g., Frontispiece, or February). Cindex adjusts references in all records that are accessible in the current view, coping properly with ranges such as 78-82. If you are viewing all records, Cindex will act on all records; if you are viewing a group of records, it will act only on records in the group.

**NOTES:** You cannot undo your alterations, but you can restore the index to its last-saved form by choosing **Revert to Saved** from the File menu. See “Preserving and Discarding Changes” on page 10.

An adjustment to page references may require Cindex to add characters to a record. If there is insufficient space for the alteration, no adjustment is made and Cindex marks the record. If Cindex has marked any records it will display a warning message after it has completed the adjustments. If a record is marked, a # appears beside it when it is displayed in draft view. You can find marked records with **Find** (Edit menu). Cindex removes the mark when you edit the record.

### Adjusting Parts of Compound Locators

If your locators are compound references, (e.g., 23:14:2 or 34[2]:25–27), Cindex will normally adjust only the first component. To make adjustments to other parts of compound references, you can provide a pattern to specify leading parts of references that Cindex should skip to find the single element it should adjust. “Using Patterns when Altering References” on page 245 explains how to use patterns to specify which element of compound references Cindex should adjust.

### *Adding an Offset to a Range of Page Numbers*

Sometimes you will need to adjust page references to a restricted set of pages. To add an offset to references falling within a specified range:

1. Under **Scope** click **Range**, and enter the lowest and highest page numbers that should be adjusted. Be sure to enter the numbers as they exist *before* adjustment. If you specify only an upper limit Cindex assumes the lower limit to be 1. If you specify only a lower limit, Cindex assumes the upper limit to be all higher references.
2. Under **Action** click **Adjust Only**.
3. Specify in **Adjustment** the offset to be added to (or subtracted from) every reference that falls within the range.
4. Click **OK** to adjust references that fall within the required range.



---

## Adjusting References

References needing adjustment may be intermixed in a record with others that do not need adjustment; Cindex disregards references that fall outside the range you have specified.

### *Removing References to Page Numbers*

To remove references to a range of pages from an index (you might need to do this when a chapter is removed from a book after you have prepared the index):

1. Under **Scope** click **Range**, and enter the lowest and highest page numbers that should be removed. You must specify at least one limit (high or low) of the range of references to be removed. If you specify only an upper limit Cindex assumes the lower limit to be 1. If you specify only a lower limit, Cindex assumes the upper limit to be all higher references.
2. Under **Action** click **Remove References**. When Cindex removes page references, it normally adjusts all references to higher-numbered pages. You can inhibit this adjustment (if you want to leave room for new material) by checking **Hold Higher Values**.
3. If you want to add an additional offset to (or subtract one from) the automatic adjustment of references to higher numbered pages, specify it in **Adjustment**.
4. Click **OK** to remove all the required references.

Cindex removes only references in Arabic numerals. It copes intelligently with references that specify a range of page numbers (e.g., 45–60). If either the high or the low limit falls within the range defined by such a reference, it is adjusted appropriately.

### *Adjusting References after Movement of Chapters or Sections*

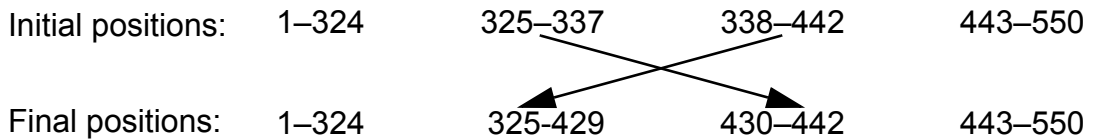
All too often chapters or sections of a book are moved to different places after the text has been indexed. As long as you know the old and new page numbers, Cindex can correct all the entries automatically. By forming a group for the records that are associated with each chapter or section that needs to be moved, you can quickly and easily adjust the entries in the index.

Suppose that a book of 550 pages contains a chapter beginning on page 325 and ending on page 337 (thirteen pages). After you have indexed the book, the pub-

---

## Adjusting References

lisher moves the chapter to start at page 430 and end at page 442. You have to add 105 to all references to pages in the chapter being moved, and you have to subtract 13 from all references to pages in the block that is displaced. In planning the alterations it helps to visualize the layout in blocks of pages, like this:



To make the adjustments, follow these steps:

1. Ensure that each record contains only a single page reference (or that all references in any one record refer to the same chapter or section). To ensure that each record contains only a single locator, choose **Expand** from the Tools menu (see “Expanding Index Entries” on page 219). Cindex will create as many new records as it needs to accommodate a single reference in each one.
2. Ensure that the view is set to show all records. If necessary choose **All Records** from the View menu.
3. Form a group of records that refer to the each block of pages to be changed:  
Use **Find...** (Edit menu) to find records that contain references to the pages in the required range (for the first group this would be 325-337):

☐ Not

☒ Evaluate References Match: ☐ Whole Word ☐ Case ☐ Pattern

Enter the range of page numbers as the text to be found, being careful to separate the range with a hyphen (see figure).

Choose the locator field from the **Field** pop-up menu to confine the search to the page references, and be sure to check **Evaluate References** (see figure).

Click **Find All**. Cindex will make a temporary group that contains all the records with references in the specified range.

Choose **Save Group** from the Edit menu and save the group with an appropriate name.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to form a group of records for each additional block of page numbers the need adjustment (in this example, 338-342).

---

## Reconciling Heading Levels

5. Add the appropriate offset to all references to the each block of pages:  
Set the view to show the appropriate group (choose it by name from the **Group** sub-menu in the View menu).  
Choose **Alter References...** from the Tools menu.  
Click **Adjust Only** and set **Adjustment** to the offset required for that group (in this example the first group would require an adjustment of 105).  
Click **OK** to make the adjustment.
6. Repeat step 5 for each additional group that requires adjustment (in this example the second group would require an adjustment of -13).

You can use this technique even when many segments of a book have been rearranged.

---

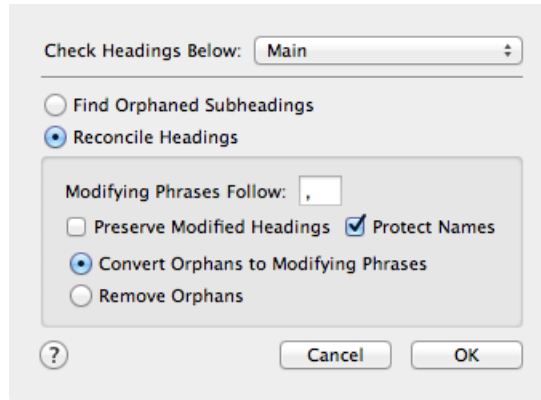
## RECONCILING HEADING LEVELS

When forming entries you will often create records that have more levels of headings than are necessary, and in which orphaned subheadings would be better organized as modifiers of the heading above (or perhaps removed). Conversely, you might create several records, each of which has a different modifier following the same heading, but which would be better arranged as a series of subheadings under a single main heading. Cindex can find orphaned subheadings, and can reconcile headings automatically by making conversions of either kind.

To find orphaned subheadings, or to reconcile headings, choose **Reconcile Headings...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display the sheet shown in Figure 27.

---

## Reconciling Heading Levels



**FIGURE 27.** Reconcile Headings sheet

---

Choose from the **Check Headings Below** drop-down list the level below which you want Cindex to examine subheadings. For example, to seek orphans or redundant subheadings only at the sub-subheading level or below, choose the name of the subheading field.

### Finding Orphaned Subheadings

To obtain a list of orphaned subheadings click **Find Orphaned Subheadings** then click **OK**. If Cindex finds any records with orphaned subheadings it will display a window that contains a list of them. On each line Cindex displays the number of the record and information about the orphan. Click any item in the list (or use the ↑ and ↓ keys) to bring its record into view in the main document window; double-click a selected item (or hit RETURN) to open a window in which to edit its record.

### Adjusting Headings

To adjust records so that the index contains no redundant heading levels, or orphaned subheadings, click **Reconcile Headings**.

When Cindex reconciles headings it first scans the whole index looking for modified headings (i.e., those in which the heading is followed by some qualifying phrase that might otherwise be a subheading). Cindex normally assumes that text appearing in the heading after a comma (and not part of some larger seg-

---

## Reconciling Heading Levels

ment of text in quotation marks or parentheses) is a modifier; you can specify another character if you use a different one to introduce modifiers. Wherever Cindex finds a modified heading, it breaks that provisionally into a heading and subheading (it will also apply the same procedure to subheadings and sub-subheadings). You can inhibit this step if you wish.

Cindex then re-scans the index, converting any redundant subheading to a modifier of the heading at the level above. The result is an index in which no modified headings exist that should be heading and subheading, and in which no levels of subheading are redundant.

Before you click **OK**, review the following options.

### Options

If your headings contain some character other than a comma to introduce a modifying phrase (for example, a semicolon), set the appropriate character at **Modifying Phrases Follow**. You should enter only a single character.

If you want Cindex merely to convert redundant levels of subheading to modified headings (without previously examining and possibly breaking any modified headings that currently exist) check **Preserve Modified Headings**.

If your index contains words or phrases that might follow a comma (or other introductory character you have specified with **Modifying Phrases Follow**) and which do not represent modified headings (for example, in a name index, where a forename or initials might follow a surname), you should check **Protect Names**. This prevents Cindex breaking any heading if the text that follows the introductory character begins with an uppercase letter. **Protect Names** is automatically checked if you check **Preserve Modified Headings**.

When Cindex encounters an orphaned subheading (i.e., the only subheading at a particular level) it can convert the subheading to a phrase modifying the heading above or it can remove the subheading altogether. Click **Convert Orphans to Modifying Phrases** to convert the subheading to a modifier of the heading above; click **Remove Orphans** to delete the orphaned subheading (leaving the rest of the record intact).

---

## Reconciling Heading Levels

**NOTES:** You can reconcile headings only when you are viewing All Records and only when you are viewing them in alphabetical order.

Cindex adds characters to a record when reconciling headings. On occasion Cindex may be unable to reconcile headings in a record because the record cannot accommodate the additional characters, or would contain too many fields. If this happens Cindex will mark the record and will display a warning message.

You cannot undo changes made during reconciliation, but you can restore the index to its last-saved form by choosing **Revert to Saved** from the File menu. See “Preserving and Discarding Changes” on page 10.

## *CHAPTER 6    Checking Spelling*

---

Cindex can check your index entries to find misspellings and typographical mistakes. The spell-checker is organized to cope with the special demands of checking index entries (for example, it ignores parenthetical endings to words, and it will ignore page references if you wish).

### CHECKING WORDS IN ENTRIES

---

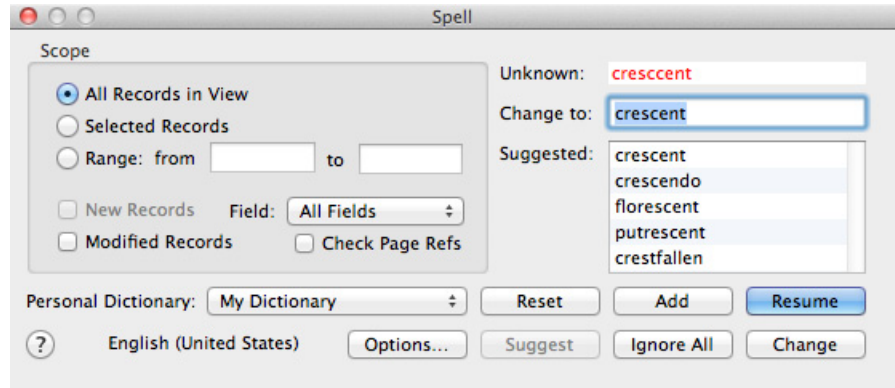
To check the spellings of words in entries, choose **Spelling** from the Edit menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 28.

Cindex is provided with one standard dictionary, for US English. Dictionaries for other dialects and languages are available via internet download. For indexers with specialized needs, a dictionary containing medical terms is available. You can also create your own dictionaries for terms that are not in any standard dictionary.

Cindex checks spelling in the language of its main dictionary. This is initially assumed to be English. “Languages” on page 101 explains how to choose another language.

---

## Checking Words in Entries



**FIGURE 28.** Spelling panel

---

To begin checking the spelling of entries click **Start**. Cindex will examine entries from the first accessible in the current view.

To restore the spelling checker to its initial state, check **Reset**, or hit ESC.

If Cindex finds a word it does not know, a questionably punctuated word, or a duplicated word, it will display the word in the box at the top right-hand corner of the panel.

### Misspelled Words

If Cindex does not know the word, or the word is badly punctuated, Cindex will try to suggest alternatives. If Cindex makes suggestions it puts the most probable word (which will be at the top of the list) in the **Change To** box; if Cindex can find no probable alternative spelling, it places a copy of the unknown word in the **Change To** box. In either case Cindex highlights the word, and you can edit it as required.

**NOTE:** If you prefer Cindex to offer suggestions only when you ask for them, you can disable the automatic suggestion. “Suggesting Alternative Spellings” on page 102 explains how to do this.



---

## Checking Words in Entries

If the unknown word is misspelled, and Cindex has placed the correctly spelled version in the **Change To** box, click **Change** to accept the suggestion and continue.

If the correctly spelled word is somewhere in the list of suggestions, click it to place a copy in the **Change To** box, then click **Change** to change the misspelled word.

If Cindex has not suggested the correct word, type the correct one directly into the **Change To** box then click **Change**; Cindex will check the word you have typed. To delete a misspelled word simply remove it from the **Change To** box.

**NOTE:** You can at any time place a copy of the original (unknown) word in the **Change To** box: simply click the unknown word.

### Unknown but Correctly Spelled Words

If Cindex objects to a word that is correctly spelled, you can ignore the single occurrence by clicking **Ignore**; you can ignore all future occurrences within the current session by clicking **Ignore All**. If you want Cindex to remember a new word permanently, click **Add** to add it to a personal dictionary.

### Duplicate Words

If a word is duplicated, Cindex indicates this. To delete the word click **Delete**; to ignore the duplicated word click **Ignore**.

## *Using Personal Dictionaries*

You can maintain personal dictionaries for specialized terms. When Cindex encounters a word that is not in its main language dictionary it looks for it in a personal dictionary (if you have designated one). You can keep as many personal dictionaries as you wish, but you can use only one at a time. You add words to your active personal dictionary as you encounter them while checking spelling.

To add a word to a personal dictionary click **Add**. Cindex will add the word to whichever dictionary is named in the **Personal Dictionary** pop-up menu. When Cindex is first installed it has no personal dictionaries, and the pop-up menu will show *<None Selected>*.

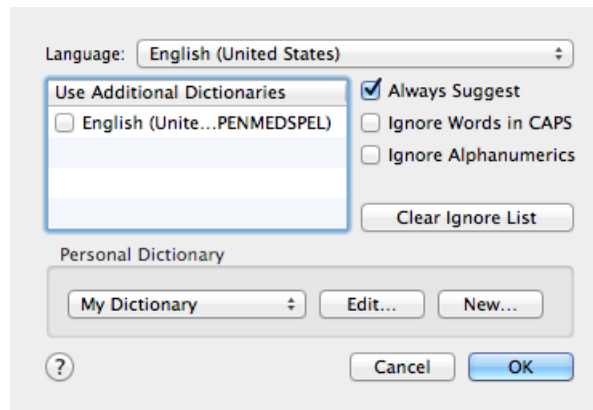
---

## Checking Words in Entries

If no dictionary has been selected, Cindex will ask if you want to create a new dictionary. Click **OK** to create a dictionary (Cindex will then ask you to provide a name for the dictionary, before adding the word to it); otherwise click **Cancel**. When you create a new personal dictionary, or choose one from the **Personal Dictionary** pop-up menu, Cindex remembers your choice.

### Managing Personal Dictionaries

To examine or edit the words in a personal dictionary, click **Options...** Cindex will display the sheet shown in Figure 29.



**FIGURE 29.** Spelling Options sheet

---

Choose the dictionary you want from the list under **Personal Dictionary**, then click **Edit**. Cindex will display a list of the words in the dictionary. You can add, change or delete words freely, and you can paste text from other documents. Words may be in any order, but each must be on a separate line, or be separated from the next by some space.

To create a new, empty, personal dictionary, click **New**. Cindex will display a box in which you can type the name of the new dictionary.

### *Interrupting and Resuming Spell Checking*

While Cindex is checking the spelling of entries, you can interrupt it (for example to edit a record) by clicking the main index window, then double-clicking the record you want to edit. To resume checking spelling at the point where you interrupted it, open the Spelling window if necessary, and click **Resume**.

**NOTE:** You can resume checking spelling only if during the interruption you did not check spelling in another index.

To stop checking and reset the spelling checker so that it can begin again at the head of the index, click **Reset**.

**NOTE:** If, during the course of checking entries you change the scope of the examination—for example, you change from checking all fields of records to checking only the main headings—Cindex will reset the spelling checker so that it restarts at the beginning of the index.

## CHECKING ONLY PART OF THE INDEX

---

Cindex normally checks the spelling of all records accessible in the current view of the index, and normally checks words in all the text fields of records. It ignores anything but cross-references in the locator field. You can confine the examination to a subset of the records in the current view, and you can control which fields of records are checked.

### *Specified Range of Records*

To check all records accessible in the current view, click **All Records in View**.

To confine the check to records you have selected, click **Selected Records** (this is dimmed if no records are selected).

To confine the check to a range of records in the view, specify the starting and ending records in **From** and **To**. You can specify a range of headings by entering leading text, e.g., *Abr* through *Doc*. You can also specify a range of record numbers (e.g., 55 through 79) within which Cindex should confine the search. If you

---

## Checking Only Part of the Index

want to check among specified headings, you need only provide as much of the beginning text as will identify a record uniquely. You can specify leading text from a subheading by appending a semicolon to the heading text then adding subheading text. To specify a heading that begins with digits, place a \ before the first numeral; Cindex will otherwise interpret leading digits as a record number. If you omit the first part of the range Cindex will examine entries from the head of the index until it finds a record that matches the end of the range. If you omit the second part of the range, Cindex will examine entries from the starting record until it reaches the foot of the index. If you omit both ends of the range, Cindex examines all records in the current view.

**NOTE:** When Cindex examines a range of records, it proceeds in whatever order the records are displayed on the screen. Before beginning the examination it checks that the last record in the range appears after the first. If the last record appears before the first, Cindex will warn you.

### Checking only Records with Particular Attributes

You can further restrict spell-checking to records with particular attributes:

To examine only records created during your current session with Cindex, check **New Records** (this option is dimmed if there are no new records)

To examine only records changed in the current session with Cindex, check **Modified Records**.

### *Specified Fields in Records*

Cindex normally checks all text fields of a record; in the locator field it normally examines only cross-references. To confine the search to a specified field or fields choose from the **Field** pop-up menu.

- To check all fields choose *All Fields*.
- To check all text fields (excluding the locator field) choose *All Text*.
- To check only the lowest-level text fields choose *Last Text*.
- To check only within a specified text field (main heading, subheading, etc.) choose the field by name from the lower part of the list.

---

## Spelling Options

- To confine the check to the locator field choose *Page* (this item—always the one immediately after *Last Text*—will have a different name if you have assigned a name to your locator field). Cindex normally checks only cross-references in this field. If you want Cindex to examine the spelling of locators other than cross-references, check **Check Page Refs**.

**NOTE:** If you have used the **Field** pop-up menu to exclude the locator field, Cindex will dim the item **Check Page Refs**.

## SPELLING OPTIONS

---

You can control several aspects of the spelling check. Click **Options** in the Spelling window to display the sheet shown in Figure 29.

### *Languages*

To specify the language in which Cindex will check spelling, choose from the **Language** pop-up menu. If supplementary dictionaries are available for that language, they will be displayed in the **Use Additional Dictionaries** list. Check any you want to use.

If the language you want is not displayed, you can download a dictionary. Cindex employs the open-source spell-checking technology that is used in software such as the web browser Firefox and the email client Thunderbird. Dictionaries for many languages, and some dictionaries containing specialized terms, are available at no cost.

### Installing Dictionaries

To enable Cindex to use additional dictionaries, you must install them in the correct place. Follow these steps to find and install a dictionary:

- Browse available language dictionaries at <https://addons.mozilla.org/en-US/thunderbird/language-tools/>. Choose and download your dictionary package. A medical dictionary package is also available at <https://addons.mozilla.org/en-US/thunderbird/downloads/latest/6526/addon-6526-latest.xpi>.
- Append the filename extension ".zip" to the name of the downloaded file, then unzip it.

---

## Spelling Options

- Inside the unzipped folder will be another folder named dictionaries. The dictionaries folder contains two files, one whose filename has the extension .aff, and another (with the same name) and extension .dic. The files are named using a standard convention for representing languages and country variants. For example: en\_US.aff and en\_US.dic (US English); en\_AU.aff and en\_AU.dic (Australian English); nl\_NL.aff and nl\_NL.dic (Dutch).

- Copy or drag the .aff file and the .dic file to this folder:

Macintosh HD:Library:Spelling

or this folder:

Macintosh HD:Library:Application Support:Cindex

**NOTE:** If your disk is not named Macintosh HD, substitute the name of your disk in the instructions above.

### *General Options*

#### Suggesting Alternative Spellings

Cindex can suggest alternative spellings of words it does not recognize. It can do this whenever it encounters an unknown word, or only when you request it. When Cindex is first installed it is set to suggest spellings automatically.

To make Cindex seek alternative spellings whenever it finds an unknown word, click **Always Suggest**. To make Cindex suggest spellings only when you request them, uncheck **Always Suggest**. Cindex will then suggest alternatives only when you click **Suggest** in the main spelling window. Cindex remembers your setting until you change it again.

#### Ignoring Words in Capital Letters

To make Cindex ignore words in capitals (often abbreviations or acronyms) check **Ignore Words in CAPS**. Cindex remembers your setting from session to session.

#### Ignoring Alphanumeric Sequences

To make Cindex ignore alphanumeric character sequences such as aa99 or 9b32, check **Ignore Alphanumerics**; if you leave this item unchecked, Cindex will treat all such sequences as misspelled words. Cindex remembers your setting from session to session.

---

## Spelling Options

### Clearing Words to be Ignored

Each time you click **Ignore All** when checking a document, Cindex adds the word to be ignored to a private list that it maintains for the duration of your current session. Cindex discards this list when you quit. If you want to clear that list without quitting, so that Cindex forgets the words you had told it to ignore, click **Clear Ignore List**.

---

## Spelling Options



## CHAPTER 7 *Cross-References*

---

Cindex does much of the work required to manage cross-references: it will place cross-references in the position of your choice (immediately following the heading, or before or after subheadings); it will automatically format the introductory phrase (*See* and *See also*) and the body of the cross-reference in whatever style you choose; it will sort and combine multiple references to the same heading or subheading; it will check cross-references and warn you if you have made circular references or references to non-existent entries. Cindex will also tell you if you have made cross-references to headings under which there are fewer than a specified minimum number of entries. Cindex can generate cross-references automatically, so that, for example, if a particular heading appears in your index, there will always be a correctly-formed cross-reference to it.

### HOW CINDEX IDENTIFIES CROSS-REFERENCES

---

To identify cross-references and organize them correctly, Cindex has to know not only what word will begin a cross-reference (e.g., *See*), but also what words might make up the remainder of the introductory phrase (e.g., *also* or *under*). Cindex normally assumes that a cross-reference can begin with *see* (in any mixture of upper- and lowercase letters) followed by any combination of *also* and *under*. Thus, *See*, *See also*, *See under* and *See also under* are all acceptable introductions to cross-references. If your cross-references begin with a word other than *see* and continue with words other than *also* or *under*, you must change the settings Cindex uses, otherwise it will be unable to check or format cross-references.

To manage cross-references properly Cindex also has to know how they are punctuated. If you place several cross-references in a single record, Cindex needs to know how to distinguish them, so that it can check them and format them properly. Cindex normally assumes that one cross-reference is separated from the next by a semicolon (;) and looks for this character when examining entries. Cindex also uses this character when it combines and sorts multiple cross-references from several records under the same heading. If Cindex does not know how to separate multiple cross-references it will not be able to check them or format them.

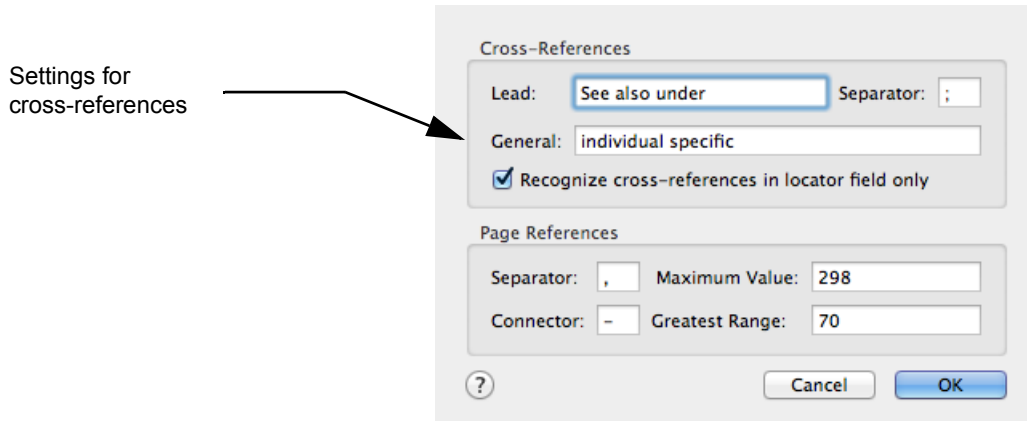
Regardless of where you want cross-references to appear in formatted entries, you should enter them in the locator fields of records. If you enter cross-references in the locator field, Cindex will be able to place them properly, punctuate them correctly, and combine and sort multiple references from several records under the same heading. Cindex does not prevent you entering cross-references in other fields of records, but most of its capabilities for managing cross-references will not be available if you do.

### *Specifying the Structure of Cross-References*

To specify the structure of a cross-reference, choose **Reference Syntax...** from the Document menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 30.

---

## How Cindex Identifies Cross-References



**FIGURE 30.** Reference Syntax panel

---

Items that affect how Cindex recognizes cross-references are in the **Cross-References** box.

To specify the words that can begin the introductory phrase, type them at **Lead**. You may enter text in upper- or lowercase letters—Cindex ignores letter case when searching for these words. The first word in the list must be the word that begins any cross-reference, but subsequent words in the list may appear in any order. The list Cindex uses initially lets it recognize cross-references that begin with *see* and continue with *also* or *under*, or *also under*.

To specify the character that will separate one cross-reference from the next, when more than one cross-reference is made from a heading, enter a single ASCII character at **Separator**.

To specify words that introduce general cross-references of the form “*See individual drugs*” or “*See also specific treaties*,” enter the appropriate words at **General**. When Cindex is installed this list contains the words ‘individual’ and ‘specific’. Cindex uses these words when:

---

## Verifying Cross-References

- sorting multiple cross-references to the same heading; those that begin with a general term are normally placed at the end of the series.
- verifying cross-references; Cindex does not look for a target entry for any cross-reference that begins with a general term.

To permit Cindex to recognize cross-references entered as subheadings, uncheck **Recognize cross-references in locator field only**. This is generally not recommended because some of the tools for managing cross-reference work only with cross-references entered in the locator field. Moreover, if you enter a cross-reference a subheading, Cindex may be unable to distinguish it from normal text that begins with the words used to identify a cross-reference.

**NOTE:** To use the word that introduces a cross-reference (usually ‘see’) in some other context, place a ~ (tilde) immediately in front of it to prevent Cindex treating it as the start of a cross-reference.

---

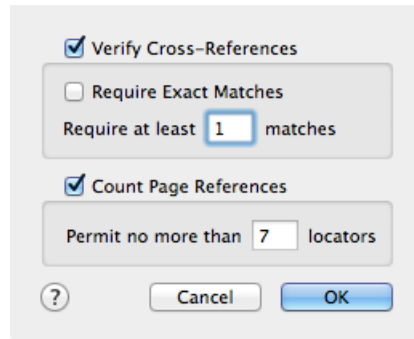
## VERIFYING CROSS-REFERENCES

As you enter a cross-reference in a record, Cindex can check and warn you if there is no target entry (see “Checking Cross-References” on page 42). Cindex can also undertake more comprehensive verification of cross-references, checking that they refer correctly to record(s), that they are not circular, that they are of the right type (e.g., *see* or *see also*), and that they match in letter accent and case. To help you decide when double-posting would be preferable to making a cross-reference, Cindex can also identify cross-references made to a heading under which there are fewer than a specified number of entries.

To verify cross-references among entries accessible in the current view, choose **Check References...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display the sheet shown in Figure 31. Check **Verify Cross-References** then click **OK**.

---

## Verifying Cross-References



**FIGURE 31.** Check References sheet

---

If a record contains several cross-references, Cindex will check all of them, as long as each reference is separated from the next by a semicolon (;) or some other punctuation mark you have designated (see “Specifying the Structure of Cross-References” on page 106).

**NOTES:** Cindex looks only among records accessible in the current view when seeking target entries.

Cindex ignores deleted records, both as the sources and the targets of cross-references. Cindex also ignores as sources any labeled records that you have designated as hidden (see “Displaying Labeled Records” on page 55).

Cindex maintains a list of words that introduce general cross-references that it will not attempt to verify (Cindex will, however, alert you if you make a general cross-reference of the wrong type). When Cindex is installed this list contains the words ‘individual’ and ‘specific.’ (“Specifying the Structure of Cross-References” on page 106 describes this list and how to modify it).

After Cindex has checked the index it will display a window that contains a list of incorrect or suspect cross-references, each followed (in square brackets) by the main heading of the record from which it was made. Before each item Cindex displays the number of the record and a note about what was wrong with the unverified reference:

---

## Verifying Cross-References

- **Missing** identifies a cross-reference to a heading that was not in the index.
- **Circular** identifies a cross-reference that refers to another cross-reference.
- **Too Few** identifies a cross-reference that refers to a heading with fewer than a stipulated minimum number of subentries (see “Finding References to Too Few Target Entries” on page 111).
- **Type** identifies a *See* cross-reference that should have been a *See also*, cross-reference (or *vice-versa*). This indicator can accompany any of the others, above.

Click any item in the list (or use the ↑ and ↓ keys) to bring its record into view in the main document window; double-click an item (or hit RETURN) to open a window in which to edit its record.

### Enforcing Strict Verification

Cindex normally accepts as a legitimate cross-reference a shortened form of the main entry, or one that differs in letter accent or case, so it will not object to cross-references of the kind shown below, where the *See also* reference is a short form of the complete entry.

Austin, Emily Margaret Brown (daughter of MA) ...  
...  
...  
...  
Bryan, Emily Austin. *See also* Austin, Emily Margaret

Cindex will also accept a cross-reference to a subentry made by referring to the entry as if the subentry were a modifier. The reference

Bone  
tuberculosis of. *See* Tuberculosis, skeletal tumors, 1878  
...  
...  
Tuberculosis  
skeletal, 2306

might be directing the reader to the subentry “skeletal” under the entry “Tuberculosis,” or it might refer to the modified heading “Tuberculosis, skeletal.” When Cindex encounters a cross-reference that has some qualifying phrase after a comma it first tries to find the modified heading (i.e., “Tuberculosis, skeletal”). If it fails to find that heading, it will try to find the heading “Tuberculosis” with the subheading “skeletal.” If the cross-reference contains multiple phrases separated by commas, Cindex assumes that the candidate subheading follows the last comma.

To insist that Cindex find an exact match (including letter accent and case) between a cross-reference and its target entry (and therefore flag references of the forms shown in the examples above) check **Require Exact Matches**. When you insist on exact matches, Cindex requires only that the text of the cross-reference matches that of the target; styles and fonts are ignored.

#### Finding References to Too Few Target Entries

A cross-reference can often be dispensed with altogether, and replaced with a full entry, when the heading to which it refers carries one or few entries. Indeed, many publishers require that no cross-references be made to fewer than some specified minimum number of entries.

Cindex can flag cross-references made to fewer than a certain number of entries. (Cindex must always find at least one target of a cross-reference, otherwise it flags a reference as missing.) Set **Require at Least *N* Matches** to the minimum number of target entries Cindex must find for each cross-reference. If you have stipulated that there should be more than one entry under the target heading, Cindex will display “Too few” if a cross-reference points to too few targets.

**NOTE:** Cindex can automatically convert cross-references to fully-qualified entries. See the following section.

## CONVERTING CROSS-REFERENCES TO FULLY-QUALIFIED ENTRIES

---

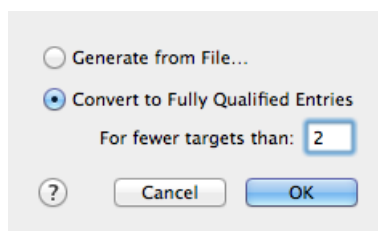
Cindex can automatically convert entries that make *see* references into fully qualified entries that contain all the information from target entries, giving rise to

---

## Converting Cross-References to Fully-Qualified Entries

fully double-posted entries. You may wish to convert cross-references when they point to fewer than a specified number of targets.

To convert *see* references, choose **Manage Cross-References** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display the box shown in Figure 32.



**FIGURE 32.** Managing Cross-References

---

Set **For fewer targets than** to the number of target entries below which you want Cindex to convert a cross-reference into a set of full entries. For example, to convert into a fully qualified entry any cross-reference that points to one or two target entries, set **For fewer targets than** to 3. Cindex examines all the records in the current view, and where it finds a cross-reference to fewer than the minimum number of target entries generates new records that contain full entries.

**NOTES:** Cindex deals only with records that contain cross-references in the locator field. It ignores records that contain cross-references as subheadings.

Cindex ignores deleted records, both as the sources and the targets of cross-references. Cindex also ignores as sources any labeled records that you have designated as hidden (see “Displaying Labeled Records” on page 55).

Cindex marks as deleted, but does not otherwise alter, the record making the original cross-reference.

If for some reason Cindex cannot create new records, it leaves the original one intact.

To view the new records that Cindex creates, use **Find** (Edit menu) and search for **Generated** records.



## GENERATING CROSS-REFERENCES AUTOMATICALLY

---

If you regularly prepare indexes on a particular topic, you might use a relatively standard set of terms, and some standard cross-references. To ease the burden of providing the correct cross-references, you can create a source of standard ones that Cindex will automatically place in an index whenever the index contains the appropriate target entries.

### *Preparing a Source Index*

Use **New...** to create a new index in the standard way. This index will be the source of generated cross-references, and should be sorted alphabetically, using a letter-by-letter or word-by-word sort. For information on how to choose the alphabetizing method, see “Alphabetical Sorting” on page 149.

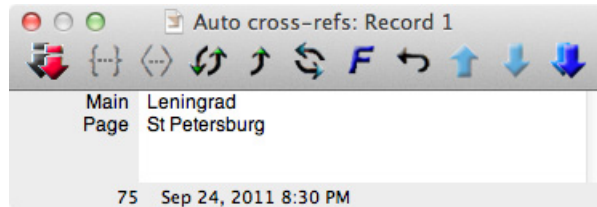
The special index should contain one cross-reference in each record, organized as follows:

- In the main heading field, enter the text that will be the main heading of the cross-reference.
- In the first subheading field enter any subheading that accompanies the main heading. You can continue this to whatever depth of sub-subheading you wish.
- In the locator field enter the text of the target entry, without any leading *See* or *See also*. Cindex will decide what form of introductory phrase is required when it includes the cross-reference in the destination index. If you want to refer to a subheading under a main heading, enter the main heading with the text of the subheading as a modifier, after a comma.

Suppose you wanted to generate a cross-reference from “Leningrad” whenever your index contained an entry for “St. Petersburg.” The record in your special cross-reference index would look like Figure 33:

---

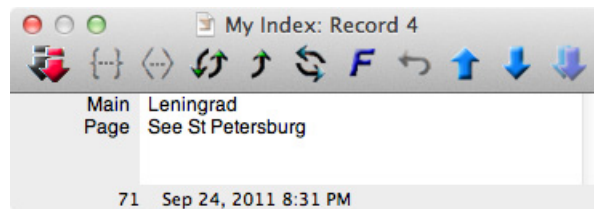
## Generating Cross-References Automatically



**FIGURE 33.** The form of an entry in a special cross-reference index

---

When you generate cross-references for your working index, any entry for St. Petersburg will trigger the formation of a new record that contains the cross-reference shown in Figure 34.



**FIGURE 34.** A record with an automatically-generated cross-reference

---

To insert special cross-references in your working index, choose **Generate Cross-References...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display a sheet through which you can specify the special index that will be the source of the cross-references. As soon as you choose this index, Cindex will extract the appropriate cross-references from it. If your working index already contains a cross-reference that would be generated, Cindex will not add another one.

Cindex normally generates both *See* and *See also* references, as appropriate, but if you want to create only *See* references (omitting any *See also* references) check **“See” References Only** before opening the index.

Cindex knows which records contains automatically generated cross-references. To find generated records, choose **Find...** from the Edit menu, and check **Generated Records**. You need not specify any search text when you look for generated records.

**NOTE:** If you edit and change a generated record, Cindex no longer considers it to have been generated automatically, and you will not be able to identify it with **Find...**

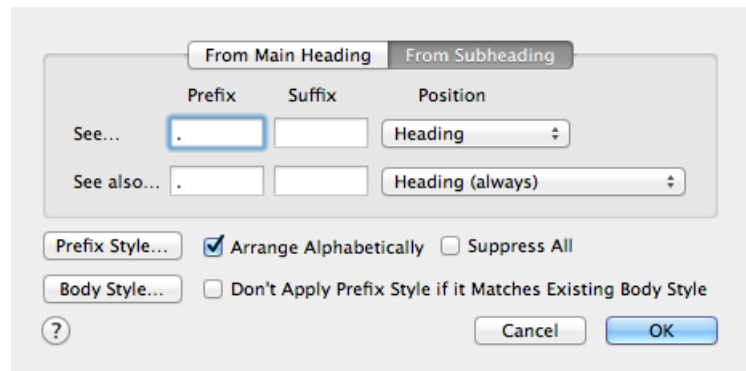
You can remove automatically generated records from the index by choosing **Compress...** from the Tools menu. “Compressing Index Entries” on page 220 explains how to do this.

## PLACING AND FORMATTING CROSS-REFERENCES

---

Different styles of indexes require different arrangements of cross-references, varying both in the placement and the punctuation of the references.

To specify the punctuation, placement, and ordering of cross-references, choose **Cross-References...** from the Document menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 35.



**FIGURE 35.** Formatting Cross-References

---

---

## Placing and Formatting Cross-References

**NOTE:** The settings you make take full effect only when you view the fully-formatted index. In a draft view of the index, Cindex will show cross-references in the correct position in the index, but will not punctuate them automatically, nor will it necessarily arrange them alphabetically if several references are made from the same heading.

### *Cross-References from the Main Heading*

To specify the arrangement of references made from the main heading, click the **From Main Heading** tab.

#### Punctuation

Cindex can punctuate *See* and *See also* references differently. Enter under **Prefix** the punctuation (including any spaces) you want to separate each kind of cross-reference from its heading or preceding page references. Enter under **Suffix** any trailing punctuation (e.g., a period, or a closing parenthesis) that should follow the last cross-reference made from an entry.

#### Position

*See* references, which direct a reader to other entries in the index, generally appear immediately following the headings from which they are made. Cindex can place a *See* reference either run on from the heading, or as a subheading. Choose the arrangement from the first pop-up menu under **Position**.

*See also* references are made from entries that also carry page references, and their positions depend upon the style of the index and the preference of the publisher.

In indented (set-out) style a *See also* reference from a heading generally appears in one of three places:

- Immediately following the heading (this is often the preferred form):  
    Parking, 325  
    Parks, 465. *See also* National Parks; State Parks  
        management, 473  
        noise, 460  
    Pelicans, 267

---

## Placing and Formatting Cross-References

- As the first subheading:  
    Parking, 325  
    Parks, 465  
        See *also* National Parks; State Parks  
        management, 473  
        noise, 460  
    Pelicans, 267
- As the last subheading:  
    Parking, 325  
    Parks, 465  
        management, 473  
        noise, 460  
        See *also* National Parks; State Parks  
    Pelicans, 267

In run-in (paragraph) style the cross-reference may appear in one of two places:

- Immediately after the heading (this form is often preferred):  
    Parking, 325  
    Parks, 465 (*See also* National Parks; State  
    Parks);  
        management, 473; noise, 460
- After all the subentries:  
    Parking, 325  
    Parks, 465; management, 473; noise, 460. *See  
    also*  
    National Parks; State Parks

To specify where Cindex should place “See also” cross-references from a main heading, choose from the second pop-up menu under **Position**. This provides the following options:

- *Heading (always)*. “See also” references from a heading follow the heading (or any preceding page reference) directly, without a line break. Cindex is initially set use this placement of “See also” references.

---

## Placing and Formatting Cross-References

- *Heading (no page)*. “See also” references from a heading follow the heading directly, without a line break, but only if there are no preceding page references. If there are preceding page references, the See also references are formatted as a subheading.
- *First Subheading*. “See also” references from a heading are gathered together and displayed as the first subheading, above any regular subheadings that carry page references.
- *Last Subheading*. “See also” references from a heading are gathered together and displayed as the last subheading, below any regular subheadings that carry page references.
- *Last Subheading (conditional)*. “See also” references are displayed as the last subheading; if there are no subheadings the cross-reference directly follows the page references from the heading.

**NOTES:** When See also references may be placed run-on from the main heading or as subheadings, depending on context (the second and last options, above) Cindex provides **Prefix** and **Suffix** punctuation only when the cross-references are run on from the main heading. Cindex suppresses punctuation if the cross-references are formatted as subheadings.

Depending on the position you choose for “See also” references, Cindex may re-sort the index.

### *Cross-References from Subheadings*

To specify the punctuation of cross-references made from subheadings, click the **From Subheading** tab. Enter under **Prefix** the punctuation (including any spaces) you want to separate the cross-reference from its subheading or preceding page references. Enter under **Suffix** any trailing punctuation (e.g., a period, or a closing parenthesis) that should follow the last cross-reference made from a subheading.

When placing cross-references from subheadings Cindex provides the same options as are available for cross-references from main headings (Figure 35 on page 115). Choose from the **Position** pop-up menus how *See* and *See also* references should be placed.

### *Sorting Cross-References*

When Cindex displays the fully formatted index it draws together all the cross-references from a single heading, even if you have entered these in different records, then normally sorts them in a single alphabetical sequence.

Cindex maintains a list of words that introduce general cross-references that should be placed at the end of any sorted set. “Specifying the Structure of Cross-References” on page 106 describes this list and how to modify it. If in some instance you want Cindex to place a general cross-reference in its alphabetical position in a series, put a ~ immediately in front of the leading word, as in “~specific.”

If you do not want Cindex to arrange multiple cross-references alphabetically (but instead display them in the order in which you entered them in records), uncheck **Arrange Alphabetically** (Figure 35 on page 115).

**NOTES:** Cindex alphabetizes a series of cross-references only when you view the index as a fully-formatted document.

Cindex cannot arrange cross-references alphabetically unless they appear in the locator fields of records.

### *Suppressing Cross-References*

You might on occasion want to display or print index entries without cross-references. To do this, check **Suppress All References** (Figure 35 on page 115).

**NOTE:** Cindex suppresses cross-references only when you view the index as fully formatted document. Cross-references are always visible in draft or unformatted views.

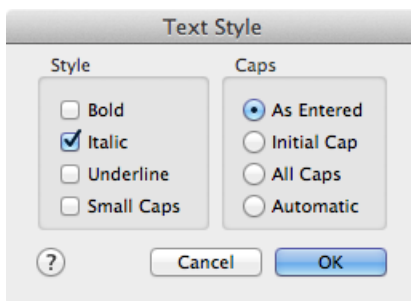
### *Text Style and Capitalization*

Cindex will automatically apply a style you designate to the introductory phrase of a cross-reference, and will apply the same or a different style to the body of the cross-reference. When Cindex is first installed it is set to display the introductory phrase in italics, and the body in plain text. To specify a style for the introduc-

---

## Placing and Formatting Cross-References

tory phrase click **Prefix Style...** (Figure 35 on page 115). To specify a style for the body of the cross-reference, click **Body Style...** For either setting, Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 36.



**FIGURE 36.** Style settings for cross-reference prefixes or body text

---

Choose the styles and form of capitalization you want. When setting the prefix style (but not the body style) you can choose **Automatic** capitalization to make Cindex capitalize the phrase according to preceding punctuation: Cindex will automatically capitalize the first word of the prefatory phrase if the cross-reference is formatted as a subheading, or the preceding punctuation mark (with any intervening space) is a period; Cindex will set the initial letter to lowercase if the preceding punctuation is a comma (with any intervening space) or an opening parenthesis.

Cindex does not apply styles or capitalization to the body of any cross-reference that begins with a word you have identified as introducing a general cross-reference. See “Specifying the Structure of Cross-References” on page 106.

**NOTE:** Cindex applies styles automatically to cross-references only when you view the index as a fully-formatted document.

### Suppressing Automatic Styles

When the body of a particular cross-reference already has some style applied, you would not normally wish the prefix to carry the same style. If you check **Don't Apply Prefix Style if It Matches Existing Body Style** in the main Cross-References



panel, Cindex will not apply an automatic style to the prefix if that style is already applied to the body of the cross-reference.



## CHAPTER 8 *Page References*

---

Cindex manages both ordinary page references and unusual locators such as dates or multi-part references. Even if you have spread references to the same entry across several records, Cindex will combine and order them properly when it formats the index; it can sort entries by date, no matter what the format of the date in a record; it can conflate and abbreviate references and can suppress repeated components of multi-part references. To take advantage of these capabilities you need to follow a few general principles when putting your references in records. The first part of this chapter therefore provides general guidance on entering locators.

### HOW CINDEX IDENTIFIES LOCATORS

---

Any text in the locator field of a record, not specifically identified as a cross-reference, Cindex treats as a locator (generally a page reference). Figure 37 shows examples that Cindex can recognize and evaluate.

Frontispiece, 89, 106–108n., 202f  
vi, xiv, 9-15, *illus.* 45  
**13:10:19-21, 20:46:5, 21:3:15**  
mcmlxv, mcmlxx  
53(vii)A, 53(vii)B, 53(ix)A

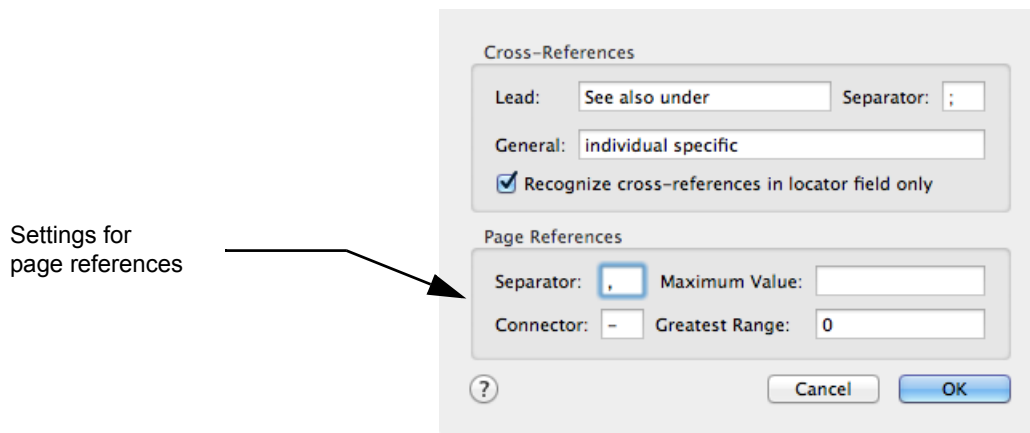
**FIGURE 37.** Examples of references that Cindex can evaluate

---

You can place as many references as you want in the locator field of a single record. Cindex therefore needs to know how to recognize distinct references.

### *Specifying the Structure of Page References*

To specify the structure of a page reference, choose **Reference Syntax...** from the Document menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 38.



**FIGURE 38.** Reference Syntax

---

Settings that affect how Cindex recognizes page references are made in the **Page References** box.

#### Separating Individual References

Cindex normally assumes that if several page references are in a single record, each will be separated from the next by a comma. Cindex also uses the comma when it concatenates references from several otherwise identical records. You can use a different separating character, but you must tell Cindex what that character is. If Cindex does not know the correct separator it might treat a single reference that contains a comma as two separate references, and might rearrange the components of the reference when it formats the index. For example, some references shown in Figure 37 contain commas (e.g., May 2, 1977) and would not be cor-

rectly understood unless Cindex knew that the separator was a semicolon. Set the separator you want (a single ASCII character) at **Separator**.

**NOTE:** If a complex locator must contain within it the character that you have designated as separating one locator from the next, you can prevent Cindex recognizing it as a separator by enclosing it in <...> or by placing \ immediately before it.

### Identifying an Inclusive Range

You will often indicate an inclusive range of pages (e.g., 155–158) by joining the references with a hyphen. Cindex needs to know how you denote an inclusive range, so that it can conflate or abbreviate references properly when it formats the index, and can adjust them properly when required. If you use the hyphen in chapter-page notation, so that for example, 5–7 means chapter 5, page 7, you must specify some character other than the hyphen to indicate an inclusive range. Specify the separating character at **Connector**. You can use any single ASCII character such as \$ or @ that has no special meaning for Cindex. This character need not be the one you wish to see in the fully formatted document: when Cindex produces the formatted index it will translate the connecting character into whatever character or sequence of characters you wish to have displayed and printed. For example, if you specified \$ as your connecting character, you could enter 6–8\$6–10 in the locator field of a record and have Cindex display and print it as 6–8 to 6–10.

## *Recognizing and Classifying Components of References*

After identifying an individual reference, Cindex parses it into segments. There are two kinds of segments, those comprised of Arabic numerals, and those comprised of letters.

A simple locator consists of a single segment; a compound (multi-part) reference of the kind shown in Figure 37 can contain several. A digit or series of digits followed immediately by a letter or series of letters (e.g., 55f) is considered to be two segments; a reference of the form 67a2 would be treated as having three segments. Segments can also be separated by one or more spaces, symbols or punctuation marks. These separators are all treated as equivalent. A reference such as 10:xix 67 therefore has three segments.

After Cindex has identified segments of a reference it classifies them. A segment consisting of digits (e.g., 345) is always evaluated as a number. A segment comprised of letters can be evaluated as a number in Roman numerals (e.g., xiv), as the spelled-out name of a month (e.g., May) or as plain text (e.g., Plate), depending on settings you make.

When Cindex is first installed, it is set to recognize Arabic numerals, and to treat any letter sequence as a plain text segment (it does not recognize Roman numerals or names of months). When Cindex compares reference segments of different types, it assigns higher precedence to Arabic numerals, and lower precedence to segments made of letters. “Evaluating and Sorting Page References” on page 128 describes how to change the kinds of segments Cindex recognizes, and how it evaluates them.

### Roman Numerals

Cindex can recognize Roman numbers comprised of these characters: IVX-LCDM or ivxldcm. Do not mix upper- and lowercase characters in the same number; if you do, Cindex will treat it as plain text. Be sure that the number is neither preceded nor succeeded by another letter. This restriction is designed to ensure that Cindex will not mistake normal text for a Roman number. For example, Cindex recognizes the number 6 in vi, [vi], and vi:a, but not in avid, vision, or province.

### Names of Months

Cindex can recognize names of months spelled out in English, in any mixture of upper- or lowercase letters, as long as the name of the month is not preceded or succeeded by a letter. Cindex therefore recognizes “may” and “May” but not “maybe” or “dismay” as a month. The name of any month may be abbreviated to as few as three letters.

### Plain Text

Any sequence of letters not recognized as Roman numerals or the name of a month is treated as plain text. When evaluating letters as plain text, Cindex distinguishes upper- and lowercase versions of a letter, and assigns them the following precedence:

**AaBbCc... ..Zz**

## WORKING EFFICIENTLY WITH PAGE REFERENCES

---

If you follow these guidelines, you will be best able to take advantage of Cindex in organizing page references as you want them.

### Use the locator field

Always put page references in the locator field of a record (usually called the Page field). Cindex depends on references being in that field when it organizes or transforms them.

### Provide Complete References

When you make an entry, you should as a general rule provide a *complete* reference, even though you may not wish the whole reference to appear in the formatted copy of the index. For example, if your publisher requires references to an inclusive range of pages to be abbreviated (e.g., 307–10 instead of 307–310) you should enter the full range (307-310) and allow Cindex to abbreviate the reference when it formats the index. It is a good idea to do this even when the inclusive range includes volume or part numbers (e.g., 22:55-22:58 rather than 22:55-58). You should also enter full references if your entries refer to volume numbers or dates (e.g., June: 23, June: 27, August: 15) even if you want repeated numbers or dates to be suppressed in the formatted output (e.g., June: 23, 27; August: 15). When Cindex produces the formatted copy of the index it will suppress as much as you require of repeated volume numbers or dates.

The benefit of entering full references is that Cindex can always find entries that refer to a particular page or date, no matter how complex the locator, and can make automatic adjustments of the kind you might need if your publisher adds, removes or rearranges pages after you have finished the index. If you have entered some shortened form of a reference Cindex might not always be able to deduce its full form and might not be able to find it or modify it properly.

### Apply Type Styles to Individual References

You can use text styles and fonts freely in references, even in complex ones that contain several parts (e.g., **1987**: May 15). However, you might not need to apply styles explicitly to references or parts of them. When Cindex displays or prints a fully formatted copy of the index, it can automatically apply specified

type styles to all or selected parts of page references. For more information see “Applying Type Styles to References” on page 142.

## CHECKING PAGE REFERENCES

---

While you are entering records in the index Cindex makes a variety of checks to ensure that the references are properly formed and fall within acceptable ranges (see “Checking Locators” on page 41).

Cindex can also find entries that make too many undifferentiated references from a particular heading, even if these occur across multiple records. To find such entries, choose **Check References...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display the sheet shown in Figure 31 on page 109. Check **Count Page References**, then enter the maximum acceptable number of undifferentiated locators.

If Cindex finds any entries that contain too many references it will display a window that contains a list of records, each followed (in square brackets) by the number of undifferentiated references associated with it. (If you are also verifying cross-references, the list of undifferentiated references will follow the list of unverified cross-references).

**NOTE:** Cindex counts references as they would be displayed in the formatted index.

Click any item in the list (or use the ↑ and ↓ keys) to bring its record into view in the main document window; double-click an item (or hit RETURN) to open a window in which to edit its record.

## EVALUATING AND SORTING PAGE REFERENCES

---

Cindex evaluates page references under the following conditions:

- When a single entry has multiple references, and these have to be ordered when the formatted index is displayed or printed.



---

## Evaluating and Sorting Page References

- When entries are ordered alphabetically, but are identical at all levels of heading that are being evaluated.
- When you want entries ordered by page reference.

Before Cindex can arrange references in the order you want, it has to know what precedence to assign to different kinds of segments (for example, whether a reference to a name of a month should precede a page reference in Arabic numerals), and it has to know how you want it to evaluate multi-part references (for example whether a three-part reference of the form month:day:year should be evaluated in the order year:month:day). Cindex is initially set up to:

- recognize letters as plain text (ignoring their possible interpretation as Roman numerals or names of months).
- assume that a reference consisting entirely of letters (e.g., *Plate*) should succeed one that is in Arabic numerals.

Cindex evaluates multi-part references from left to right.

### *Setting the Precedence of Reference Segments*

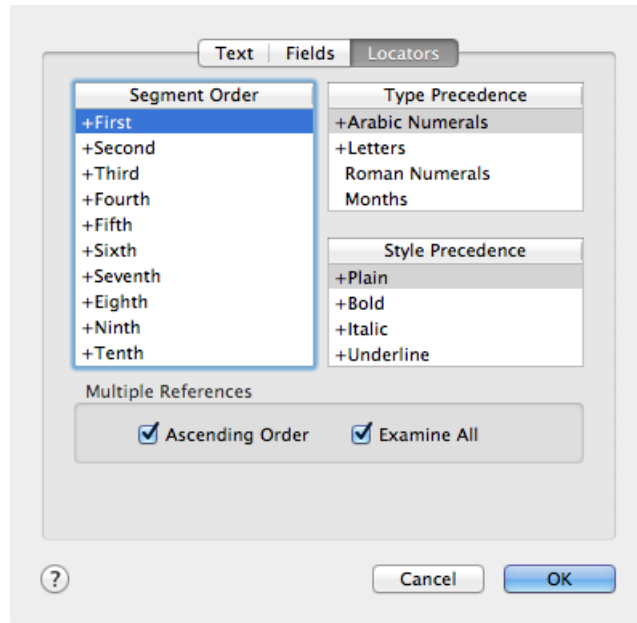
You can specify how Cindex should recognize segments comprised of letters (as Roman numerals, spelled out months, or plain text), what precedence it should assign to different classes of components, and in what order it should evaluate components.

To change how Cindex recognizes components of a reference—for example, to enable the recognition of Roman numerals and names of months—or to change the precedence of different classes of components, choose **Sort...** from the Tools menu, then click the **Locators** tab.

Cindex will display the items shown in Figure 39.

---

## Evaluating and Sorting Page References



**FIGURE 39.** Sort settings for locators

---

Through the **Type Precedence** list you specify whether or not Cindex will recognize a segment of a particular class, and (if it does recognize it) what precedence Cindex should assign to it.

Cindex recognizes only segments corresponding to the classes that are checked with + marks. If a member of the list is unchecked, Cindex never recognizes a segment of the corresponding class. To check or uncheck a member of the list, double-click it.

**NOTE:** If you uncheck all the classes of segments comprised of letters (Roman Numerals, Letters, Months), Cindex will treat letters as punctuation.

When Cindex examines references and compares two components of different classes (e.g., a component interpreted as a spelled out month and one in Arabic

numerals), it uses the order in which recognized classes appear in the **Type Precedence** list to determine the precedence of the components they represent. The checked item at the top of the list has the highest precedence; unchecked items always appear at the bottom of the list. To change the order of components that are checked, drag them to the positions you require. When Cindex is first installed it recognizes Arabic Numerals, and Letters, with Arabic Numerals having the greater precedence. Cindex is set not to recognize Roman Numerals or names of Months.

When Cindex is set to recognize two or more classes of segments that can be comprised of letters, it assigns a particular set of letters to the highest-precedence class whose requirements the set satisfies.

### *Attending to the Style of a Reference*

Sometimes text styles—bold, italic, underline—are used to distinguish different types of page references. When Cindex finds two locators (or the least significant parts of multi-part references) that have identical values it uses their text styles to order them according to a precedence that you can specify. When Cindex is first installed it sorts otherwise identical references in this order: plain, bold, italic, underline.

To change the precedence of text styles, drag items in the **Style Precedence** list. The style represented by the top item has the highest precedence.

### *Setting the Evaluation Order of Multi-Part References*

Cindex is initially set to evaluate multi-part references from left to right. For some kinds of multi-part references, particularly dates, the normal evaluation order may not be satisfactory. For example, if your references had the form *month:day:year* you would probably want them to be evaluated in the order *year, month, day*. Cindex will evaluate components of a multi-part reference in any order you choose.

Through the **Segment Order** list you specify whether or not Cindex will evaluate a segment, and (if a segment is to be evaluated) the order in which it will be evaluated. A name in the list identifies a recognized segment by its position in a reference. For example, *First* refers to the first recognized segment of a reference. Your settings of **Type Precedence**, discussed in the previous section, determine what Cindex will recognize as a segment.

Cindex evaluates only reference segments associated with checked items in the list. Double-click an item to make Cindex evaluate (or ignore) the corresponding segment of a reference. For example, were you to check *First*, *Second*, *Third*, and no other segments, Cindex would ignore any segments of references in positions four or higher. If you checked only *Second*, *Third*, *Fourth*, Cindex would ignore the first segment and the fifth and any higher segments.

The order in which the checked items appear in the list is the order in which Cindex evaluates their corresponding segments. When Cindex is first installed it is set to evaluate up to ten components of a compound reference in the order (from left to right) first, second, third ... tenth. To make Cindex evaluate segments in some other order, for example third, first, second, simply drag the item corresponding to a component to the appropriate position in the list. (The order *Third*, *First*, *Second* would ensure that a reference of the form month:day:year was evaluated chronologically.)

If Cindex is set to evaluate a segment that does not appear in a reference (for example you specified the evaluation order *Third*, *Second*, *First* and a reference contains only two segments), it will treat the missing segment as if it had zero value.

**NOTE:** If you are working with multi-part locators that contain more than ten recognized segments Cindex ignores the **Segment Order** setting and evaluates all the segments from left to right.

### Locating Records that Contain Multi-Part References

“Searching for Locators” on page 73 described how to use **Find...** (Edit menu) to find records that contain references to particular pages or ranges of pages. You can use the same methods to find entries that contain multi-part locators, but there are additional points to bear in mind.

---

## Evaluating and Sorting Page References

To search for a connected range of references, you must separate the low and high references in your specification with whatever character you have designated as the page reference connector (usually –). If you are searching among multi-component locators, Cindex will understand abbreviated forms. To find all references to volume 20, pages 10-15 you could specify either

**20:10–20:15**

or

**20:10–15**

Cindex also makes allowance for suppressed components in records. For example, if the locator field contained 20:10-15 (meaning 20:10-20:15), Cindex would implicitly expand the suppressed segment before checking whether it fell within the range sought.

Cindex will interpret a truncated reference sensibly. For example, if references in records had the form “year:month day” (1988: Jan 10) and you wanted to find any references to January 1988, regardless of day, you could look for

**1988:JAN**

When you seek compound references, and specify fewer components of references than are contained in records, Cindex will find all references that satisfy the components specified in the search string; it will ignore less significant components. Thus if you specified

**1988**

Cindex would find any record with a reference whose first component was 1988.

**NOTE:** When evaluating references while searching with **Find**, Cindex uses the evaluation order you have specified through your settings or **Segment Order** (see “Setting the Precedence of Reference Segments” on page 129). If some component that Cindex is set to evaluate is omitted from the specification you provide with **Find**, Cindex will behave as if you had specified that component with zero value.

When Cindex parses a multi-part reference, it does not care what characters separate the components. In specifying the reference for which Cindex should look, you therefore need not use exactly the form that appears in records. For example, specifying

20:10:a

would find a record that referred to **20\_10\_a** or **20.10.a** or **20#10a**.

### *Placing References in Descending Order*

Settings of **Type Precedence** and **Segment Order** that you make through the Locators tab in the **Sort...** panel (Figure 39) tell Cindex how to decide whether one page reference is larger or smaller than another one. These settings do not tell Cindex whether a smaller reference should appear before a larger one, or *vice-versa*. Normally, Cindex arranges references in ascending order (smaller to larger), but you might occasionally need to produce an index (possibly a chronological one) in which references must be arranged in descending order (i.e., most recent first). To select descending order, uncheck **Ascending Order** under the **Locator** tab in the **Sort...** panel (Figure 39).

### *Ordering References by the First in a Record*

If Cindex needs to use the value of a locator when positioning a record in the index (it generally does this only when positioning otherwise identical records), and the locator field contains more than one page reference, Cindex normally uses the lowest-valued reference (or highest-valued one if **Ascending Order** is unchecked). To make Cindex order entries by the value of the *first* reference in the locator field, uncheck **Examine All** under the Locators tab in the **Sort...** panel (Figure 39).

### *Forcing the Order of Individual References*

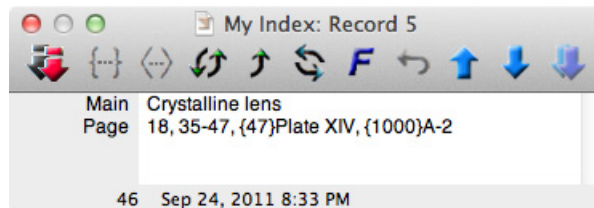
Suppose you want a series of references from a heading to appear in this order:

18, 45–47, Plate XIV, A–2

With its standard settings of **Type Precedence**, Cindex would normally rearrange the references, and display them in this order:

18, 45–47, A–2, Plate XIV

You can interfere selectively with the automatic ordering of page references by adding components that will influence the sorted order but will not be visible in the fully-formatted display. The components will be visible in a draft display. To force a particular reference to the right place you can place a number enclosed in { } (braces) immediately before it, as in Figure 40.



**FIGURE 40.** Using braces to force correct sorting of references

---

Cindex uses the {47} and {1000} in ordering the page references, but suppresses them when displaying the formatted entry. (In the example shown, the {1000} is used as an arbitrarily large number to ensure that the A–2 reference appears last). You may use braces to enclose any component of a reference in the locator field. The braces will not appear in the fully formatted display.

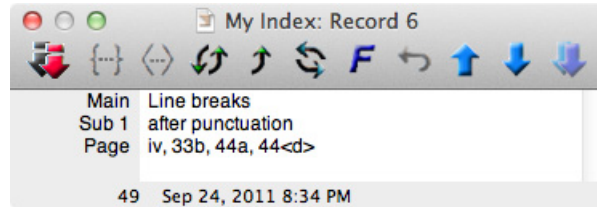
You can hide whole references or parts of references from the page ordering mechanisms by placing them within angle brackets (< >).

For example, you might have references containing Roman numerals that Cindex will evaluate. If an occasional reference also contains a letter that might be

---

## Formatting Page References

interpreted as a Roman number, you can hide it from the ordering mechanism by placing it inside angle brackets, as shown in Figure 41.



**FIGURE 41.** Hiding parts of individual references from sorting

---

The angle brackets will not appear in the fully-formatted display.

**NOTE:** You should always match opening and closing braces or angle brackets in a record. If you neglect to provide a closing brace or bracket, Cindex will warn you, and will not let you store the record until you have corrected the error.

## FORMATTING PAGE REFERENCES

---

When Cindex displays a fully-formatted index, it sorts, formats and punctuates page references. Cindex first gathers all the references from identical records. It then discards any duplicates, and any redundant references to single pages that match either the beginning or the end of an inclusive range of pages. After doing this it can conflate a series of separate references to consecutive pages, it can abbreviate page ranges, and it can suppress repeated volume numbers in multi-part references. Cindex never alters records when it displays references in different formats.

To specify how Cindex should format page references, choose **Page References...** from the Document menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 42.



---

## Formatting Page References

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Page Reference format settings". It is organized into four main sections:

- Ranges:** Contains three settings: "Connecting Text" with a text box containing a hyphen (-), "Conflate Beyond" with a dropdown menu set to "Second", and "Abbreviation Rule" with a dropdown menu set to "None".
- Punctuation:** Contains three settings: "Before Single" with a text box containing a comma (,), "Before Multiple" with a text box containing a comma (,), and "After" with an empty text box. Below these are two unchecked checkboxes: "Right Justify" and "Dot Leader".
- Multi-Part References:** Contains three settings: "Suppress Repeated Parts" with an unchecked checkbox, "Suppress to:" with an empty text box, and "Concatenate with:" with a text box containing a comma (,).
- Bottom Section:** Contains two checkboxes: "Arrange in Sorted Order" (checked) and "Suppress All References" (unchecked). To the right of these are three buttons: "Style...", "?", "Cancel", and "OK".

**FIGURE 42.** Page Reference format settings

---

**NOTE:** The settings discussed below take effect only when you use a fully formatted view of the index.

### *Formatting Inclusive Ranges*

Cindex provides several features for formatting inclusive ranges of page references.

#### Translating the Connecting Character

When you enter references in records you must use a single ASCII character (typically a hyphen, or minus sign) to denote a connected range of pages such as 55–67. “Specifying the Structure of Page References” on page 124 explains how to specify this character.

When Cindex displays formatted entries, it translates the connecting character to another character or sequence of characters you specify. References that appear in records as 55-67 can therefore be displayed as 55–67, or 55 to 67, or 55 through 57. When Cindex is first installed it is set to translate the hyphen to a single en-dash. To use some other character or sequence of characters to denote

---

## Formatting Page References

an inclusive range, set **Connecting Text** to the character or sequence of characters you want.

### Conflating References

When an entry contains a series of separate references to consecutive pages, Cindex normally arranges them in order, but does not conflate them into a single range. Cindex can conflate references to consecutive pages, so that a series of references entered in records as

34, 33, 35, 37, 39, 40-42, 41-43

can appear as

33-35, 37, 39-43

You can set Cindex so that it will conflate aggressively, whenever two references refer to consecutive pages, or more conservatively, when there is some larger number of references to successive pages. To enable conflation, use the **Conflate Beyond** pop-up menu to specify the critical number of references to consecutive pages. For example, to conflate references whenever two refer to consecutive pages, choose *First*; to conflate when there are references to three or more successive pages, choose *Second*, etc. To disable conflation, choose *None*.

When conflating multi-part references Cindex attends only to the last component in Arabic numerals (or the last two components if they form an inclusive range). A non-digit may appear after the last number. Thus references normally appearing as:

1988 (Jan) 3f, 1988 (Jan) 4f, 1988 (Jan) 5f

would be conflated as:

1988 (Jan) 3f-1988 (Jan) 5f

---

## Formatting Page References

**NOTE:** Cindex will conflate references correctly only if they are ordered properly. To guarantee that references are ordered properly in the formatted entry, regardless of their positions in the locator field, you should let Cindex rearrange them if necessary. To ensure this, check **Arrange in Sorted Order**.

### Abbreviating References

Cindex can abbreviate the upper part of an inclusive range of page numbers, so that a range entered in a record as 920-923 might be displayed as 920-23. Two established conventions dictate how page numbers should be abbreviated. One is recommended by the *Chicago Manual of Style* (Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1993), the other by *Hart's Rules* (Oxford, Oxford University Press, 1983). A third convention permits very aggressive abbreviation of references. For a series of complete references that look like this

**3-10, 16-18, 100-104, 107-108, 210-213, 321-325, 1496-1504, 1536-1538**

the Chicago convention would format them as

**3-10, 16-18, 100-104, 107-8, 210-13, 321-25, 1496-1504, 1536-38**

Hart's convention would format them as

**3-10, 16-18, 100-4, 107-8, 210-13, 321-5, 1496-504, 1536-8**

and the aggressive convention would format them as

**3-10, 16-8, 100-4, 107-8, 210-3, 321-5, 1496-504, 1536-8**

To abbreviate the upper part of a range of page numbers, choose from the **Abbreviation Rule** popup menu: *Chicago* (for University of Chicago Press rules), or *Hart* (for Hart's rules) for *Full* (for aggressive abbreviation).

If your index contains multi-part page references, and you specify references fully in records when you provide an inclusive range (e.g., 20:ix:552–20:ix:555 rather than 20:ix:552–555), Cindex will abbreviate the second reference only if

you have told it to suppress the leading parts (see “Formatting Multi-Part References”, below). When you suppress leading parts the inclusive range 20:ix:552–20:ix:555 will appear as 20:ix:552–555, and after abbreviation it will be transformed (using Chicago Rules) to 20:ix:552–55.

If Cindex is set to both conflate and abbreviate references, it will conflate them before abbreviating them.

### *Formatting Multi-Part References*

When formatting compound locators such as 1986 a(ii):55, Cindex can suppress the display of repeated leading parts that are common to successive references, so that in the second and subsequent reference only the least significant, and changing, part of a locator is actually displayed. For example, if your record contained the following set of references to a heading (with a semicolon being the designated page reference separator)

XIV 55:10; XIV 55:62; XIV 55:79; XV 56:108-9; XVI 57:232; XVI 57:240

Cindex could display them as

XIV 55:10, 62, 79; XV 56:108-9; XVI 57:232, 240

To enable this kind of suppression, check **Suppress Repeated Parts**. You must also provide Cindex with information about how much of the leading part of a complex reference it should suppress, and you must tell Cindex what characters it should insert in the formatted display to denote a concatenated reference (a comma in the example above).

To stipulate how much of the leading text should be suppressed, enter at **Suppress to** a marking character or set of marking characters that Cindex must encounter in the parts of references it will suppress. The point in the reference at which Cindex finds the last marking character is the point up to which it will suppress repeated leading components. Thus for references like those shown above, your

---

## Formatting Page References

template might be a space followed by a colon. Cindex will search through each reference until it finds the first space, after which it continues to search for a colon. If successive references match as far as the colon, Cindex replaces the leading components of the second and any subsequent matching references with a separating sequence of characters that you enter at **Concatenate with** (in the above example a comma followed by a space). The concatenating sequence should not contain the character that you use to separate successive complete references.

**NOTES:** When comparing characters in a reference against the marking characters in a suppression template, Cindex ignores leading spaces at the beginning of any reference. You should therefore not count these when forming a template.

Cindex will suppress repeated leading components of a reference only when the references are correctly ordered. To ensure proper ordering of page references, you should check **Arrange in Sorted Order**.

If Cindex is set to conflate references, it will conflate them before it suppresses any repeated leading components.

### *Punctuating Page References*

Cindex always displays page references immediately after the text of the entry to which they belong. Cindex inserts punctuation of your choice before and after a set of page references. If you wish, Cindex will provide different leading punctuation depending on whether a single page reference follows a heading or multiple references follow a heading.

To specify leading punctuation (including any spaces) that Cindex should use to separate a single reference from the text of an entry, enter it at **Before Single**.

To specify leading punctuation (including any spaces) that Cindex should use when two or more references follow the text of an entry, enter it at **Before Multiple**.

Cindex is initially set to provide a comma followed by a space as the leading punctuation before both single and multiple references.

---

## Formatting Page References

To specify text that Cindex should insert after the last page reference of an entry, enter the text at **After**.

When working with an index formatted in indented style, Cindex can format page reference so that they appear flush against the right margin of the page. To make Cindex display references in this format, check **Right Justify**.

In formatting entries for export in Rich Text Format (though not for display or printing), Cindex can provide right-justified references with a dot leader. If you require this, check **Dot Leader** (the check box is dimmed unless right-justification is checked).

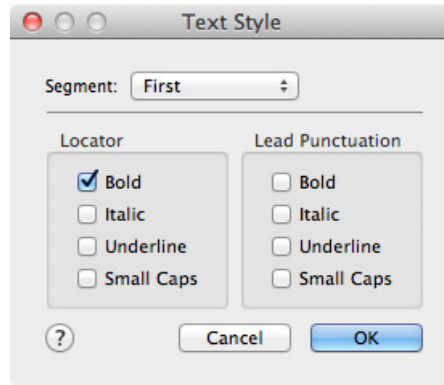
### *Applying Type Styles to References*

Cindex can automatically apply type styles to page references when it displays or prints them. This can save you the effort of entering styled text in records. If your index contains multi-part locators, you can set Cindex to apply a different style to each part. Cindex is initially set to display all parts of page references in plain text.

To specify the style in which Cindex should display and print references, click **Style...** in the Page References panel. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 43.

---

## Formatting Page References



**FIGURE 43.** Setting Page Reference style

---

Cindex can apply styles to up to ten segments of multi-part locators. You can specify a different style for each segment. For the purposes of applying styles, Cindex treats each segment of a reference as consisting of possibly two components: a part that can be evaluated (Arabic numerals, Roman numerals, text, etc.), and any filling or punctuating characters that might precede it. Cindex treats as punctuation any characters that it does not recognize as part of a reference element. For each segment you can specify styles separately for the reference element and its preceding punctuation (if any).

1. Choose from the pop-up menu the position of the segment to which you want to apply a style (for a simple reference, use the **First** segment).
2. Under **Locator** check the style(s) for the reference element.
3. Under **Lead Punctuation** check the style(s) for any preceding punctuation.

### *Ordering References*

When Cindex displays the fully formatted index it draws together all the page references from a single heading, even if these are contained in several records, then normally sorts them in an ascending sequence. (The earlier section “Evaluating and Sorting Page References” on page 128 explains how to set the rules Cindex uses for sorting references). If you want Cindex to display multiple page

---

## Formatting Page References

references in the order in which you entered them in records, uncheck **Arrange in Sorted Order** (Figure 42 on page 137).

**NOTE:** Several of the advanced options Cindex provides for formatting page references (for example, conflating them) depend upon references being displayed in sorted order. If you want to use any of the advanced options you should ensure that **Arrange in Sorted Order** is checked.

### *Suppressing Page References*

You might on occasion want to display or print index entries without page references. To do this, check **Suppress All References** (Figure 42 on page 137).

**NOTE:** Cindex suppresses locators only when you view the index as fully formatted document. In draft or unformatted views, locators are always displayed.



## CHAPTER 9    *Sorting Entries*

---

This chapter describes the principles that Cindex follows when sorting entries, and explains how you can modify them when you need to.

### LANGUAGE

---

Different languages have different alphabetizing conventions. For example, in a Swedish index, entries beginning with Å are placed after entries beginning with Z. Cindex can alphabetize entries by the rules appropriate for many languages. Cindex uses English by default. To specify another language, choose **Sort...** from the Tools menu, then choose the language from the **Language** pop-up menu.

### FIELD EVALUATION ORDER

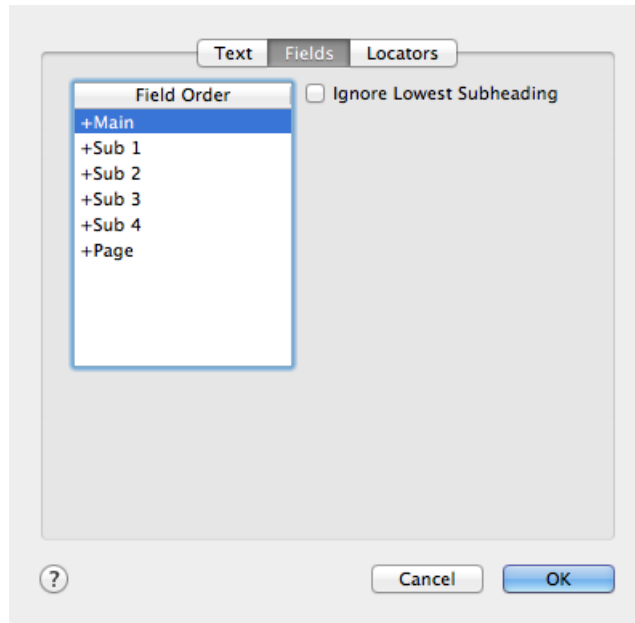
---

When Cindex sorts records, it evaluates text fields alphabetically, and evaluates the locator field numerically (if it contains page references) or alphabetically (if it contains cross-references). Cindex can evaluate fields in any order that you specify. When first installed it is set to alphabetize first on the main heading, then on successive levels of subheading, down to the lowest level present; if records are identical at all levels, their positions are determined by values of page references; if page references are identical the positions are determined by record number. By changing the order in which Cindex evaluates fields, you can change the way that entries are sorted. For example, if you set Cindex to evaluate the locator field first, your entries will be sorted by order of page reference.

---

## Field Evaluation Order

To specify which fields Cindex will attend to, and the order in which it will evaluate them, choose **Sort...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 44. Click the Fields tab.



**FIGURE 44.** Settings for sorting record fields

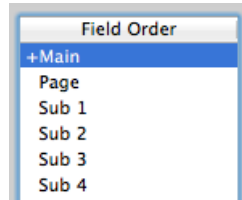
---

The order in which Cindex evaluates fields is determined by the list displayed under **Field Order**. The items in this list show, from top to bottom, the order in which Cindex will evaluate fields when sorting records. Cindex attends to fields that have a + beside them, and ignores fields without +. To change the order of a field, drag its item to the position you want it to occupy. To make Cindex ignore a field, double-click it to remove the +; to make Cindex attend to a field that is currently ignored, double-click it to restore the +.

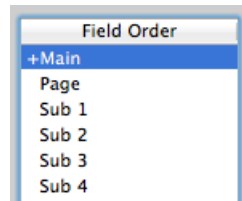
To make Cindex sort entries by main heading only, ignoring other fields, set:

---

## Field Evaluation Order



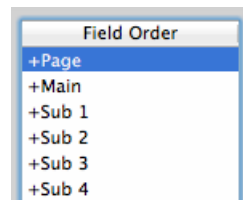
To make Cindex sort on the main heading, then by page references, then (if entries are identical in the main heading and page references) successively lower levels of subheading, set:



**NOTE:** When Cindex is set to ignore subheadings during sorting, records that have the same main heading and subheading, but different page references, may become separated in the index. To avoid this potential problem you should ensure that your index contains no duplicate records with different page references. Cindex can combine references from duplicate records into a single record. "Consolidating References from Multiple Records" on page 222 describes how to do this.

### Sorting by Page Reference Order

To make Cindex sort entries by page reference, then by heading level, set:



When you sort entries by order of page references, Cindex places all records that contain empty locator fields at the beginning of the index, and places records that contain cross-references at the end of the index (in alphabetical order of ref-

erence). Cindex normally sorts the records in ascending order of page reference. If a locator field contains multiple references, Cindex uses the lowest-valued reference by default. You can change these ordering principles if you wish. “Placing References in Descending Order” on page 134 explains how to sort references in descending order. “Ordering References by the First in a Record” on page 134 explains how to sort references by the first that appears in the locator field.

### Locating Records in a Page Order Sort

When an index is sorted by order of page reference, Cindex expects that if you want to find a record quickly you will specify it by a page reference. When you use navigation shortcuts to find entries in the main document window (page 65) Cindex interprets what you type as a locator, and looks up the first record that contains that locator. If the locator begins with a numeral (as it usually will) you must type a \ immediately before it to prevent Cindex treating the number as a record number. The same principles apply if you use **Go To...** to find an entry. When an index is sorted by page reference, you cannot bring an entry into view in the main window by typing the beginning characters of its heading.

**NOTE:** You cannot use the tools **Reconcile Headings** or **Check References** when the index is sorted by order of page reference.

### *Ignoring the Lowest-Level Subheading*

Certain kinds of indexes require entries alphabetized on all levels of heading except the lowest (at whatever level this happens to be), which is ordered by page reference. For example, in the following fragment the entries directly under the heading are ordered by page reference; entries under subheadings are also ordered by page reference, but the subheadings are ordered alphabetically:

```
FOOTBALL
  viewing statistics, 57
  televising, 78
  College
    new rules take effect, 14
    NCAA approves drug tests, 827
  Professional
    Super Bowl interviews, 31
    NFL tryout results, 126
```

---

## Alphabetical Sorting

To make Cindex sort entries in this way, specify a conventional **Field Order**, and check **Ignore Lowest Subheading**. Cindex will sort the index in the order determined by **Field Order**, but will order the lowest-level heading by page number. If two headings at the lowest-level have identical page numbers they will be ordered alphabetically.

### *Sorting Shortcuts*

Cindex provides a quick method for sorting the index either alphabetically or by order of page number, without your having to choose **Sort...** from the Tools menu. On the main toolbar click **A-Z** to sort entries alphabetically; click **1-9** to sort entries in locator (page number) order.

Clicking either of these buttons causes Cindex to use its current sort settings (made by choosing **Sort...** from the Tools menu), except that the order in which fields are evaluated is (for alphabetical sorting) from the main heading through the last subheading to the locator field, or (for sorting by page reference) the locator field, then the main heading through all the subheadings. If you want levels of heading to be evaluated in any but these two simple sequences (for example you want this order: main heading, locator, then subheading) you should specify that order by using the full range of sorting options available by choosing **Sort...** from the Tools menu.

## ALPHABETICAL SORTING

---

When first installed, Cindex uses a *simple* alphabetical sort, but does not ignore numerals and punctuation in records. This is often the best way to keep the index organized while you work on it, but because the simple sort attends to all characters that appear in records (for example, placing an entry in quotation marks at the head of the index), it is generally inadequate for production of the final index. Before producing your final copy you will usually sort the index by letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing rules.

---

## Alphabetical Sorting

In a letter-by-letter sort, spaces between words are ignored, and records are compared one letter at a time up to the first mark of punctuation. If the records match up to this point, the comparison continues to the next punctuation mark, and so on. In a word-by-word sort, letters are compared up to the end of the first word. If records match up to that point, the comparison starts again at the second word, and so on. In most instances the two alphabetizing rules produce identical results; however, there are exceptions:

### Letter-By-Letter

endings  
endogenous  
end piece  
end zone

### Word-by-word

end piece  
end zone  
endings  
endogenous

In both types of alphabetizing, Cindex ignores all characters but letters, except where noted in the following section.

## *Principles of Alphabetizing*

When Cindex sorts records in letter-by-letter or word-by-word order it follows these rules:

### Letters

Cindex ignores letter case unless that is all that distinguishes entries. When Cindex does distinguish upper- and lowercase letters, it follows language-specific conventions. For example, in English, lowercase sorts before uppercase; in Latvian, uppercase sorts before lowercase.

Accented letters are sorted according to language-specific collation rules. When sorting in English, Cindex treats any accented letter as its (unaccented) English counterpart, unless the accent is the only thing that distinguishes two entries. In this case the entry containing the unaccented letter comes first. If the same letter with different accents is all that distinguishes two entries, then the entries are ordered by the letter's Unicode value.

---

## Alphabetical Sorting

### Punctuation

When Cindex alphabetizes entries it assigns the punctuation marks . , : and ; a higher precedence than any other characters. These punctuation marks (especially the period) are often used in contexts, such as in abbreviations, where they should be ignored altogether. Cindex cannot infallibly identify special uses of punctuation marks, but it tries to detect them by ignoring any mark that is not followed by a space or a hyphen. Thus U.S.A. is alphabetized as USA. If you wish, Cindex will always ignore punctuation marks when alphabetizing. “Treatment of Punctuation” on page 156 explains how to do this.

### Hyphen (-) and Slash (/)

Cindex ignores the hyphen and slash (solidus) in letter-by-letter alphabetizing, but in word-by-word alphabetizing it normally treats these characters as spaces, unless they are the only characters that distinguish entries. In such cases, the solidus has a higher value than the hyphen, and the hyphen has a higher value than a space. Thus the following entries are alphabetized in the order shown:

sodium potassium  
sodium-potassium  
sodium/potassium

If you wish, Cindex will ignore the hyphen and slash in word-by-word alphabetizing. “Treatment of Punctuation” on page 156 explains how to arrange this.

### Symbols

In making a letter-by-letter or word-by-word sort, Cindex normally ignores symbols, but if two otherwise identical entries contain different symbols, the order of entries is determined by the character values of the symbols they contain.

You can sort entries on symbols if you wish. “Filing Entries under Symbols and Numbers” on page 162 explains how to do this.

### Numbers

Cindex normally ignores numerals when alphabetizing, unless these are the only characters that distinguish entries. In this case Cindex evaluates a series of numerals as a number, and orders the entries by the values of these numbers. Cindex will therefore automatically place the following entries in the order shown, regardless of the order in which they were added to the index:

---

## Alphabetical Sorting

AAAS, 7th Annual Meeting  
AAAS, 49th Annual Meeting

If you wish, Cindex will always evaluate numbers. For a full discussion of this, see the section “Evaluating Numbers” on page 157.

### Identical Entries

Records that are alphabetically identical are ordered by page reference. If the records also contain identical references they appear in the index ordered by record number.

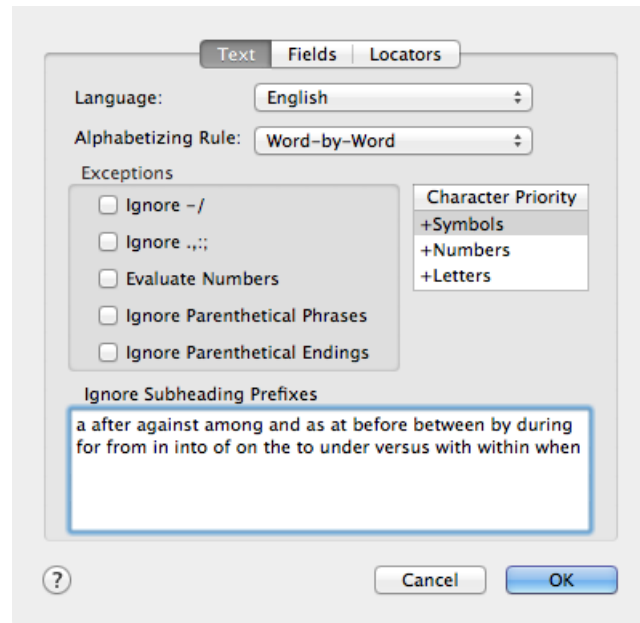
### *Choosing the Alphabetizing Method*

Cindex provides three different rules for alphabetizing entries, and for each of them offers variations on the basic methods. All the settings that govern alphabetizing are made in the **Text** tab of the **Sort...** panel (Figure 45)



---

## Alphabetical Sorting



**FIGURE 45.** Settings for alphabetizing

---

Choose the alphabetizing method from the **Alphabetizing Rule** popup menu. In addition to the standard letter-by-letter and word-by word alphabetizing options, Cindex offers three variant forms of each: one recommended by the *Chicago Manual of Style* (15th Edition), another other recommended by the International Standards Organization (ISO), and a third recommended by the *Society of Biblical Literature* (SBL). If you choose a variant form Cindex configures for you most of the other settings available through the panel.

Depending on the method you select, Cindex will disable various other options in the box. The section “Modifying the Basic Alphabetizing Rules” on page 154 describes these options. Choose any options you want, then click **OK** to sort the index.

---

## Alphabetical Sorting

### Working with Letter-by-Letter and Word-by-Word Alphabetizing

Nothing in the index is permanently changed by any type of sort. You can re-sort the index at any time by any sort rule.

When an index is sorted by the letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing rules, you can work with records in the usual way. When you add a record, or change a record's alphabetical position by editing, Cindex places or replaces it properly according to the sort rule in effect. You can undertake all your work with the index sorted by the word-by-word or letter-by-letter alphabetizing rules, but for the reasons discussed below you may prefer to use the simple alphabetical sort.

If the index has been sorted by word-by-word or letter-by-letter rules, when you seek records by typing leading text from the main heading Cindex applies the sorting rules to the text you type before looking-up the record. It may therefore not find records in quite the way you expect. Suppose you were using a letter-by-letter sort and wanted to display a record beginning with

### 32-bit processors

If you typed `\ 32` to show the entry in the main index window (you use the `\` because Cindex otherwise interprets `32` as a record number) Cindex would not find the record because the letter-by-letter sort rule ignores numerals, spaces and hyphens. To find the record you could type `bit`.

In dealing with records that contain leading text that will be ignored by the sort rule Cindex is using, always type enough of the heading to get past characters that will be ignored.

## *Modifying the Basic Alphabetizing Rules*

The following paragraphs describe how you can modify the basic alphabetizing rules that apply to all records. Not all options are available with each method of alphabetizing.

---

## Alphabetical Sorting

### Setting Precedence of Letters, Numerals and Symbols

For sorting purposes Cindex recognizes three classes of characters: letters, Arabic numerals and symbols. Numerals and symbols are normally ignored, but if Cindex attends to them it normally treats all symbols as having higher precedence than all numbers, and all numbers as having higher precedence than all letters. You can specify a different precedence through the list labeled **Character Priority**. Drag the item corresponding to a character class to the position you want it to occupy in the list. The order in which these items appear in the list determines the precedence of the classes they represent—the item at the top of the list has the highest precedence.

When Cindex uses symbols in sorting entries, the standard ASCII symbols proceed in the following order:

!"#\$%&'()\*+,-./:;<=>?@[\\]^\_`{|}~

Other symbols proceed in the order of their Unicode values.

### Ignoring Leading Words in Subheadings

You will usually want to ignore leading prepositions and articles when you alphabetize subheadings. Cindex maintains a list of words (mostly prepositions, conjunctions, and articles) that it will ignore when they begin subheadings. Cindex ignores all words at the start of a subheading until it finds one that is not in its list. For example, Cindex would alphabetize the subheadings in the following entries under ‘depression’ and ‘television’.

Political campaigns  
during the depression  
before television

To modify the set of leading words to be ignored, edit them in the box **Ignore Subheading Prefixes**. The words to be ignored can appear in any order. Leave a space between adjacent words. Cindex disregards the case of the words to be ignored, which may contain any mixture of upper- and lowercase characters.

**NOTE:** Cindex does not ignore leading words in subheadings when you use a simple sort.

---

## Alphabetical Sorting

To alphabetize an exceptional subheading on a leading word that would normally be ignored, place a ~ (tilde) immediately before the first word of the subheading.

### Treatment of Punctuation

In standard letter-by-letter alphabetizing, punctuation marks following a word or phrase have a higher precedence than any letter, so the following entries would be alphabetized as shown:

Adolescent, physical examination  
Adolescent parents

An increasingly common practice is to ignore punctuation entirely in letter-by-letter alphabetizing. To do this, check **Ignore .,:; .**

In word-by-word alphabetizing Cindex normally treats the hyphen and slash as spaces (they are always ignored in letter-by-letter alphabetizing) unless these are the only characters that distinguish entries. You can make Cindex ignore the hyphen and slash in word-by-word alphabetizing. To do this check **Ignore -/.**

**NOTE:** This option is available only when you use standard word-by-word alphabetizing.

### Ignoring Parenthetical Phrases

Cindex can ignore phrases in parentheses. To enable this, check **Ignore Parenthetical Phrases**. When this is checked, Cindex will attend to the text in parentheses if that is all that distinguishes two entries.

If you want Cindex to ignore parenthesized text only in particular entries, do not check this box. Instead, enclose the parenthesized text in angle brackets (< >). “Ignoring Specified Characters or Words” on page 158 provides more information about the use of angle brackets.

**NOTE:** This option is not available when you use a simple sort. It is always checked when you use a variant form of letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing

### Ignoring Parenthetical Endings

You can set Cindex to ignore parenthetical endings to words. To do this, check **Ignore Parenthetical Endings**.

**NOTE:** This option is not available when you use a simple sort.

---

## Alphabetical Sorting

### Evaluating Numbers

Because Cindex normally ignores numerals in standard letter-by-letter and word-by-word alphabetizing, it will usually arrange the following entries in this order:

Regulation 2725-1(a)(6) cited in special report, 1082  
Regulation 2725-1(a)(5) revised in supplement A2, 1082  
Regulation 2725-2(a) examined in special report, 902  
Regulation 2725-1(b), draft of, 1152

In cases like these you will probably want to evaluate numbers embedded in entries, so that the entries are sorted by their leading letters, then (if the letters are the same) by the values of any numbers they contain:

Regulation 2725-1(a)(5) revised in supplement A2, 1082  
Regulation 2725-1(a)(6) cited in special report, 1082  
Regulation 2725-1(b), draft of, 1152  
Regulation 2725-2(a) examined in special report, 902

To make Cindex evaluate numbers that it would normally ignore check **Evaluate Numbers**. Cindex will then compare entries in the specified order (letter-by-letter or word-by-word) until it finds an Arabic numeral or series of numerals, which it will evaluate as a number. If the entries being compared contain the same numbers, the comparison continues; if the numbers differ, Cindex will place the records in numerical order. If only one of the entries contains a number it will normally be placed before the one without, although you can make Cindex place it differently by changing the precedence of characters, as described in “Setting Precedence of Letters, Numerals and Symbols” on page 155.

**NOTE:** This option is not available when you use a simple sort. It is always checked when you use a variant form of letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing.

## OVERRIDING SORTING RULES FOR INDIVIDUAL ENTRIES

---

You will sometimes want to make exceptions to the normal rules for alphabetizing. For example, you might want to ignore a Greek letter at the beginning of a heading, or you might want an abbreviation to be treated as if it were spelled out. This section describes how to make such exceptions for individual entries.

**NOTE:** The options described here apply only when you choose letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing. Sorting rules cannot be overridden when you work with a simple alphabetical sort.

### *Ignoring Specified Characters or Words*

The following examples show how you can place entries correctly in the index by making Cindex ignore words or parts of words in records.

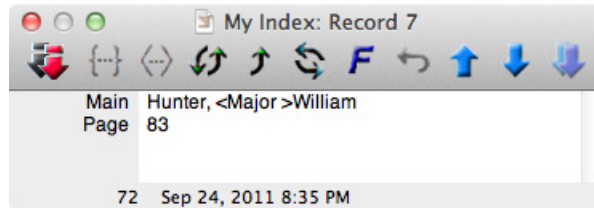
Entries sometimes will contain words you want Cindex to ignore during alphabetizing. For example, you would probably want the following entries alphabetized by last name then first name, with the title ignored:

Hunter, Gregory, 59  
Hunter, Stewart, 43  
Hunter, Thomas, 22  
Hunter, Major William, 83


To ensure that the title “Major” is ignored during alphabetizing, enclose it in angle brackets:

---

## Overriding Sorting Rules for Individual Entries



**FIGURE 46.** Using < > to hide a word

**NOTE:** You can enclose selected text in angle brackets by clicking  in the record-entry window.

Cindex ignores characters in angle brackets during sorting, unless these are the only ones that distinguish entries. In that case the order of entries is determined by the characters in the brackets. The angle brackets themselves do not appear in the fully formatted display, though they do appear in the draft display.

**NOTES:** In word-by-word alphabetizing, Cindex attends to spaces and hyphens between words. When you mark a word or passage of text to be ignored, you should always include *within* the angle brackets any trailing space or hyphen, as in the example in Figure 46. If you leave a trailing space outside the brackets you may find that your entry is misplaced.

You may use angle brackets as often as you like in any field of a record.

### Ignoring the Beginning of an Entry

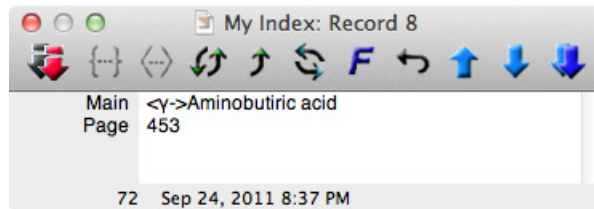
If you are working on a scientific index you might make an entry like this:

$\gamma$ -Aminobutyric acid, 453

Such an entry would normally be alphabetized under “Aminobutyric acid” rather than under the Greek letter  $\gamma$ . To make Cindex ignore the leading letter and the following dash (which would normally be treated as a space in word-by-word alphabetizing), place them in angle brackets, as in Figure 47.

---

## Overriding Sorting Rules for Individual Entries

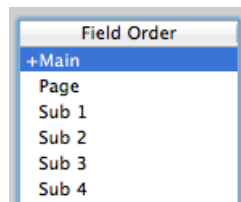


**FIGURE 47.** Using < > to hide leading characters

---

### Ignoring Page References

If you enclose the whole of a locator field within angle brackets (< >) Cindex will ignore all the references contained in it. This can be useful if you are preparing an index that is to be organized alphabetically by heading with subheadings ordered by reference or date, except for certain classes of headings (e.g., Births, Deaths) under which subheadings are to be ordered alphabetically. Use this order of fields to specify the overall arrangement:



For the exceptional cases you can obtain the alphabetical order of subheadings by hiding the complete contents of the locator field in < >.

### *Spelling-out Numbers, Symbols and Abbreviations*

Entries that begin with numbers or symbols might need to be placed in the index as if the numbers or names of symbols were spelled out. Similarly, entries that contain abbreviations might need to be placed as if the abbreviations were spelled-out.

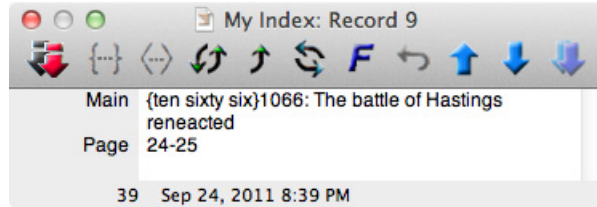
Arabic numerals in headings and subheadings are normally ignored in both letter-by-letter and word-by-word alphabetizing. To place an entry that begins with



---

## Overriding Sorting Rules for Individual Entries

a number as if the number were spelled out, put the spelled-out form in braces immediately before the heading, as shown in Figure 48.



**FIGURE 48.** Using { } to force the sorting of an entry

---

**NOTE:** You can enclose selected text in braces by clicking {...} in the record-entry window.

Notice that there is no space between the closing brace and 1066. Cindex uses the characters enclosed in braces to determine the alphabetical position of the record, but hides them and the braces when it displays the fully-formatted index (the braces and enclosed characters are visible in the draft view). You may use text braces as often as you like in an entry.

You can use the same technique to alphabetize any symbol. For example, to alphabetize the Greek letter  $\beta$  (beta) at the beginning of an entry for  $\beta$ -Thalassemia, you would place {beta} immediately before  $\beta$ .

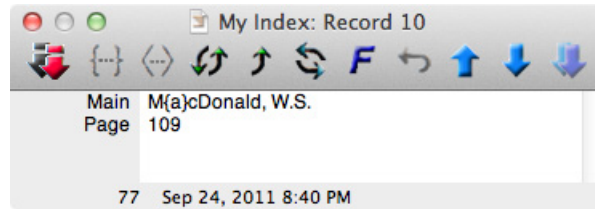
Cindex attends to braces only when using letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing. Cindex treats braces as ordinary characters when using a simple sort.

### *Expanding Abbreviations and Unusual Spellings*

To sort names beginning with Mc as Mac, or sort abbreviations as if they were spelled out, insert the missing letter(s) in braces, for example

---

## Overriding Sorting Rules for Individual Entries



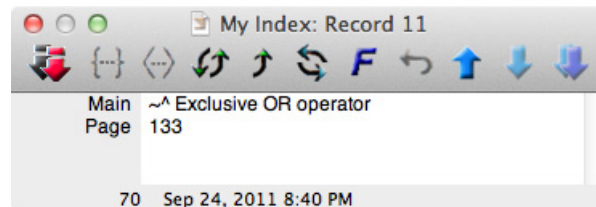
**FIGURE 49.** Using { } to expand a name for sorting

---

The entry would be alphabetized under MacDonald, but in the fully formatted view would be displayed or printed as McDonald. If Cindex encounters both the expanded abbreviation (Figure 49) and the fully spelled version in otherwise identical entries, the full version will precede the abbreviated version.

### *Filing Entries under Symbols and Numbers*

In letter-by-letter and word-by-word sorting Cindex normally ignores Arabic numerals and symbols, so entries are filed under the first letter that appears in a heading. Certain indexes may require entries beginning with symbols or numbers to be filed under the appropriate symbol or numeral. For example, in the index to a book on computer programming entries might be filed under symbols such as ^ and !. To make Cindex sort an entry on a character that would normally be ignored place a ~ (tilde) immediately in front of the character, as shown in Figure 50.



**FIGURE 50.** Using ~ to force sorting on a character normally ignored

---

You may use the ~ as often as you like anywhere in a record.

When you place ~ before a digit (0-9), Cindex treats the digit as a character; it does not evaluate a number comprised of a series of digits. If you wish, Cindex will evaluate and sort numbers comprised of a series of digits. The section “Evaluating Numbers” on page 157 explains how to arrange this.

When Cindex attends to symbols or numerals in sorting entries, it normally files symbols before numerals, which are filed before letters. You can change this order if you prefer. The section “Setting Precedence of Letters, Numerals and Symbols” on page 155 explains how.

### *Reserved Characters*

Because the characters \ { } < > and ~ have special meanings for Cindex, they are normally neither displayed in a fully formatted view nor evaluated in sorting a record.

Even if a reserved character is preceded by \ to disable its special function (for example \\) and allow Cindex to display it as a normal character, Cindex will not attend to it in letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing entries (because the special character is a punctuation mark). If you want Cindex not only to display a reserved character but also to evaluate it during sorting, place a ~ before it. If you enter ~\ in a record, Cindex treats \ as a literal character *and* sorts it by its value. The same applies to ~< ~> ~{ ~} and ~~.



## CHAPTER 10 *Formatting the Index*

---

A strength of Cindex is that you can form entries in records without being concerned with how they will look in the fully formatted copy—Cindex deals quite separately with the *content* of an index and its *appearance*. As a result, you can at any time change the way in which entries are arranged and displayed or printed. This chapter describes how to control the overall layout of a document, and how to control the style and format of individual index entries.

For detailed information on arranging and formatting cross-references, see “Placing and Formatting Cross-References” on page 115. For detailed information on arranging and formatting page references, see “Formatting Page References” on page 136.

### MARGINS AND COLUMNS

---

To set the page margins and columns, choose **Margins & Columns...** from the Document menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 51.

---

## Margins and Columns

The screenshot shows a dialog box with two main sections: 'Margins' and 'Columns'. The 'Margins' section includes input fields for Top (1), Bottom (1), Left (0.5), and Right (0.5), along with a 'Facing Pages' checkbox. The 'Columns' section includes a 'Columns' dropdown set to 2, a 'Gutter' input field set to 0.25, and a 'Unit' dropdown set to 'Inch'. Below these is a 'Repeat Broken Heading' section with three radio buttons: 'Never', 'New Page' (which is selected), and 'New Column'. Underneath are an 'Append:' text field containing '(Continued)' and a 'To Level:' dropdown set to 'Sub 1'. At the bottom right are 'Cancel' and 'OK' buttons, and at the bottom left is a help icon (?)

**FIGURE 51.** Margins and Columns settings

---

You can set margin widths and column spacing in inches, millimeters, points, or picas. Choose the unit you want to work in from the **Unit** pop-up menu. Cindex will display all measures in the unit you choose.

**NOTE:** You can set a preferred unit that Cindex will use by default. To do this choose **Preferences...** from the Cindex menu (see Figure 1 on page 11), then choose the unit from the **Measurement Unit** pop-up menu.

To set margins, enter the sizes you require in the boxes marked **Top**, **Bottom**, **Left**, and **Right**. If you check **Facing Pages**, Cindex uses inside and outside margins rather than left and right margins when it prints even and odd-numbered pages.

To specify the number of columns (up to six), choose from the **Columns** pop-up menu. In **Gutter**, set the space you wish to appear between columns.

**NOTE:** When you select more than one column, Cindex displays screen text in a column of the correct width, but does not show side-by-side columns. These appear only on the printed page.

---

## Margins and Columns

Cindex knows the paper size your printer is set to use (you specify that through printer settings described in “Page Setup” on page 78) and uses this information, together with the margin and column settings, to determine how much space to allow for each column. Cindex does not allow you to specify column width as a fixed number of characters, because the column width does not correspond to a fixed number of characters in a proportionally-spaced font. If your publisher requires lines that contain a fixed number of characters, do the following:

1. Display your index in a monospaced font at an appropriate size (10 point `Courier` provides 12 characters per inch; 12 point provides 10 characters per inch).
2. Calculate how wide each column of text should be to accommodate the required number of characters at the point size you are using.
3. Decide how much space you want to leave between each column (the “gutter”).
4. Use the following formula to set the left and right (or inside and outside) margins:

$$\text{Left Margin} + \text{Right Margin} = \text{Page Width} - \# \text{Columns} \times \text{Column Width} + (\# \text{Columns} - 1) \times$$

### *Continuing Headings across Column and Page Breaks*

When printing an index in the *fully-formatted view only*, Cindex can repeat at the top of any new column or page the heading from any entry broken at the foot of the previous column or page. When it repeats the broken heading Cindex can append some phrase (such as “*continued*”) to indicate that the entry was broken. Page and column breaks are not visible in the screen display, so Cindex does not show on the screen any repeated headings from entries that will straddle a column or page break.

To make Cindex repeat at the start of a page any headings from entries broken at the bottom of the previous page, click **At New Page**; to make Cindex repeat at the top of a new column any heading from an entry broken at the foot of the preceding column or page, click **At New Column**.

---

## Headers and Footers

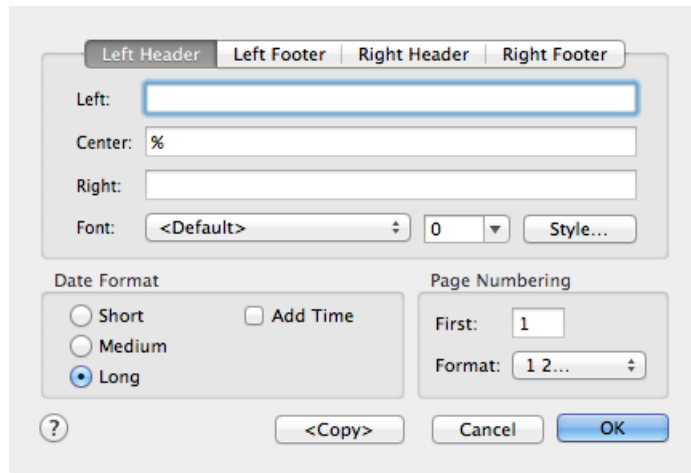
Choose from the **To Level** pop-up menu the lowest level of heading that you want repeated after a break. For example, to have only main headings repeated, but not subheadings, choose the first item.

To make Cindex print some identifier after the repeated heading or subheading, supply the text at **Append**. To specify the style in which the appended text should be displayed (italic is the default) click **Style...** Cindex will display a panel through which you can set the style and capitalization.

---

## HEADERS AND FOOTERS

To specify the contents of headers and footers, choose **Headers & Footers...** from the Document menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 52.



**FIGURE 52.** Headers and Footers settings

---

If you have chosen to format your index on facing pages with different inside and outside margins (see page 166) Cindex provides separate headers and footers on left- and right-hand printed pages. Your options will be **Left Header**, **Left Footer**,



**Right Header, Right Footer.** If you have not selected facing pages, Cindex provides a single set of headers and footers for all pages.

Each header or footer can have three segments (left, centered and right) and can be printed in any font or type style you choose.

- At **Left** type the text you want to appear at the left side of the header/footer.
- At **Center** type any text you want centered.
- At **Right** type the text you want to appear at the right side of the header/footer.

In any of these fields you can use the following special characters to denote entities that Cindex will provide automatically when it prints pages:

- @ denotes the current date/time.
- # denotes the current page number.
- % denotes the name of the index.

To use @, # or % as a literal character in a header or footer field, place a \ immediately before the character (as in \@).

If you are using facing pages and want identical headers and identical footers on odd and even pages, set up the header and footer for one page (odd or even) then click « **Copy** » to transfer the settings to the other page. This button is available only when your **Margins & Columns...** settings specify **Facing Pages**.

### Setting the Font and Style

To set the font in which the header/footer will be printed, choose from the **Font** pop-up menu. The first item in this menu (<Default>) represents the standard font in which the index is displayed (you specify that font by choosing from the Font drop-down list in the main window toolbar).

To specify the type size in points, choose from the list to the right of the **Font** pop-up menu (or type in the box). If you set 0, Cindex will print the header or footer in the standard text size set for the body of the index.

To set the style in which the header/footer will be printed, click **Style...** Cindex will display a panel through which you can specify the text style.

---

## Grouping Entries

You can set a different font, size and style for each header and footer.

### Setting the Initial Page Number and Format

If you have used # in a header or footer to specify automatic page-numbering, Cindex will give the first page the number you set in **First** (by default, 1). Page numbers are printed in Arabic or Roman numerals according to your setting of **Format**.

### Printing the Date and Time

If you have used @ to represent a date, you can choose the format in which Cindex will print the date by clicking the appropriate button in the box marked **Date Format**. To include the time with the date, check **Add Time**. The Short, Medium and Long formats are those you specify through Language and Text settings in your Mac's System Preferences.

---

## GROUPING ENTRIES

Alphabetical groups of index entries are often set off by titles (e.g., the leading letters common to headings in the groups). When displaying or printing the fully formatted index, Cindex can provide titles to groups of entries, and can provide extra spacing between groups. Cindex does not display titles in any draft view.

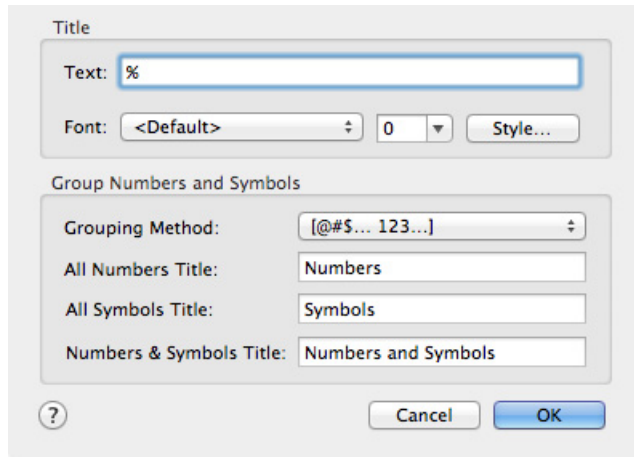
To provide titles to groups, choose **Grouping Entries...** from the Document menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 53.

**NOTE:** The section "Line Spacing" on page 178 explains how to control the spacing between groups.

At **Text**, enter any text you want to appear at the head of each group of entries (if you supply no text, Cindex displays no title). Use the character %, on its own or as part of a longer text sequence, to stand for the leading letter of the group of headings. When Cindex displays the title it will replace the % with the appropriate letter or symbol.

---

## Grouping Entries



**FIGURE 53.** Settings for grouping formatted entries

---

Cindex treats each letter of the alphabet as belonging to a distinct group, but it lets you choose how it groups entries beginning with numbers and symbols. In the **Group Numbers and Symbols** box, choose from the **Grouping Method** drop-down list the method you want it to use. In each item the square brackets [ ... ] contain the classes of leading characters that Cindex will include in a single group. For example, the item [ @ ] [ # ] [ \$ ] [ % ] ... [ 1 ] [ 2 ] [ 3 ] [ 4 ] ... indicates that each leading symbol and each leading numeral forms a distinct group. The item [ @ # \$ % 1 2 3 4 ... ] indicates that all symbols and all numbers fall in a single group (this is the setting Cindex uses when it is first installed).

**NOTE:** To identify the group to which an entry belongs, Cindex uses the first character that is not ignored in sorting. This need not be the first character in the entry (it will usually not be the first character if the entry begins with a symbol or a numeral).

Enter at **All Numbers Title**, **All Symbols Title**, and **Numbers & Symbols Title** any titles Cindex should display above the generic numbers/symbols groups.

---

### Style and Layout of Entries

To specify the font in which the title will be displayed or printed, choose from the **Font** pop-up menu. Choose *<Default>* to use the standard font in which entries are displayed.

To specify the type size in points, choose from the list to the right of the **Font** pop-up menu (or type in the box). Choose 0 to use the standard size set for the body of the index.

To specify a style in which the text should be displayed, click **Style...** Cindex will display a panel through which you can specify the style in which the title is to be displayed.

## STYLE AND LAYOUT OF ENTRIES

---

Cindex keeps information about the contents of entries, held in records, quite separate from information about the arrangement of entries and the index style (indented or run-in). This makes it possible for Cindex to display the same index entries in a variety of styles and layouts.

To specify the index style, choose **Style & Layout...** from the Document menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 54.

---

## Style and Layout of Entries

The screenshot shows the 'Style and Layout of Entries' dialog box. It has four main sections: 'Style', 'Line Spacing', 'Indentation', and 'Adjust Punctuation'.  
- **Style:** 'Indented' is selected with a radio button. 'Run-in from:' is empty. 'Variant:' is 'Standard Layout'. 'Collapse Headings below:' is empty.  
- **Line Spacing:** 'Single' is selected. 'Auto' is checked with a value of 0.22. 'Inch' is also visible. 'Extra at Main Head:' is 0. 'Extra at Alphabetic Group:' is 1.  
- **Indentation:** 'Incremental' is selected. 'Lead:' is 1. 'Runover:' is 2. 'Em Space' is selected.  
- **Adjust Punctuation:** 'Around Quotation Marks' and 'Around Styled Text' are both checked.  
At the bottom right are 'Cancel' and 'OK' buttons. A help icon (?) is at the bottom left.

**FIGURE 54.** Style and Layout settings

---

**NOTE:** With the exception of line spacing, the settings you make apply only when you view the fully formatted index. Other views use their own, fixed settings.

### *Setting the Index Style*

Cindex can display and print indexes in indented and run-in styles and in several variants of these.

Entries formatted in run-in style look like this:

American frontier, 89-93; Oregon trail, 92  
American Indians; art, 55; dance, 89

Run-in style is not generally suitable for formatting entries that have sub-sub-headings (although variants of it may be), and entries with several levels of heading are usually formatted in indented style:

---

## Style and Layout of Entries

American frontier, 89-93  
Oregon trail, 92  
American Indians  
art, 55  
jewelry, 57  
masks, 60  
dance, 89

To specify the basic index style, click **Indented** or **Run-in**. If you click **Run-in**, you can also specify through the pop-up menu the level of heading below which you want headings run-in. The initial setting, which is standard, is to run-in all levels below the main heading. The entries shown below are formatted with headings run-in below the subheading:

American frontier, 89-93  
Oregon trail, 92  
American Indians  
art, 55; jewelry, 57; masks, 60  
dance, 89

For each major style, Cindex provides variants you can select through the **Variant** pop-up menu.

### Modified Run-in Style

If your index contains sub-subheadings as well as subheadings (which normally precludes the use of the run-in style), you can make Cindex format entries so that subheadings are run-in from headings, except when any subheading has a sub-subheading beneath it, in which case all the subheadings under the relevant heading are indented and sub-subheadings are run-in:

American frontier, 89-93; Oregon trail, 92  
American Indians  
art, 55; jewelry, 57; masks, 60  
dance, 89

---

## Style and Layout of Entries

To use this format, choose *Indent Major Subheadings* from the **Variant** pop-up menu.

**Modified Indented Style** Cindex provides two variants of the basic indented style.

1. In the first variant, Cindex will modify the layout of any entry in which a subheading (or sub-subheading) falls under a heading (or subheading) that contains no immediately following page reference. Cindex converts the subheading (or sub-subheading) to a phrase that modifies the main heading (or subheading), as in this example, where 'art' is a subheading:

American frontier, 89-93  
Oregon trail, 92  
American Indians, art, 55  
jewelry, 57  
masks, 60  
dance, 89

To set this style, choose *Run-back Subheadings* from the **Variant** pop-up menu.

2. In the second variant, Cindex prints every level of heading for each entry, (i.e., it does not suppress repeated headings):

American frontier, 89-93  
American frontier  
Oregon trail, 92  
American Indians  
art, 55  
American Indians  
art  
jewelry, 57  
American Indians  
art  
masks, 60  
American Indians  
dance, 89

To use this style, choose *Repeat all Headings* from the **Variant** pop-up menu.

### Custom Run-On Headings

When you have chosen an indented style you can override the default layout on an entry-by-entry basis, and force subheadings to be run-on from a particular level. If the last character of any heading or subheading is a vertical bar (|), Cindex will format lower levels of heading run-on from that level. Cindex automatically substitutes the appropriate leading punctuation for the bar as it formats the entry.

### Collapsing Headings

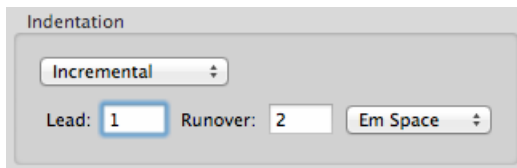
If your entries contain multiple levels of heading, you can collapse heading levels in the formatted index, so that, for example, all subheadings are hidden, and the page references and cross-references that belong to them are merged with those from the main heading. This can be especially useful if you have to shorten an index by removing some low-level headings, but want to preserve their cross-references and page references.

To collapse headings choose from the **Collapse Headings below** pop-up menu the level of heading below which headings will be collapsed. When you collapse entries, Cindex automatically suppresses “See” (but not “See also”) references that originate from a heading level that is collapsed.

**NOTE:** Cindex collapses headings only when displaying entries in the fully formatted view. Collapsing headings merely alters the display of entries; it does nothing to the contents of index records.

## Indentation

In an indented index each level of subentry is indented more than the level above. In both indented and run-in styles an entry that occupies more than one line is run over on a continuation line, suitably indented. The settings discussed in this section allow you to organize the indentation of entries in virtually any way you want. All these settings are made in the **Indentation** box.



The pop-up menu provides four methods to control indentation:



---

## Style and Layout of Entries

- No indentation. Cindex provides no leading or runover indentation. Choose *None* to suppress all indents.
- Incremental Indentation. Cindex indents the start of each subheading by a specified amount that depends upon the subheading level; for any runover lines Cindex adds an additional amount to the lead indent. You specify the runover indentation and the lead for the first level of subheading, and Cindex calculates all other indents automatically. Choose *Incremental* to specify this method. This is the method Cindex uses when it is first installed.
- Fixed Indentation. Cindex indents headings and runover lines by amounts that you specify separately for each level of heading. This method provides the greatest control over indentation, but requires more settings than others. Choose *Fixed* to use this method. If you choose fixed indentation Cindex displays a popup menu through which you choose the heading(s) for which you will set indentation.
- Incremental Indentation, with special indentation for the lowest level of heading in an entry. This method is like standard incremental indentation, but the lowest level of subheading in an entry (regardless of its actual level) has fixed lead and runover indents. This method is designed for indexes in which the body of an entry must be indented by a fixed amount regardless of its placement under a main heading or a subheading:

### NEOPLASMS

Data files now online from Cancer Data Center, Dec. p 12

Oncology Guidelines Report to appear in September issue, Aug p 5

### Drug Therapy

Adjuvant pain treatment in cancer: a case for psychopharmacology,  
Jun pp 60-65

### Prevention & Control

Implications of allied health and nursing students' knowledge of  
cancer prevention, Aug pp 63-65

State Cancer Plan designed to control cancer, Sep p 5

To use this method choose *Special Last* from the pop-up menu.

## Setting Indent Units and Sizes

Cindex can form indents in absolute units (inches, centimeters, points or picas), or in units based on the size of characters in the font in which the index is displayed. For font-based measurement, Cindex uses the em space (the width of the capital letter M).

Choose from the pop-up menu the unit in which you want to specify indents. When you change units Cindex converts the indents to the new unit. Cindex is set initially to form automatic indents using em-space units, with the leading indent for the first subheading set to 1 em space and the runover indent set to 2.5 em spaces. Specify the lead and runover indents in the **Lead** and **Runover** boxes. You can use fractional values for both the lead and runover indents.

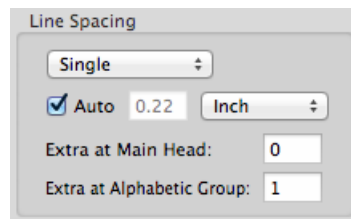
When using *Incremental* indentation, you need specify only one lead indent and one runover indent.

When using *Fixed* indentation, you should specify a lead and runover indent for each level of heading that will appear in your index. Choose the heading from the **Level** popup menu, then set the lead and runover indents.

When using *Special Last* indentation, you must specify incremental indents that will be used for all levels of heading except the last. You must also specify fixed indents that will be used for the lowest-level headings.

## Line Spacing

Cindex will display and print entries single spaced, double-spaced, or spaced one and one-half lines apart, with the line space chosen automatically to suit the font you are using, or fixed at some size you specify. Line spacing is controlled through items in the **Line Spacing** box:



To specify the spacing of entries, choose *Single*, *1.5 Lines*, or *Double*, from the pop-up menu.

To make Cindex space lines automatically at an interval appropriate for the font you are using, check **Auto** (this is checked when Cindex is first installed). To make Cindex space lines at a fixed interval, choose from the pop-up menu the unit in which you want to specify the space, then enter the value in the box. Cindex will uncheck **Auto** if the space differs from the space it would choose automatically. If you change the unit, Cindex displays the value of the line space in the new unit.

When displaying fully formatted entries, Cindex can insert extra blank lines at the transition from one main heading to the next, and at the transition between alphabetical groups of entries. To insert extra lines between main headings, set the number at **Extra at Main Head**; to insert extra lines between alphabetical groups of entries, set the number at **Extra at Alphabetic Group**.

### *Adjusting Punctuation*

Cindex punctuates entries automatically as it formats them, for example placing a comma or some other character between the text of an entry and a following page reference.

Automatic punctuation might result in Cindex placing a period or a comma immediately after text enclosed in quotation marks, or after some text printed in italics or boldface, or in a special font. Good practice dictates that the period or comma should fall inside any trailing quotation mark and should appear in the same type style or font as the immediately preceding word. You can set Cindex so that it will adjust punctuation appropriately around quotation marks or the closing of a type style.

To make Cindex move trailing punctuation inside quotation marks (either punctuation it supplies automatically, or punctuation you have misplaced in an entry) check **Around Quotation Marks** in the Style and Layout panel (Figure 54 on page 173). When this is checked Cindex adjusts punctuation around a closing quotation mark ( " " or ' ') when that is not preceded by punctuation, and when a matching opening quotation mark is not preceded by a letter.

To make Cindex move trailing punctuation inside the closing of a type style (e.g., italics or boldface) or non-standard font, check **Around Styled Text**. When this option is checked, Cindex will also automatically italicize parentheses or square brackets that enclose a phrase that is fully italicized.

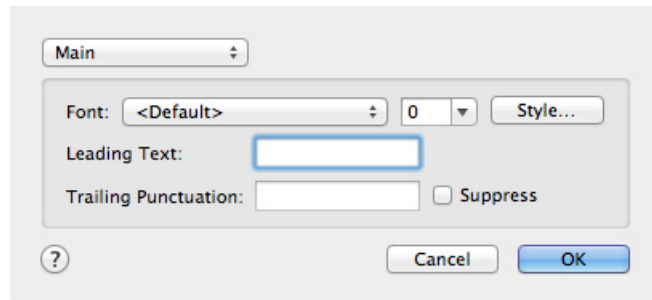
## TYPOGRAPHY AND PUNCTUATION OF HEADINGS

---

When displaying or printing a fully-formatted index, Cindex can show headings and subheadings in any font and style you choose, and can provide custom punctuation for them. Cindex can also suppress the display of headings at specified levels.

To specify the font and/or style in which Cindex will display and print headings, choose **Headings...** from the Document menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 55.

**NOTE:** These settings apply only to entries displayed in the fully formatted view. When displaying entries in other views, Cindex uses fixed, standard settings.



**FIGURE 55.** Specifying heading formats

---

You can provide different settings for each level of heading in the index. Choose from the pop-up menu above the box the level of heading for which you want to set a font, types size and style.

---

## Typography and Punctuation of Headings

From the **Font** pop-up menu choose the font. The first item in the menu (<Default>) stands for the standard font used in the main view. Cindex is initially set to use this font for all levels of heading.

From the list to the right of the **Font** pop-up menu choose (or type in the box) the size in points of the type in which the heading will be displayed. Choose 0 to use the standard size set for the body of the index.

To set the style or capitalization to be applied to the heading, click **Style...** Cindex will display a panel through which you can specify the style.

**NOTE:** The font and style settings you provide do not override any explicit font and style settings in individual records (capitalization settings do override those in individual records).

To specify a character or sequence of characters that Cindex will show as the prefix to any heading enter the text at **Leading Text**. The prefix appears immediately after the first line indent, before the heading text.

To specify closing punctuation or other characters that Cindex will append to a heading that has no immediately following page references or cross-references, enter the text at **Trailing Punctuation**.

To suppress the display of the heading, check **Suppress**. Cindex will suppress the heading and any below it, together with any associated page references and cross-references.

**NOTE:** Suppressing a heading is not the same as collapsing headings (page 176). When headings at or below a particular level are collapsed, all the page references and cross-references from these headings are displayed as if they belonged to the heading at the level above.

### *Page References and Cross-References*

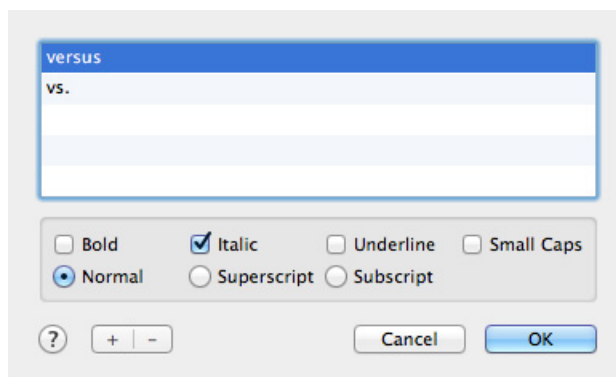
Cindex can display page references and cross-references in a wide variety of formats. “Formatting Page References” on page 136, explains how to organize the

display of page references; “Placing and Formatting Cross-References” on page 115, explains how to specify the display of cross-references.

### *Styling Text Automatically*

Cindex can automatically apply designated type styles to specified words or phrases that appear in an index. You can always apply a style explicitly to text in individual records, but if you regularly use words or phrases that must be displayed in a particular style, you can save time and effort by entering them in records in plain text, and allowing Cindex to apply the style automatically when it displays or prints fully-formatted entries, in much the way it applies styles automatically to cross-references or page references. When Cindex is first installed it is set to italicize *vs.* and *versus* wherever they appear in formatted entries.

To review or modify the words and phrases to which Cindex should automatically apply a style, choose **Styled Strings...** from the Document menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 56.



**FIGURE 56.** Specifying automatically-styled text

---

---

## Style Sheets

The list shows words or phrases to which some style will or can be applied. To review or change the styles to be applied to a particular word or phrase, click in the list to highlight it. Double-click to edit it.

- To change the styles for the selected word or phrase, check or uncheck the appropriate boxes.
- To delete the selected word or phrase, click **-**.
- To add a new word or phrase to the list, click **+** then type in the text box that Cindex opens in the list.

## STYLE SHEETS

---

You can gather together and save in a “Style Sheet” the collection of settings that together determine the layout of pages and index entries. You can later apply the style sheet to any index. You can keep different style sheets for different kinds of indexes.

A style sheet includes these settings: **Margins & Columns, Headers & Footers, Grouping Entries, Style & Layout, Headings, Cross-References, Page References** and **Styled Strings**. The style sheet also contains information about the standard (default) font and size of text in which entries are displayed and printed.

To save a style sheet, choose **Save Style Sheet...** from the File menu, and give the style sheet a name.

To recall a style sheet, choose **Open...** from the File menu, then select the sheet you want to open. (You can also open a style sheet by double-clicking its icon in a Finder window.)

**NOTE:** If you load a style sheet when no index is open for work, the settings in the style sheet become the default ones that Cindex bestows on new indexes when you create them.





## *CHAPTER 11 Exchanging Documents with Other Applications*

---

While you work on an index Cindex keeps it in a private format, but it can save the index in a variety of formats that other document-management systems understand. The first part of this chapter describes the different formats in which Cindex can export documents, and explains how to prepare them. These documents fall into two broad classes:

- Documents that contain the index entries, plus information about the style of index (for example, indented or run-in) and layout. Cindex includes in the documents the information needed to produce an index that looks like the finished one you would view on the screen. You would normally make this kind of document when sending an index to a publisher for typesetting.
- Documents that contain the index entries, but no information about the index style and layout. You would normally make this kind of document when preparing index entries for a database.

Cindex can also work with index entries prepared on other document systems. The second part of this chapter describes the forms in which Cindex can import entries, and explains how you can incorporate in an index records that have been prepared elsewhere.

### **SAVING FORMATTED INDEXES**

---

When Cindex prepares an index as a document for a typesetting system or a word-processor, it always formats entries as they would appear in a fully formatted view (even if the current view is set to some draft format). Cindex includes in

the document most of the information needed to make the index look like it did when viewed as a fully-formatted index on the screen.

Since Cindex does not know about the page size used that will be used by the recipient system, nor does it know about the page numbering, or running heads, etc., it does not include information about settings related to page size, margins and columns, or headers and footers, nor does it include line-breaks for runover lines. Since there are no page or column breaks in the document, it contains no repeated headings of the kind Cindex might otherwise print at the top of a new page or column.

### Entity Tags or Styles

For most publishing and word-processing programs the basic unit of text is the “paragraph”—a block of words terminated by a special character (often a carriage-return) and occupying one or several lines. All the information about how the paragraph is to be printed (typeface, size, indentation, line spacing, etc.) is represented by a ‘tag,’ ‘style’ or ‘markup’ identifier that is attached to the paragraph. By changing the formatting information associated with a tag, you change the formatting of all paragraphs that carry that tag. In the context of producing an index with Cindex, think of each level of heading in the formatted copy as a paragraph of a different type.

When Cindex produces a document for another system, it attaches tags to main headings, subheadings, etc., and also includes in most documents information about the attributes associated with each of these tagged entities (for example, the font and size in which it is to be displayed). Some document formats such as XML identify only the entities in the index—headings, subheadings, page-references, cross-references, etc., leaving the appearance of these entities to be determined by the document systems that will format the index.

### *Document Formats*

#### Rich Text Format (RTF)

RTF is a widely-used interchange format for text documents. RTF documents can be read by word-processors and by most document publishing systems. Each level of index heading in the RTF document has a unique ‘style’ attached to it. Cindex sets the initial properties of the document and its styles to reflect the set-

tings you have given the index (number of columns, indentations of headings and runover lines, etc.), so that when the document is imported into a word-processor or page-layout program it will look much like it did when displayed by Cindex. The appearance of the index can be changed within a word-processor or page-layout program simply by re-defining the attributes of the styles associated with different levels of heading.

### QuarkXPress / Adobe InDesign Tagged Text

QuarkXPress and InDesign are publishing programs available for both Windows and Macintosh. Each uses its own system of tags to identify styles that belong to different elements of a document. Cindex can save a formatted index as a tagged document in QuarkXPress or InDesign format. Each level of heading has a unique 'style' attached to it, and carries the attributes that belong to that heading. These attributes can be changed in QuarkXPress or InDesign.

### Tagged Text Documents

Many typesetting systems work with documents in which the elements (such as headings and subheadings) carry identifying tags. The tags contain information about document structure, but little or no information about the attributes associated with tags, so they say little about the document's final appearance. Instead, the final appearance depends on the attributes that the typesetter assigns to the tags.

Cindex comes equipped to make documents that are marked up using conventions derived from the Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML) standard for constructing markup languages. Notably, Cindex provides for marking up using XML (Extensible Markup Language). XML is designed to handle Unicode text and is syntactically strict. Cindex also provides for markup using conventions such as HTML, and those recommended by the Association of American Publishers (AAP) and the University of Chicago Press (UCP). You can define your own sets of tags to suit your needs.

Cindex provides for you to define your own sets of markup tags to suit your needs. The later section "Managing Markup Tags" on page 191 explains how to do this.

### Plain Text Documents

You may encounter rare situations in which you have to prepare an index for a document-processing system that does not require, or cannot interpret, informa-

tion about format tags and their attributes. In such cases you can save an index as a plain text document, with entries formatted as you would view them on the screen, but containing no information about fonts or type styles.

When you save a plain text document, Cindex does not break long entries into multiple runover lines, instead leaving it up to the application program that reads the document to decide where to break lines.

For maximum compatibility with other application programs, Cindex by default writes plain text documents using Mac Roman character encoding. This encoding cannot represent all Unicode characters, and may lose information. Cindex also can export plain text documents using UTF-8 (Unicode) encoding. To specify the encoding, choose **Preferences...** from the Edit menu, click the Formatted Export tab, then click your choice at **Encode Plain Text Documents**.

### *Saving the Index*

To save an index as formatted document, choose **Save To...** from the File menu.

From the **File Format** pop-up menu choose the type of document you want to make. The list shows all types Cindex can make. Choose from among the following types of *formatted* document. Other document types at the top of the list are discussed later.

- Plain Text
- Rich Text Format
- QuarkXPress
- InDesign
- XML Tagged Text
- SGML Tagged Text

When Cindex saves an XML or SGML document, it marks up the document using tags from a set you have previously specified. See the later section “Managing Markup Tags” on page 191 for more information.

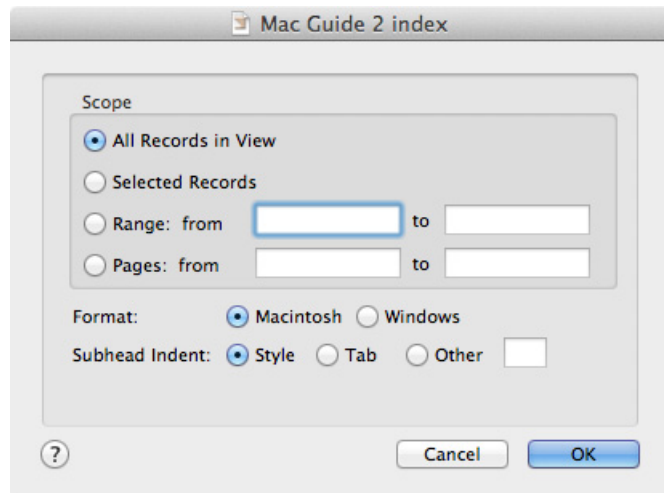
---

## Saving Formatted Indexes

Choose a document type, change the name if you wish, then click **OK** to save the document. Cindex automatically provides an appropriate filename extension when it saves the file. Cindex always saves a fully-formatted index, regardless of the view (draft or formatted) you are currently using. Cindex normally saves all of the index that is accessible in the current view (either all records, or a group). To include only a part of the index in the document, see the next section.

### Making a Document from Part of an Index

To save only a part of the formatted index in a document, click **Options** before you save the file. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 57.



**FIGURE 57.** Options for saving a formatted index

- To include only records you have selected, click **Selected Records** (this is dimmed if no records are selected).
- To include records that would fall on specified pages (for your current page setup) click **Pages**, and set at **from** and **to** the range of pages you want to include. Cindex will include only entries that would fall on the specified pages, were they being printed.
- To include a range of records, click **Range**, and specify the starting and ending records in the boxes beside **from** and **to**. You can specify a range of headings by entering leading text, e.g., Abr through Doc. You can also specify a range of record numbers (e.g.,

---

## Saving Formatted Indexes

55 through 79). To include entries under specified headings, you need only provide as much of the beginning text as will identify a record uniquely. You can specify leading text from a subheading by appending a semicolon to the heading text then adding subheading text. To specify a heading that begins with digits, place a \ before the first numeral; Cindex will otherwise interpret leading digits as a record number.

If you omit the first part of the range Cindex will include entries from the head of the index until it finds a record that matches the end of the range. If you omit the end part of the range, Cindex will include entries from the starting record until it reaches the foot of the index.

**NOTE:** Before including a range of records, Cindex checks that the last record in the range appears after the first. If the last record appears before the first, Cindex will display a warning message.

### Making Documents for Windows

Application programs that read and write text documents use a particular character to denote the end of a line of text. The character traditionally used by Mac programs is not the same as that used by programs that work under Windows. Some document-management systems can deal with text documents that use either convention, but others will accept documents of only one type—Mac or Windows.

When Cindex prepares text documents it normally uses the Mac convention, but it can use the Windows convention when necessary. To make a document that uses this convention, click **Windows** format.

**NOTE:** The format specified by this option deals with the *contents* of a document. It does not concern the physical format of the document file on a disk.

### Defining Subheading Indentation

When saving documents in Rich Text Format, or in the formats required by QuarkXPress or InDesign, Cindex can define leading indents to subheadings in one of several ways. You can choose to have indents defined as an attribute of the style attached to the subheading, by using ‘tab’ characters (one for each level of subheading), or by using a character of your choice (one for each level of subheading).

The method Cindex uses by default is determined by your Preferences settings. To set the default, choose **Preferences...** from the Edit menu, then click the Formatted Export tab. Click the appropriate button beside **Define Indent by**. When

you save the formatted index, you can override the default setting via **Save As...** options (Figure 57 on page 189).

**NOTE:** When styles are used to define the attributes of headings and subheadings, Cindex gives the styles the names you have assigned to different levels of heading (Main, Sub 1, etc.). For information on how to set these names see “Specifying Field Names, Sizes and Contents” on page 211.

## MANAGING MARKUP TAGS

---

Cindex provides ready-made sets of tags for marking-up XML documents and SGML documents. You can also design your own sets of tags to meet needs of particular publishers. Tag sets are available for markup when you choose **Save As...** from the File menu.

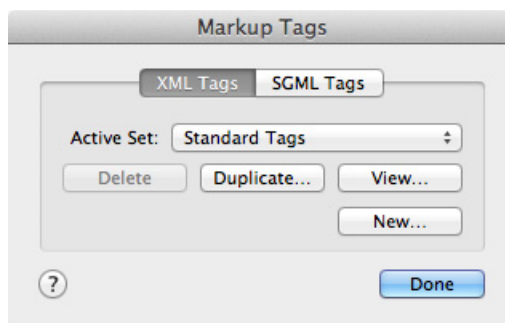
Tags identify various elements of the index, but do not describe its appearance:

- Structure tags define the overall structure of the index, and identify levels of heading and subheading, and page references and cross-references.
- Style tags identify parts of the index that should be displayed in a particular style (e.g., boldface).
- Font tags identify parts of the index that should be displayed in a particular font.
- Special tags identify miscellaneous entities.

To create, modify or review sets of tags choose **Markup Tags...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display a panel (Figure 58) through which you can define (or edit) tags that will denote various entities in the formatted index.

---

## Managing Markup Tags



**FIGURE 58.** Panel for managing tag sets

---

Click the XML tab to work with tag sets for XML markup; click the SGML tab to work with tag sets for less strict SGML markup. The pop-up menu on the tab shows all the available tag sets of the type you have chosen (XML or SGML). If the tag set is built-in to Cindex, you can view it (the right most button will be labeled **View...**) but you cannot edit or delete it. If the tag set is one you have created, you can edit or delete it.

**NOTE:** The tag set named in the pop-up menu on the XML tab or the SGML tab is the one that Cindex will use to mark up the formatted index when you choose **Save As...** from the File menu and select XML Tagged Text or SGML Tagged Text.

To view or edit an existing tag set, choose it from the pop-up menu then click **View...** or **Edit...**. To duplicate the tag set as the foundation for another, click **Duplicate...**; to start a new tag set, click **New...**. Cindex will ask you to name the tag set; the name you provide is the one you will use to invoke that tag set when you save indexes as tagged text files. To delete the tag set, click **Delete...**

### *XML Tags*

XML (Extensible Markup Language) is designed to handle Unicode text and is syntactically strict. When you export an index as an XML document, Cindex uses Unicode (UTF-8) to encode characters.



---

## Managing Markup Tags

When you open a set of XML tags, Cindex displays the panel shown in Figure 59.

The image shows a dialog box titled "Standard Tags". It has two tabs: "Structure Elements" (selected) and "Other Elements". The "Structure Elements" tab contains a grid of text input fields for defining XML tags. The fields are organized as follows:

Field	Value
Index:	index
Group:	group
Heading:	heading
Level 0:	level1
Level 1:	level2
Level 2:	level3
Level 3:	level4
Level 4:	level5
Level 5:	level6
Page ref:	locator
Level 6:	level7
Level 7:	level8
Level 8:	level9
Level 9:	level10
Level 10:	level11
Level 11:	level12
Level 12:	level13
Level 13:	level14
Level 14:	level15
Crossref:	xref

Below the grid, there are four checkboxes:

- ☐ Identify Level with Attribute
- ☒ Nest Subheadings
- ☐ Tag Individual References
- ☐ Suppress Leading and Trailing Text in References

At the bottom right, there are "Cancel" and "OK" buttons. A help icon (?) is located at the bottom left.

**FIGURE 59.** Panel for editing XML Tags

---

### Structure Tags

These identify the different structural elements of an index. Cindex provides tags to denote the start and end of the index (**Index**), tags to denote the start and end of an alphabetical group of records (**Group**), and tags to denote the start and end of the title to a group of records (**Heading**). Additional tags identify the beginning and end of each level of heading, the beginning and end of a page reference, and the beginning and end of a cross-reference.

---

## Managing Markup Tags

**NOTES:** Tag names should consist of plain ASCII characters. They should not contain accented letters or non-ASCII symbols.

A tag name may not contain any of these characters: < > & ' "

You define only start tags; Cindex automatically creates counterpart end tags.

You can configure particulars of the markup:

- Check **Identify Level with Attribute** to make Cindex add to each Level tag an attribute that identifies the heading level with a number (0 for Level 0, etc.).
- Check **Nest Subheadings** to make Cindex nest each level of subheading hierarchically under the level above.
- Check **Tag Individual References** to make Cindex apply the page reference tag or the cross-reference tag to each reference separately, rather than to the group of references in an entry.
- Check **Suppress Leading and Trailing Text in References** to make Cindex suppress the leading and trailing punctuation that it would normally place before and after page references and cross-references.

### Style Tags

Style tags identify type styles, such as italic and boldface. Cindex will embed style tags in the document where the index contains styled text. If you define a tag for **Bold Italic**, Cindex will use that whenever it encounters a part of an entry that carries both bold and italics styles. If the tag is empty, Cindex applies tags for the separate **Boldface** and **Italic** attributes.

### Font Tags

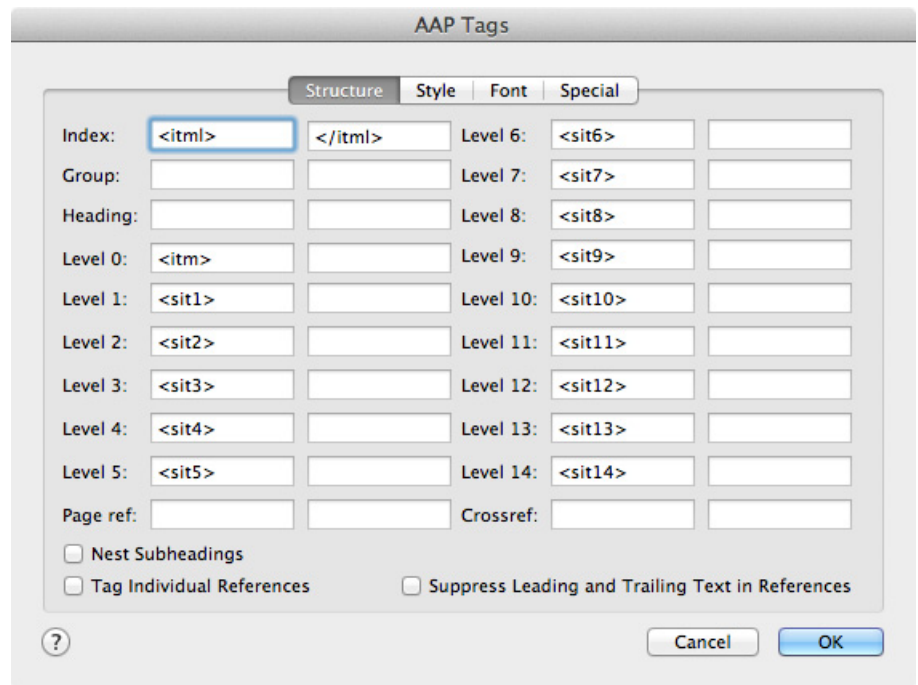
Font tags are used to denote changes of font. The first tag in the set denotes the standard font in which the index is displayed in the main document window. Use this tag to identify the concept of a default font, not a particular font. Cindex embeds a tag for this font only when the current font reverts to the default font after having been explicitly set to some other one.

When Cindex emits a tag to identify a font, it can emit the unadorned tag, or can add an attribute that identifies the font, either numerically, or by name. To make Cindex add the identifying attribute click **ID** (for numerical identifier) or **Name** (for the name of the font).

### SGML Tags

SGML is syntactically less strict than XML (see “XML Tags” on page 192), and you have more freedom to design custom tags.

To examine or modify the tags in a set, choose the set from the menu, then click **View...** or **Edit...** button. The name on the button will vary depending on whether you have chosen a built-in set of tags (e.g., AAP, HTML, or UCP) or a set of tags you have created: you can view but cannot edit a built-in set. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 60.



**FIGURE 60.** Panel for editing SGML Tags

---

### Structure Tags

These identify the different structural elements of an index. Cindex provides tags to denote the start and end of the index (**Index**), tags to denote the start and

---

## Managing Markup Tags

end of an alphabetical group of records (**Group**), and tags to denote the start and end of the title to a group of records (**Heading**). Additional tags identify the beginning and end of each level of heading, the beginning and end of a page reference, and the beginning and end of a cross-reference.

**NOTES:** Tag names should consist of plain ASCII characters. They should not contain accented letters or non-ASCII symbols.

A tag name may not contain any of these characters: & ' "

You can configure particulars of the markup:

- Check **Nest Subheadings** to make Cindex nest subheadings hierarchically under headings.
- Check **Tag Individual References** to make Cindex apply the page reference tag or the cross-reference tag to each reference separately, rather than to the group of references in an entry.
- Check **Suppress Leading and Trailing Text in References** to make Cindex suppress production of the leading and trailing punctuation that it would normally place before and after page references and cross-references.

### Style Tags

Style tags identify type styles, such as italic and boldface. Cindex will embed style tags in the document where the index contains styled text. Most markup systems require tags to define both the beginning and the end of a run of text in a particular style, but in some cases (for example, the AAP tags for superscript and subscript) there is no 'off' tag, and the 'on' tag is presumed to apply only to the immediately following character.

If you define a tag for **Bold Italic**, Cindex will use that whenever it encounters a part of an entry that carries both bold and italics styles. If the tag is empty, Cindex applies tags for the separate **Boldface** and **Italic** attributes.

### Font Tags

Font tags are used to denote changes of font. The first tag in the set denotes the standard font in which the index is displayed in the main document window. Use this tag to identify the concept of a default font, not a particular font. Cindex embeds a tag for this font only when the current font reverts to the default font after having been explicitly set to some other one.

---

## Managing Markup Tags

**NOTE:** the font that is represented by particular tags will vary from index to index, depending on your font usage. For more information about fonts see “Managing Fonts” on page 212.

### Special Tags

These tags represent miscellaneous entities that might need to be encoded in a marked-up document.

Tags usually begin and/or end with special characters that cannot themselves be used as ordinary characters (for example, < and > are used to open and close a tag in several tagging schemes). To use < or > as a literal character you would therefore have to define a tag to represent it. You can define up to eight tags that each represent a character that needs special treatment.

Under **Special Characters** enter in a left-hand cell a *single* ordinary character that needs to be represented by a tag when it is used literally in the index; in the right-hand cell enter the tag that will represent it. Cindex will embed this tag in the document whenever it encounters the special character in the index.

Under **Non-ASCII Characters** specify how Cindex should encode non-ASCII characters such as accented letters. Cindex encodes a character’s Unicode value numerically, in either decimal or hexadecimal notation, preceded by the text you specify for **Prefix** and succeeded by the text you specify for **Suffix**.

When producing a tagged index, Cindex treats each index entry as a paragraph, and terminates it with the standard character that represents the end of a paragraph. If your publisher requires a special end-of-paragraph tag to be emitted before the standard character, provide it at **End Paragraph**.

Cindex does not currently use the tag for **End Line**.

If your chosen index format specifies right-justified page-references, Cindex normally inserts a tab character in a tagged index to separate page references from their entry. If your tagging scheme requires the tab character to be represented by a tag, provide the text at **Tab**.

**Special Tagging  
Information**

At **Filename Extension** enter the characters (up to three) that Cindex will use as the filename extension that identifies the type of file made when this set of tags is used in markup. If this is blank Cindex will automatically supply the filename extension 'tag' when it makes the file.

---

## DIRECT TRANSFER OF INDEX ENTRIES

---

### *Copying and Dragging Formatted Entries*

When you are viewing the fully formatted index, you can select and copy (or drag) a collection of entries into any open document window of a word-processing program.

You can form a text-clipping by dragging the selected entries into any Finder window or to the desktop.

**NOTE:** You can make a clipping only when working with a fully formatted view.

Entries that you copy or drag carry style and format attributes, and will appear as they do when formatted by Cindex, providing the application program that receives the entries can display text in different fonts and styles.

### *Embedding Entries in Other Documents*

Cindex can directly embed index entries in Microsoft Word documents or documents from any other word-processor that uses the standard Rich Text Format (RTF) definitions of index entries. When you view an index in *draft* view, and drag (or copy) entries into a word-processor document, Cindex prepares them as RTF index entries for direct embedding in the word-processor document. The following notes describe the entries that Cindex prepares, and assume that you are broadly familiar with the way in which Microsoft Word and similar word-processing programs handle embedded index entries.

Entries embedded by Cindex have the following properties:

---

## Saving Index Records

1. They carry no page references (which will be supplied by Microsoft Word, or whatever word-processor you are using), but they do carry information about how the page references should be formatted (as boldface or italic, etc.—make these settings by choosing **Page References...** from the Document menu). For your own purposes you can place page references in the locator fields of records, but Cindex will not transfer them during embedding.
2. If the locator field contains the character you use to define a range of pages, either alone or as part of a real page reference, the embedded index entry will refer to a fictitious bookmark ("\$\$\$") that you should later replace with a real bookmark to indicate the range of text that should be represented by the page range in the index entry.
3. The embedded index entries carry any cross-references from the locator fields of records. These will be formatted in the style you have previously specified by choosing **Cross-References...** from the Document menu.
4. Each heading in the index entry carries a sort key that is used by Microsoft Word when it arranges the entries in the formatted index. Cindex constructs this sort key (which will not appear in the formatted index) according to the sort rules you have specified for the index. To take maximum advantage of Cindex's powerful alphabetizing capabilities, you should ensure that index entries are sorted as you would wish them to appear, *before* you embed them.

You can omit the sort key, and let the recipient program arrange entries by its own alphabetizing rules. To do this choose **Preferences...** (Cindex menu) and under the **Formatted Export** tab uncheck **Include Sorting Information when Embedding Entries**.

**NOTES:** Cindex formats embedded entries as hidden text. If you want to see the text that has been embedded be sure to set your word-processor to show hidden text.

Cindex formats entries for embedding only when the view is set for *draft* format. If the view is set to display a fully formatted index, Cindex will format entries in exactly the way they appear on the screen.

The Finder will not form a clipping from entries dragged in draft view.

---

## SAVING INDEX RECORDS

Cindex can save documents that contain just the contents of index records (without information about the style or layout of the index). To save index records, choose **Save To...** from the File menu then from the **File Format** pop-up menu choose one of the document formats described in the next section.

## *Document Formats*

### **XML Records**

Cindex can export index records as tagged entities in XML documents—plain text documents that can represent all Unicode characters. This is the recommended format for interchange with other software. Tags identify key elements of records, such as required last text fields, and locator fields, and the fonts and text styles used in records.

**NOTE:** Before saving XML Records, Cindex checks the index for records that contain mismatched < > or mismatched { } within a field. If any records contain mismatched < > or { }, Cindex will warn you and will display the records in a group. You will need to correct the mismatches before you can export the records.

### **Cindex Archive**

A Cindex Archive is a document in a private format that contains index records (including information about fonts and styles used in entries) but no information about how entries are to be sorted or laid out. Archives are readable by all versions of Cindex, but cannot represent all Unicode characters, so you should use them only when you must export records for use by Cindex version 2 (Mac or Windows).

**NOTE:** Index documents made by Cindex 3 (those with the .ucdx filename extension) are fully interchangeable between Cindex for Mac and Cindex for Windows.

### **Tab-Delimited Text**

Cindex can save the text of index records (the contents of the record fields, including the locator field) in a form that is widely used by database management programs. In this form all the fields of an index record lie on a single line, each field being separated from the next by a 'tab' character. When imported into a database program, each field in the index record will occupy a different field in the database.

The saved document contains only plain text; Cindex saves no font and style information, nor does it save any information about the layout of entries in the finished index. Cindex does not export text in { } used to control sorting, nor does it export any of the characters { } < > ~ \ unless they have been used literally in records.



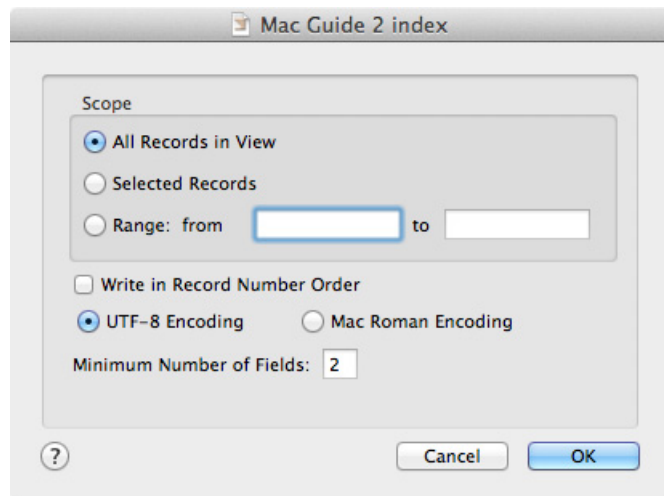
---

## Saving Index Records

Cindex by default uses UTF-8 (Unicode) character encoding. You can change the encoding to the Mac Roman character set via **Options...** when the **Save To...** panel is displayed.

### *Options for Saving Records*

Cindex lets you control aspects of how records are saved in documents. To review and set options, click **Options...** in the Save panel before you save the records. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 61 (options will vary with the particular document type you are saving).



**FIGURE 61.** Options for saving index records

---

### Saving Records from Part of an Index

To include only records you have selected, click **Selected Records** (this is dimmed if no records are selected).

To include a range of records in the view, specify the starting and ending records in the boxes beside **From** and **To**. You can specify a range of headings by entering leading text, e.g., Abr through Doc. You can also specify a range of record num-

---

## Saving Index Records

bers (e.g., 55 through 79). To include specified headings, you need only provide as much of the beginning text as will identify a record uniquely. You can specify leading text from a subheading by appending a semicolon to the heading text then adding subheading text. To specify a heading that begins with digits, place a \ before the first numeral; Cindex will otherwise interpret leading digits as a record number.

If you omit the start of the range Cindex will include entries from the head of the index until it finds a record that matches the end of the range. If you omit the end of the range, Cindex will include entries from the starting record until it reaches the foot of the index.

**NOTE:** Before including a range of records, Cindex checks that the last record in the range appears after the first. If the last record appears before the first, Cindex will display a warning message.

### Saving Deleted Records

When saving records, Cindex does not normally include deleted records. If you want these included in the document, check **Include Deleted Records**.

**NOTE:** When you save tab-delimited text, records contain no indication that they were deleted.

### Writing Order

When Cindex exports records, it can save them in the order in which they are displayed in the main view window, or in record number order. The default for XML records and archives is to write in record number order; the default for tab-delimited text is to write in sorted order. To specify the order, check or uncheck **Write in Record Number Order**.

### Character Encoding

When you save records as plain text Cindex can encode the characters using Unicode (UTF-8) or the Mac Roman character set. The default is UTF-8. To specify the encoding, choose **UTF-8 Encoding** or **Mac Roman Encoding**.

### Saving Records with a Minimum Number of Fields

When you save records as plain text Cindex can format them so that each contains at least a specified minimum number of fields. To set a minimum, type it at **Minimum Number of Fields**. If a record contains fewer than this number Cindex will write extra blank fields before the locator field. To specify no minimum, set 0.

## IMPORTING RECORDS

---

Cindex can import records in XML format (XML Records) and in archive format (Cindex Archive). Cindex can also import records in formats used by other programs:

- Plain text records, from a word-processing program, text editor, or database program.
- Records from the indexing programs SKY Index.
- Records from the index program Macrex.
- Records from the legacy program Cindex for DOS.

### *XML Records and Archives*

You can add the contents of an XML record document or an archive to an existing index, or you can create a new index from it. To add the contents of the archive to an existing index, choose **Import...** from the File menu, then select the document you want to import.

To create a new index from XML records or an archive, choose **Open...** from the File menu, then select the document by name from the displayed list.

**NOTE:** You can open an XML record document or an archive from the Finder (and start Cindex if necessary), by double-clicking the document's icon.

If no index with the name of the XML document or archive exists in the folder that contains it, Cindex will automatically create a new index with the name of the document and will import the records. If an index with the name of the document already exists, Cindex will present a panel through which you should choose a new name and location for the index to be created.

When Cindex opens an XML record document or archive, it checks to see that the fonts used by entries are available on your computer. If any font is unavailable, Cindex will ask you to designate a substitute. For more information on font management, see “Managing Fonts” on page 212

### *Other Import Formats*

#### Records Prepared on a Word-processor or Text Editor

Cindex can import index records from plain text documents that have the file-name extension ‘.txt’.

Records must conform to a simple specification: each record must be contained in a single paragraph terminated by a carriage-return character, or a line-feed character, or a carriage-return/line-feed character pair. The fields of the record must be separated from each other by a ‘tab’ character, and the locator field, which contains page references or cross-references, must be the last field. Such a record might look like this when displayed by a word-processor.

**Main heading      subheading      sub-subheading      1-3,15-17f**

Cindex assumes that the last field in any record is the locator field, so you should ensure that any record that has no locator (page reference or cross-reference) has a blank last field (i.e., one with nothing after the last tab character). You need not include empty fields between headings and the locator field: if you import records into an index in which records have a fixed number of fields, Cindex will automatically add empty fields when necessary.

If you are preparing records in a word-processor, you should make each record a separate paragraph. It will generally not matter that long records are wrapped on to two or more lines. Most word-processors provide an option to save a document as “plain text without line breaks.” You should save the records in this format.

Each record can contain up to fifteen tab-separated fields that hold the text of headings, plus a field that contains the locator.

When Cindex imports the records it checks whether the file starts with the special sequence of characters that indicate UTF-8 (Unicode) encoding. If Cindex finds the special characters, it imports the text as UTF-8; otherwise it assumes that text is encoded using the Mac Roman character set.

---

## Importing Records

When Cindex imports plain text records, it places a \ before any of the characters that have special functions ({ } < > ~ \) to ensure that they are treated as literal characters (e.g., { becomes \{ in the Cindex record).

**Records from SKY Index** Cindex can import records in the tab-delimited format used by Sky Index 7 (filename extension .sky7) or the comma-delimited quoted format used by Sky Index 6 (filename extension .txt—Cindex will detect this format by examining the contents of the document).

As Cindex imports records it captures bold, italic, underline, small caps, subscript and superscript styles (for Sky Index 7 it translates any strikeout text style to small caps). Cindex also translates the following attributes:

- Text to be ignored in sorting entries is enclosed in <...>.
- Text to be used in sorting entries but to be hidden in a formatted display is enclosed in {...}.
- 'Note' text is enclosed in <{...}>.

Sky Index records may use up to three alternative fonts (two for Sky 6), but the exported document contains no information about what these fonts are. If the records use alternative fonts, Cindex assumes the Sky Index default assignments:

- Alternative Font 1: Symbol
- Alternative Font 2: Courier New
- Alternative Font 3: Times New Roman

Characters in Alternative Font 1 (Symbol) are converted to their Unicode equivalents.

**Records from Macrex** Cindex can import records that have been saved by Macrex in its backup format (filename extension .mbk). These records contain some information about text styles, and information about how records should be sorted.

The backup format used by Macrex does not unambiguously distinguish locators and the body of an index entry: commas can separate different levels of headings and can separate locators from headings and from each other. When Cindex

---

## Importing Records

imports Macrex records, it resolves this ambiguity by looking for the first number after which there are no more letters, or only letters contained in braces { }. It places this number and everything that follows it in the locator field of the Cindex record.

When you have read your records into a Cindex index, you will be able to remove some of the notations required by Macrex:

- Cindex automatically ignores leading numerals in a record during alphabetizing, so you can remove any braces (which Cindex will have translated to < >) that you have used to hide numerals from Macrex.
- Macrex requires cross-references entered as subheadings to have the sequence ~zzz~ (which Cindex translates to {zzz}) immediately in front of them to ensure their proper placement. You should remove the {zzz}, because they will interfere with Cindex's capacity to recognize and sort cross-references.
- Cindex will automatically apply a chosen style to *See* and *See also*, so you can remove any styles applied to these words.

### Records from Cindex for DOS

You can import index records prepared using the legacy program Cindex for DOS and saved in its backup format (filename extension '.dat'). Records contain information about text styles and other special attributes of entries that control how they should be sorted.

## Reading Records

To import records choose **Import...** from the File menu. Cindex will display a panel through which you can choose the document. File types that Cindex does not recognize are dimmed.

When importing records made by SKY Index, Macrex, or Cindex for DOS, Cindex interprets information about text styles and other special attributes of entries. Cindex also translates characters to Unicode, where appropriate.

### Checking the Records

Before importing records, Cindex examines the document to check the following:

- Will new records fit within the current record size?

---

## Importing Records


- Does any record have more fields than Cindex can accommodate?
- Does any new record contain unacceptable characters?
- Is any record badly-formed (for example, does it lack a delimiter)?

If Cindex detects that some new records are longer than the current record size, it will ask if you want to increase the record size. Click **OK** to let Cindex enlarge the record size then import the records.

If Cindex detects that some new records require more levels of headings than are permitted in the index, it will ask if you want to increase the maximum number of heading levels. Click **OK** to let Cindex increase the permitted number of fields then import the records.

If Cindex finds any other problem it will warn you that the document contains bad records, and will provide you the option to read the document anyway, ignoring any bad records it contains. If you click **Cancel**, Cindex will stop the operation and display a window that provides information about what was wrong with the records it was trying to import. Each line in the window identifies an error, and shows the line number in the document being read and the type of problem.

Cindex accumulates information on up to 200 errors. If the document being read contains more than this number of errors, the most likely cause is that the document does not contain records, or that records are not in the format Cindex expects.

When Cindex reads records containing characters that might require translation it will alert you if any record contains unknown characters. When Cindex encounters a character it cannot translate, it substitutes the unknown character symbol (  ). Cindex marks any records that contains untranslatable characters; you can find these by choosing **Find** from the Edit menu.

---

## Importing Records



## *CHAPTER 12 Managing Index Documents*

---

This chapter describes some general tools that Cindex provides to help you manage and obtain information about Cindex documents. It also describes techniques for combining indexes to multiple volumes and for breaking indexes into parts for spinoff volumes.

### **SPECIFYING THE STRUCTURE OF RECORDS**

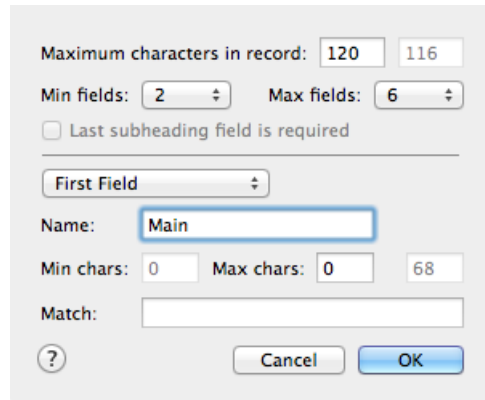
---

You can specify several aspects of the structure and organization of index records. For example, you can use any names you want for the different fields in records, and you can specify limits on the number and kinds of characters that can be contained in fields. Cindex provides default settings when you begin a new index, but you can change these at any time.

To change the structure of index records, choose **Record Structure...** from the Document menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 62.

---

## Specifying the Structure of Records



**FIGURE 62.** Setting Record Structure

---

### *Changing Record Size*

To change the maximum number of characters that a record can contain, set **Maximum Characters in Record**. You can enter any number up to 2000 (Cindex will round the number if it is odd), as long as it is not less than the number of characters in the longest record currently in the index. If the index contains any records Cindex displays that number in the box to the right.

### *Changing the Number of Fields*

A record must contain at least two fields (a heading field and a locator field), and may contain up to sixteen. By default, Cindex allows records to have variable numbers of fields up to five, and adds or removes fields automatically as you enter text in records. You can set minimum and maximum numbers of fields that records may contain.

To set the maximum number of fields, choose from the **Max** pop-up menu. (Cindex does not display numbers smaller than the number of fields in the record that contains the most fields.)

---

## Specifying the Structure of Records

To set the minimum number of fields, choose from the **Min** pop-up menu. If you change the minimum number for an index that contains records, Cindex will examine all records, adjusting the number of fields if necessary.

If you set the minimum and maximum to be the same, records will contain a fixed number of fields.

### Special Last Text Field

You can arrange that each record will contain a special subheading field that immediately precedes the locator field. Other subheadings will always be placed above this special field, which cannot be split or separated from the locator field. You might use this special field to store a comment or a URL, etc. To enable this attribute of the last text field, check **Last subheading field is required**. (This is dimmed unless you have specified that the records have at least 3 fields.) At your option Cindex can ignore the special last field when sorting records (see “Ignoring the Lowest-Level Subheading” on page 148) and can hide it when it displays a formatted index (see “Typography and Punctuation of Headings” on page 180).

When exporting a formatted index in a file, Cindex treats the special heading as though it were at the deepest level permitted in the index, and applies the formatting associated with that level.

## *Specifying Field Names, Sizes and Contents*

You can provide a name for each field in a record. Cindex displays field names in various pop-up menus and in the record window. You can also specify the maximum and minimum number of characters each field may contain, and a template that its contents must match before Cindex will save the record in the index.

Choose from the pop-up menu the field you want to work with (*First Field* for main heading, *Second Field* for subheading, etc. The last field is always reserved for locators.)

- To change the field name type a name in the **Name** box.

- To specify a minimum number of characters the field must contain, enter the number in the **Min chars** box. If you set 0, Cindex sets no minimum value. (You cannot set a minimum if the index already contains entries; in that case, Cindex displays the number of characters in the record with longest field.)
- To specify a maximum number of characters a field can contain, enter the number in the **Max chars** box. If you set 0, Cindex sets no maximum value. (The box to the right of this shows the number of characters in the longest field at that level in any record.)
- To specify a template that text in a field must match, enter at **Match** a pattern to define the template. See “Patterns” on page 229 for information on defining and using patterns. If you leave **Match** empty, Cindex accepts any text in a field.

### Using Field Templates

When you make or modify a record, and Cindex finds a mismatch between the contents of a field and a template you have defined for it, Cindex can ignore the error, warn you about it but accept it, or refuse to accept it. To specify how Cindex should behave, choose **Preferences...** from the Cindex menu, and click the Editing tab (Figure 8 on page 25). Make your setting in the box labeled **Mismatch to Template:**

- Click **Accept** to make Cindex accept mismatches.
- Click **Warn** to make Cindex will warn you on your first attempt to save a record with a field whose contents do not match its template; Cindex will always accept the record on your second attempt.
- Click **Forbid** to make Cindex refuse to save a record with a field whose contents do not match its template.

## MANAGING FONTS

---

Cindex provides tools to check which fonts are used in an index, and to make substitutions among fonts. You might need to make a substitution when you work on an index that has been moved from another computer, and uses fonts not available on yours.

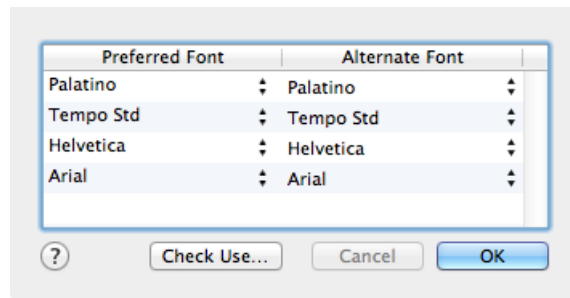
To cope with potentially missing fonts, Cindex maintains an alternative font for each (preferred) font you use in your index. Cindex always uses the preferred font when that exists on your computer. If you open an index that uses a missing preferred font, Cindex automatically substitutes the alternate font when display-

---

## Managing Fonts

ing entries. If you later move the index to a computer that provides the preferred font, Cindex will revert to using it. If you open an index in which a preferred font *and* its alternate are missing, Cindex will display a panel through which you must specify an alternate font from among those present on your computer. See “Substituting Fonts” on page 214 for more information on this.

To manage fonts choose **Fonts...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 63.



**FIGURE 63.** Managing Fonts

---

### *Checking Font Use*

The table shows the preferred fonts you have used, together with their alternates. The first font in the table is always present, and is the default font used for the standard display of entries. Additional fonts in the list are those you have used in records, or to display formatted headings, etc.

If you cease to use a font, Cindex does not immediately forget it. To make Cindex update its list to display only fonts that are currently in use, click **Check Use...** (this button is hidden if no fonts other than the default are used). If Cindex finds unused fonts, it will ask if you want to remove them from the list for the index.

### *Substituting Fonts*

You can change the preferred and alternate fonts Cindex uses in an index:

- To specify a preferred font, double-click a table cell in the **Preferred** column and type in the font name, or click the arrows to the right of the cell and choose from the drop-down list that Cindex presents. A preferred font need not be one available on the computer you are using. If you enter the name of a font that is not available on your computer, Cindex will use the alternate font, and will revert to the preferred font when that becomes available.
- To specify an alternate font, click the arrows in the appropriate table cell in the **Alternate** column then choose from the pop-up menu.

If you move an index to a computer that lacks any preferred font, Cindex will use the alternate font. If the alternate is not available, Cindex will display the font-substitution panel when you open the index, so that you can choose an alternate from among those available. A missing alternate font is indicated by a gap where its name would be displayed. To specify a new alternate font, choose from the **Alternate** pop-up menu in the appropriate table cell.

When Cindex includes font information in a formatted document, it includes information about preferred fonts, not alternate fonts.

## SPECIFYING ATTRIBUTES OF NEW INDEXES

---

### *Modifying Cindex Default Settings*

When you create a new index, Cindex provides it with standard default settings for record structure and reference syntax, and for sorting and formatting entries. These settings have initial values assigned when Cindex is first installed, but you can change them so that any new index you create starts with settings you prefer.

To change the default settings Cindex will bestow on new indexes it creates, close all open indexes and choose from the appropriate menu the item whose default values you want to set. You can set default values for all items in the Document

---

## Getting Information About Indexes

menu, and for **Sort...** in the Tools menu. (Items for which you cannot change default settings are dimmed). The settings you make when no indexes are open become the default ones that Cindex applies to new indexes.

To restore the default settings to their original installed values, quit Cindex and restart it while holding down the SHIFT key.

**NOTE:** When you restart Cindex with the SHIFT key held down, Cindex restores *all* its settings to their original values (including those of items you set by choosing **Preferences** from the Cindex menu).

### *Using Templates*

When Cindex creates a new index it can use the record structure and other standard settings (for sorting and formatting entries) from an existing index. To use one index as a model for another, you must first create a template. You can make a template in two ways:

- In the Finder, select the index you want to use as a template, then choose **Get Info** from the File menu. The Finder will open a window that displays information about the document. To make stationery from it, check **Stationery Pad**. Close the window when you are done.
- When Cindex is active, you can make a template that is based on the active index. Choose **Save To...** from the File menu, then select **Template** from the pop-up menu. When you save an index as a template, Cindex saves information about the structure of records, and the other settings that belong to the active index, but saves no records.

When you open a template with Cindex (through **Open...** from the File menu), Cindex will ask you to provide a name for a new index, and will then create it index with the settings contained in the template.

When you open a template through the Finder, the Finder will create a copy of the file and then open it through Cindex.

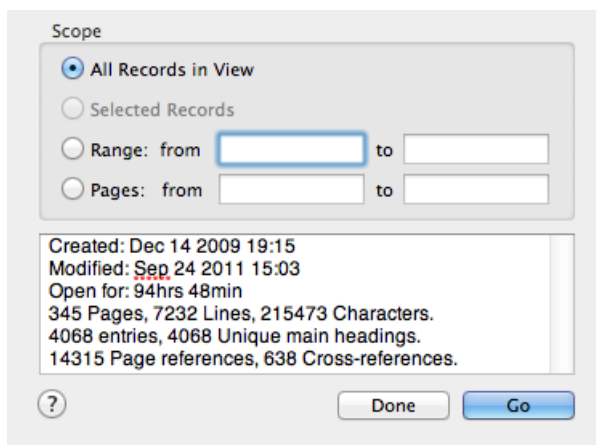
## GETTING INFORMATION ABOUT INDEXES

---

Cindex can provide several analyses of indexes and the entries they contain.

### *Obtaining General Statistics*

To obtain basic information about the index document, such as the times of its creation and modification, and the time you have spent working on it, together with information about the number of formatted entries and the pages they occupy, choose **Index Statistics...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 64.



**FIGURE 64.** Index Statistics

---

Initially, the panel shows:

- The date and time of index creation.
- The date and time at which the index was last modified.
- The accumulated time the document has been open for work.

To obtain further information. Click **Go**. Cindex will examine the index then display the following information:

- The number of printed pages, lines and characters occupied by the index.
- The number of index entries (this might not be the same as the number of records in the index), and the number of unique main headings.



---

## Getting Information About Indexes

- The number of characters in the formatted index.

If you are viewing a fully formatted index (but not if you are viewing a draft index) Cindex will also show:

- The number of page references.
- The number of cross-references.

### Controlling the Scope of the Examination

Normally, Cindex examines all records that are accessible in the current view. Cindex can further limit the examination of the index.

**NOTE:** Your settings of **Hide by Attribute...** (View menu) determine whether labeled records are accessible in the formatted view.

To examine records you have selected, click **Selected Records** (this is dimmed if no records are selected).

To examine a range of records in the view, click **Range** and specify the starting and ending records in **From** and **To**. You can specify a range of headings by entering leading text, e.g., *Abr* through *Doc*. You can also specify a range of record numbers (e.g., 55 through 79) within which Cindex should confine the search. To look among specified headings, you need only provide as much of the beginning text as will identify a record uniquely. You can specify leading text from a subheading by appending a semicolon to the heading text then adding subheading text. To specify a heading that begins with digits, place a \ before the first digit; Cindex will otherwise interpret leading digits as a record number.

If you omit the first part of the range Cindex will start at the first record in the view and stop at the record at the end of the range. If you omit the second part of the range, Cindex will start at the specified record and continue until it reaches the last record.

**NOTE:** Before beginning the examination Cindex checks that the last record in the range appears after the first. If the last record appears before the first, Cindex will display a warning message.

To examine records that would fall on specified pages (for your current page setup) click **Pages**, and set at **From** and **To** the range of pages you want to examine.

---

## Getting Information About Indexes

Cindex will report only on entries that would fall on the specified pages, were they being printed.

### *Counting Records*

To learn about the distribution of records under particular letters of the alphabet or under different headings, and about the numbers of fields and characters they contain, choose **Count Records...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 65.

Scope

☒ All Records in View  
☐ Selected Records  
☐ Range: From  to

Containing Locators

From:  to

Only Among

☐ Modified Records  
☐ Deleted Records  
☐ Marked Records  
☐ Generated Records  
☐ Labeled Records

7946 records:  
Modified: 0; Deleted: 0; Marked: 0; Generated: 0; Labeled: [0 0 0 0 0 0]  
Deepest: 2 levels (#6431); Longest: 124 chars (#6064)

A	575	B	345	C	862	D	253	E	450	F	244	G	334
H	244	I	389	J	152	K	167	L	313	M	562	N	280
O	101	P	529	Q	30	R	373	S	736	T	356	U	104

? Done Count

**FIGURE 65.** Counting index records

---

Click **Count** to obtain a count of the number of main headings that begin with each letter of the alphabet (more properly, the first character on which records are sorted). Cindex will display:

- The number of records examined.

---

## Expanding Index Entries

### Specifying Records to be Counted

- The numbers of modified, deleted, marked, generated and labeled records (a single record might fall in more than one category). Records carrying different labels are distinguished in the count.
- The number of heading levels in the deepest record.
- The number of characters in the longest record.
- A table showing the numbers of records sorted under each leading character.

Normally, Cindex counts all records that are accessible in the current view. To confine the count to selected records or to a specified range of headings make the appropriate setting under **Scope**. The scope options are the same as those available when you use **Find...** or **Replace...**, and are described fully in “Scope of Operations” on page 249.

**NOTE:** Your settings of **Hide by Attribute...** (View menu) determine whether labeled records are accessible in the formatted view.

To confine the count to records that contain references falling within a certain range, define the range in the box **Containing Locators**. The locators can be simple page references (e.g., 55 and 66) or compound references (e.g., 1997:5a:xv and 1997:7b:xiv). You must supply both starting and ending locators (or none at all). If your locators are simple page numbers, Cindex will display the average number of records per indexed page when it makes the count.

To confine the examination to records with certain attributes (and within the range defined by **Scope**), check the appropriate attributes (**Modified**, **Deleted**, **Marked**, **Generated** or **Labeled**).

## EXPANDING INDEX ENTRIES

---

A Cindex record often contains several page references or cross-references. This usually makes it easier to work with entries, and helps keep down the size of index documents. Sometimes you might need to work with groups of records that refer to different sets of pages (for example, if chapters are moved or repaginated after you have prepared an index), and then it is often easier to deal with records that each contain only a single page reference or cross-reference.

Cindex can unpack references from records that contain more than one, and generate new records as necessary, so that none in your index contain more than one page reference or cross-reference. To expand an index in this way, choose **Expand** from the Tools menu. Before you can do this the main view must show All Records; you cannot expand an index when viewing new records, or a group.

**NOTES:** When Cindex expands references, it normally recognizes successive page references separated with a comma, and successive cross-references separated with a semicolon. If you have used different characters to separate these two kinds of references, you should ensure that Cindex knows what they are. “Specifying the Structure of Page References” on page 124 explains how to specify the page reference separator; “Specifying the Structure of Cross-References” on page 106 explains how to specify the cross-reference separator.

When Cindex expands an index it invalidates any record groups that belong to the index. “Rebuilding Groups” on page 224 explains how you can restore invalid groups.

---

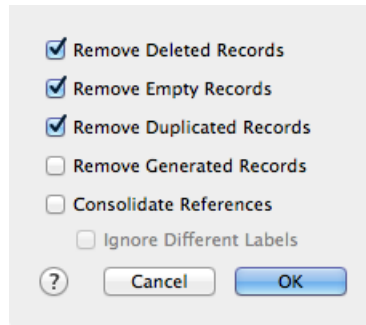
## COMPRESSING INDEX ENTRIES

While working on an index you might create records that are exact duplicates of others, and you might create some empty records. You will also probably have deleted some records. Cindex never displays or prints any of the above kinds of records in a fully formatted view, so you can safely leave them in the index, but if you want to reduce the size of your index you can remove them permanently.

To remove records permanently, choose **Compress...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 66. **Compress...** is available only when the view is set to show All Records. It is dimmed if you are viewing new records, or a group.

---

## Compressing Index Entries



**FIGURE 66.** Compressing an index

---

### *Removing Unnecessary Records from the Index*

To remove records that contain no text check **Remove Empty Records**.

To remove deleted records check **Remove Deleted Records**.

To remove exact duplicates check **Remove Duplicated Records**. Cindex cannot remove duplicated records if the index is sorted in page number order, in which case this item is dimmed.

Click **OK** to remove the chosen records.

**NOTES:** When Cindex removes records from an index it renumbers those that remain. You should not rely on a record having the same number before and after you compress an index.

Cindex uses a record's number to keep track of its membership in any group. Because record numbers often change when you compress an index, Cindex invalidates all the groups. For information on reconstructing invalid groups, see "Managing Groups" on page 223.

### *Removing Generated Records*

Cindex can automatically generate cross-references for an index (see “Generating Cross-References Automatically” on page 113 for more information about these), and can automatically convert cross-references to fully-qualified entries (see “Converting Cross-References to Fully-Qualified Entries” on page 111). When Cindex does either of these things, it creates new records, and keeps track of them.

To remove records that contain automatically-generated cross-references check **Remove Generated Records**.

**NOTE:** If you have edited a record that contains an automatically generated reference, Cindex no longer considers it to be a generated record.

### *Consolidating References from Multiple Records*

As you build an index you might create several records that are identical except for their page references or cross-references. This is of no real consequence, because Cindex always aggregates references when it displays or prints a fully-formatted index, but the index document might be larger than it needs to be. To simplify the organization of records, Cindex can merge the identical entries, putting all their page references and cross-references into as few records as possible, and deleting any unnecessary records that result.

To consolidate references from records that have identical headings, and to remove records that are no longer needed, check **Consolidate References**. Cindex will not normally consolidate references from records that carry different labels. To consolidate regardless of record labels, check **Ignore different Labels**. When Cindex consolidates across records with different labels, the resulting record carries the label (if any) of the first of the set.

**NOTES:** Cindex cannot consolidate references and remove duplicated records if the index is sorted in page number order. If the index is sorted by page number, **Consolidate References** is dimmed.

When Cindex consolidates references, it normally separates successive page references with a comma, and successive cross-references with a semicolon. If you have used differ-

---

## Managing Groups

ent characters to separate these two kinds of references, you should ensure that Cindex knows what they are. See “Specifying the Structure of Page References” on page 124, and “Specifying the Structure of Cross-References” on page 106.

When you click **OK**, Cindex will accumulate references where it can. If there are more references than can be placed in a single record, Cindex will retain as many records as it needs.

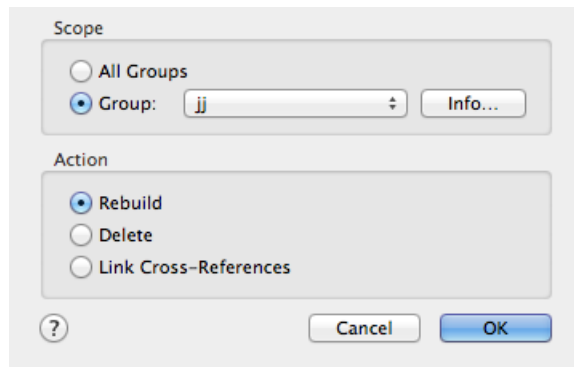
## MANAGING GROUPS

---

Cindex provides several tools for managing groups of records you have defined. You can get information about how and when they were formed, you can delete them, or you can rebuild them by applying the search criteria used in their formation.

You may need to rebuild groups after using either of the tools **Expand...** or **Compress...** Both of these operations invalidate existing groups in an index.

To manage groups, choose **Groups...** from the Tools menu. Cindex will display the panel shown in Figure 67.



**FIGURE 67.** Managing Groups

---

### *Getting Information About Groups*

When Cindex makes a group, it saves information about the group, including:

- The number of records in the group.
- The time the group was created.
- How the group was made (from a selection or from search results). If the group was made from search results, Cindex saves information about the search.
- Whether the group has been changed since it was created.
- How the group is sorted.

To view a digest of this information, click **Info...** Cindex will display a panel containing information about the group.

### *Rebuilding Groups*

Cindex knows how a group was made originally (e.g., from a search, or from a selection of records). If a group was made from a search, Cindex can rebuild it using the original search criteria.

To rebuild one or all groups that belong to an index choose from the **Group** pop-up menu the name of the group you want to rebuild, (or click **All Groups** to rebuild all of them), then click **Rebuild**.

**NOTE:** Although Cindex applies the correct search criteria when rebuilding a group, it does not keep information about the records it should examine. For example, it does not know if a group to rebuild was formed by a search of the whole index, or a search of another group.

### *Removing Groups*

To remove a group choose the group you want to delete from the **Group** pop-up menu (or click **All Groups** if you want to remove all of them), then click **Delete**.



When Cindex removes a group it deletes only the information it has stored about which records belong to the group; Cindex does nothing to the records themselves.

### *Linking Cross-References*

Cindex can find and add to a group all the records that make cross-references to records already in the group. You might want this when a work you have indexed is broken into multiple volumes, and you want to find all the records that belong to each volume. (For more information on breaking indexes see “Breaking an Index into Parts” on page 227).

To add to an existing group all the records containing cross-references to records already in it, choose the group from the **Group** pop-up menu (or click **All Groups** to link cross-references for all of them), then click **Link Cross-References** (this is dimmed if the index is not sorted alphabetically). When you click **OK** Cindex will examine all records in the index, and will add to the group any record that contains a cross-reference to a record already in the group.

## CUMULATING AND COMBINING INDEXES

---

Indexes to serial publications are often cumulated at intervals, and indexes to individual volumes in a multi-part series are often combined into a single master index. Cindex copes efficiently with these kinds of tasks, relieving you of most of the work. The following sections explain how to proceed.

### *Managing Locators in Cumulations*

Locators in cumulated indexes will often need to be adapted from their forms in the component indexes. Usually you will need to do one of two things:

- If only the *indexes* to volumes are being cumulated, you will probably need to attach some kind of volume identifier to page references from each component volume.
- If the *contents* of volumes are being combined to make an integrated volume, pages will probably be renumbered, and you will need to adjust the page references in the index entries.

Cindex provides different means for modifying locators, depending on the kind of change you need to make. It is easiest to change locators *before* adding records to the combined index.

### Adding Volume Numbers

If you are combining several indexes and need to add volume numbers to the page references in the component indexes, follow the directions given in “Adding Volume Numbers to Page References” on page 240.

### Adjusting Page Numbers

If a publisher combines the contents of several volumes into a single one with a uniform run of page numbers, the page references for entries in the indexes to component volumes will need to be adjusted. You can use **Alter References...** from the Tools menu to adjust page references in the component indexes before adding records to the combined index. For information on how to do this see “Adjusting References” on page 86.

## *Building the Master Index*

After having made any necessary adjustments to page numbers, follow these steps to build a master index:

1. Create a new index that will contain the cumulated or combined components. Do not be concerned about the record size; Cindex will re-size the index if necessary when it adds records to it.
2. Open a component index that you want to include in the master index.
3. Select the records you want to include in the master index (choose **Select All** from the Edit menu if you want to include all records).
4. Drag the records to the main window of the master index.  
Alternatively, copy the records (choose **Copy** from the Edit menu), activate the master index (click its main window, or choose it by name from the Window menu), then paste the records (choose **Paste** from the Edit menu).
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 for each component index.

## BREAKING AN INDEX INTO PARTS

---

Single volume works are sometimes broken into multiple (spinoff) volumes, each with its own index. In such cases one wants to extract from the index to the single volume the entries that will belong to the separate volumes (adjusting page references if the text pages have been renumbered).

Follow these steps to break out the appropriate records into separate indexes:

1. Ensure that each record contains a single locator. If any records contain more than one page reference, choose **Expand** from the Tools menu. For more information see “Expanding Index Entries” on page 219.
2. Find page references that belong to each spinoff volume. With the view set to show all records, choose **Find** from the Edit menu. In the Find window set the pop-up menu under the search text to confine the search to the locator field (usually named *Page* field), and check **Evaluate References**. Enter as search text the range of page numbers that are to be included in the spinoff volume. (For more information see “Searching for Locators” on page 73.) Click **Find All** to locate all records that refer to these pages. Cindex will make a temporary group that holds the results of the search.
3. Choose **Save Group...** from the Edit menu to create a permanent group from the results of the search. Use a name that helps you identify the spinoff volume.
4. Choose **Groups...** from the Tools menu, then in the panel Cindex displays click **Link Cross-References** (ensure that the list shows the name of the group you have just made). When you click **OK** Cindex will examine all records in the index, and will add to the group any record that contains a cross-reference to a record already in the group.
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 for each set of pages that will constitute a different spinoff volume.

### *Working with Spinoff Indexes*

The pages in a spinoff volume are usually numbered differently from their counterparts in the original volume (each spinoff volume is likely to have its first page numbered 1). You will therefore probably need to adjust the page references in the group of records that represent each component index.

If you are confident that no records in the parent index appear in more than one of the groups (a record might appear in more than one group if the spinoff vol-

umes have some content in common), you can make the required page number adjustments on each group of records separately. However, it is generally advisable to make a completely new index for the records in each group. To do this:

1. Activate the main view window for the parent index.
2. Set the view to show the group for a spinoff index (choose the group from the View menu).
3. Create a new index for the group. Do not be concerned about setting the right record size—Cindex will re-size the index if necessary when it adds records to it.
4. Select the records in the group in the parent index (choose **Select All** from the Edit menu).
5. Drag the records to the main window of the spinoff index. Alternatively, copy the records from the parent index (choose **Copy** from the Edit menu) then paste the records into the spinoff index (choose **Paste** from the Edit menu).
6. Repeat steps 1 through 5 for each group that contains records for a spinoff index.

### Adjusting Page References

For each new spinoff index, adjust the page references to take account of the changed page numbers. “Adjusting References” on page 86 explains how to do this.

## CHAPTER 13 *Patterns*

---

You might sometimes need to search for (or replace) a set of characters that meets some general specification, such as “any numeral at the beginning of a line followed by the letter X,” or “any word beginning with an uppercase letter and ending in ‘ing,’” or “any four-digit number beginning with 19 and enclosed in parentheses.” When you use **Find...** and **Replace...** you can specify a *pattern* that describes a class of characters, words or phrases that Cindex should look for (or replace) in the index.

You can also use patterns with **Alter References...** to specify a class of page references (for example, those in a particular volume) to which you want to restrict page reference adjustments.

You can also use patterns to define templates to which headings in records must conform when you enter them.

Patterns are sometimes called *regular expressions*. They provide an extraordinarily powerful tool for inspecting and modifying entries in your index. This chapter explains how to form and use them.

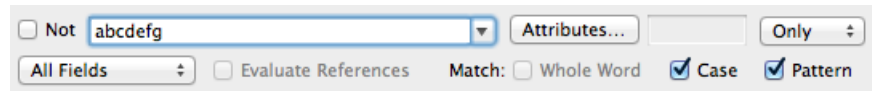
### FORMING PATTERNS

---

For the most part patterns consist of ordinary characters for which Cindex searches. For example, if you use **Find** to search for the following sequence of characters as a pattern (to make Cindex treat the characters as a pattern you must check **Pattern** in the Find window):

---

## Forming Patterns



The screenshot shows a search interface with a text input field containing 'abcdefg'. To the left of the input is a checkbox labeled 'Not'. To the right is a button labeled 'Attributes...'. Further right is a dropdown menu labeled 'Only'. Below the input field is a dropdown menu labeled 'All Fields'. To the right of this is a checkbox labeled 'Evaluate References'. Further right is a 'Match:' section with three options: 'Whole Word' (unchecked), 'Case' (checked), and 'Pattern' (checked).

Cindex will display the first record that contains the sequence of letters “abcdefg.” The power of patterns derives from their use of special characters. The following sections introduce these special characters and explain how to use them.

### *. (period)*

The `.` stands for any character. If you use `.` in a pattern Cindex will find a match to any character. For example, to find records that contain sequences of three letters that begin with ‘c’ and end with ‘t’ you would use the pattern

**c.t**

You can use `.` as often as you like and in combination with other special characters described below.

### *[ : ] (character set)*

Within `[ : ]` you specify a character that is a member of a *set*. For example, `[ :letter:]` identifies the set of letters. If you specified the pattern

**[ :letter:]**

Cindex would find a match to any letter (in any script). To specify a character that is *not* a member of the set, place a `^` immediately after the opening square bracket, e.g.

**[ ^:letter:]**

Cindex recognizes many kinds of character sets, such as currency symbols, diacritical marks, and classes of punctuation. Table 3 identifies some of those.

**TABLE 3.** Character Sets Recognized in Patterns

<b>Name</b>	<b>Short Name</b>	<b>Character Set</b>
[ :ascii:]	[ :ascii:]	ASCII character
[ :letter:]	[ :l:]	Any letter (in any script)
[ :lowercase letter:]	[ :ll:]	Lowercase letter
[ :uppercase letter:]	[ :lu:]	Uppercase letter
[ :mark:]	[ :m:]	Diacritical mark or character combined with a letter
[ :separator:]	[ :z:]	Any space or invisible separator
[ :symbol:]	[ :s:]	Any symbol, including, math, currency, dingbats, etc.
[ :math symbol:]	[ :sm:]	Math symbol
[ :currency symbol:]	[ :sc:]	Currency symbol
[ :other symbol:]	[ :so:]	Other symbol (none of the above)
[ :number:]	[ :n:]	Numeric character in any script
[ :decimal digit number:]	[ :nd:]	Decimal digit (0 through 9)
[ :punctuation:]	[ :p:]	Punctuation
[ :dash punctuation:]	[ :pd:]	Any kind of hyphen or dash
[ :open punctuation:]	[ :ps:]	Any kind of opening bracket
[ :close punctuation:]	[ :pe:]	Any kind of closing bracket
[ :initial punctuation:]	[ :pi:]	Any kind of opening quote
[ :final punctuation:]	[ :pf:]	Any kind of closing quote
[ :connector punctuation:]	[ :pc:]	Any character that connects words

You can use the full name or the short name when specifying a set. The collection of character sets that Cindex recognizes corresponds to the Unicode Character Categories (see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Character\\_property\\_\(Unicode\)#General\\_Category](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Character_property_(Unicode)#General_Category)).

Cindex provides a set of ready-made patterns to help you search for character classes. See “Using Patterns with Find” on page 239.

Cindex also recognizes many script sets, such as `[:arabic:]`, `[:devanagari:]`, `[:cyrillic:]`, `[:greek:]`, `[:han:]`, `[:hangul:]`, `[:hebrew:]`, `[:katakana:]`, `[:latin:]`. For a complete list see <http://www.unicode.org/charts/#scripts>.

You can form new character sets by combining existing ones.

- To make a set that is the union of other sets, just concatenate them:  
`[:letter:][:symbol:]` (or `[:l:][:s:]`) is the set of all letters and all symbols.
- To make a set that is the difference of two sets, connect them with -  
`[:letter:]-[:latin:]` is the set of all letters from scripts other than latin.
- To make a set that is the intersection of two sets (the set of characters common to both), connect them with & :  
`[:letter:]&[^:han:]` is the set of all letters that are not Han.

### `[ ]` (*square brackets*)

If you enclose a set of characters in square brackets, Cindex will find a match to any one of the characters in the brackets. The pattern below will find records that contain any of the following sequences: 1985, 1986 or 1987.

**198[567]**

You may include character sets as elements within square brackets, e.g.

**[[:digit:]]abc]**

will find any digit followed by the letter 'a' or 'b' or 'c'.

When you use `[ ]` to search for any of a contiguous range of characters, you need not specify every character explicitly: you can specify just the first and the last, separating them with a hyphen. Thus `[a-z]` will match any lowercase letter, and `[0-9]` will match any single numeral. When you use the - (hyphen) to specify an inclusive range of characters, Cindex understands the range to include all characters having Unicode values between the lowest and the highest. When you want



---

## Forming Patterns

any character from a set it is generally better to use a named set (e.g., `[[:lowercase letter:]]`) than to enumerate the characters.

You can search for a character that is *not* in the set by placing a `^` (caret or circumflex) immediately after the opening square bracket. To find any number that is not followed by a space, you could use the following pattern:

`[0-9]+[^0-9 ]`

(See below for an explanation of `+`.) The caret is special only if it appears as the first character inside the brackets. The `.` and some other special characters described below lose their significance (and are treated as ordinary characters) when they are included in a set enclosed by `[ ]`. To search for one of a set of characters that includes `]` (the closing square bracket), you must place that bracket first in the sequence, immediately after the opening square bracket or after any initial `^`. The `-` (hyphen) loses its special significance when it occurs as the first character (or after any initial `^`) or the last character inside square brackets.

### `()` (*parentheses*)

When you form a pattern you can group elements of it by enclosing them in parentheses `()`. Such a group is called a *subpattern*. When finding a match to the whole pattern Cindex keeps track of the text matched by any subpattern, and allows you to use that text as part of what must be matched later in the pattern.

Suppose you wanted to find all records in which you had typed a word twice in succession. The solution is to match the first occurrence of the word with a subpattern and check whether the text matched by this subpattern appears a second time after an intervening space. You can do this by using the following pattern:

`(\b[!:]++) \1`

The pattern can be read as “any sequence of one or more letters starting on a word boundary, followed by a space, then by a second occurrence of the same sequence of letters.” It can be dissected as follows:

`\b` specifies that the following element occurs at the start of a word (see later discussion of `\`).

`[l:]` specifies any continuous sequence of letters.

`+` specifies one or more occurrences of the preceding element (see later discussion of `+`).

`( )` enclosing `[l:]` marks it as a subpattern.

`\1` denotes whatever text was matched by the first defined subpattern.

### Properties of Subpatterns

You can define up to nine subpatterns in a single pattern, so to refer to text matched by a particular subpattern you must identify the one you want. Cindex provides a simple convention for this. It numbers subpatterns implicitly from left to right, by their order of appearance in the pattern. To refer to a subpattern, use `\` followed by a numeral in the range 1-9. For example, `\1` denotes the text matched by the first subpattern, `\7` the text matched by the seventh.

You can nest subpatterns, i.e., you can include one subpattern inside another. When you do this the outer patterns have lower numbers.

If you use `\N` where *N* refers to a subpattern that has not yet been defined, Cindex will display a warning message.

Parentheses have no special significance if they appear within `[ ]`.

A later section, “Including Parts of Matched Text in the Replacement” on page 242, explains how you can use subpatterns with **Replace** to rearrange text in records.

### *\* (asterisk)*

The `*` stands for any number of occurrences (*including none*) of the preceding element. This can be a character matched by a set enclosed in `[ ]`, e.g., `[0-9]*`, or a

character from a set, e.g., `[a-l]*`, or a subpattern, e.g. `cat(s)*`. You can refer to a previously defined subpattern with an expression of the form `\N*`, where *N* is a digit in the range 1–9. This means “any number of occurrences (including none) of what was matched by subpattern *N*.” To find anything between opening and closing parentheses, search for.

`\(.*\)`

The `*` finds the maximum possible number of matching occurrences of the preceding element.

The `*` has no special significance if it is the first character in a pattern or if it appears in a set of characters contained within `[ ]`.

`+` (*plus*)

The `+` stands for one or more occurrences of the preceding matched element. This element can be a character matched by a set enclosed in `[ ]`, or one from a character set, such as `[a-l]`, or a subpattern.

The `+` finds the maximum possible number of matching occurrences of the preceding element.

The `+` has no special significance if it is the first character in a pattern or if it appears in a set of characters contained within `[ ]`.

`?` (*question mark*)

The `?` stands for zero or one occurrence the preceding matched element. This element can be a character matched by a set enclosed in `[ ]`, or one from a character set, such as `[a-l]`, or a subpattern.

The `?` finds the maximum possible number of matching occurrences of the preceding element.

---

## Forming Patterns

The `?` has an additional special role when it follows `*` or `+`. or `?` It is used to ensure that the matched text is the least that satisfies the pattern. For example, to find single parenthetical phrase in a record field that might contain multiple phrases in parentheses, use this pattern:

`\(. *?\)`

The `?` has no special significance if it is the first character in a pattern or if it appears in a set of characters contained within `[ ]`.

### *`{N,N}` (number or numbers in braces)*

A number *N* in braces specifies how many occurrences of the preceding element are to be matched. This can be a character matched by a set enclosed in `[ ]`, or one from a character set., such as `[!:]`, or a subpattern For example, to find any 5-digit number search for.

`[0-9]{5}`

The braces may contain two numbers separated by a comma, where the first specifies the minimum number of matches required, and the second specifies the maximum number of matches. Thus

`[0-9]{3,5}`

finds any number that has 3, 4 or 5 digits. If the second number is omitted, e.g., `{3,}` the match must satisfy at least the minimum. Cindex normally seeks the greatest number of matches that satisfy the pattern. If `?` follows the braces, as in `{3,5}?` or `{3,}?` Cindex will seek the smallest number of matches that satisfy the pattern.

### | (*vertical bar*)

The | separates alternative patterns to match. To find a match to "cat" or "dog," search for

**cat|dog**

You can specify multiple alternative matches (e.g., cat|dog|canary|snake). The | causes everything to its left (as far as a preceding |) to be treated as one pattern to match, and everything to its right (as far as a succeeding |) as an alternative pattern to match. You can limit the leftward and rightward scope of the | within a larger pattern by enclosing it and its operands in (), thus: (cat|dog).

The | has no special significance if it is the first character in a pattern or if it appears in a set of characters contained within [].

### ^ (*caret*)

If the caret (circumflex) is the *first* character in a pattern, Cindex will find a match to the remainder of the pattern only if the match can be made at the start of a field. The pattern

**^between**

will make Cindex find records that contain the word "between" at the beginning of a field; it will ignore occurrences of "between" elsewhere in a record. Similarly

**^[:pi:].[:pi:]**

will find records in which any field begins with any single character enclosed in any kind of quotation marks.

The ^ is not interpreted literally as a character; it merely indicates that any match to the remainder of the pattern must appear at the beginning of a field. This use

of the caret is distinct from its special function as the first character in a series enclosed in [ ]. The caret has no special significance (and is interpreted as an ordinary character) if it occurs elsewhere in a pattern.

### *\$ (dollar sign)*

If \$ is the *last* character in a pattern, Cindex will find a match to the rest of the pattern only if the match can be made at the end of a field. The pattern

**and\$**

will find only the records in which “and” (or some word ending in “and”) appears at the end of a field. \$ has this special meaning only if it is the last character in a pattern; it has no special significance (and is interpreted as an ordinary character) if it appears elsewhere.

### *\ (backslash)*

The backslash has three different functions:

1. When placed before certain letters, \ introduces a special operation. A notable one is \b to indicate that the pattern element that follows must match on a word boundary. For example

**\banti**

would find a match to “anti” only at the start of a word. For a full list of special operations introduced by \, see **[www.regular-expressions.info/reference.html](http://www.regular-expressions.info/reference.html)**.

2. When placed immediately before any of the characters with special functions: `* ? + [ ( ) { } ^ $ | \ .`. \ causes the following character to lose any significance it would otherwise have in a pattern. For example, to search for any sequence of characters enclosed in square brackets (that is, square brackets are a literal part of the sequence) use

**\[.\*\]**

---

## Using Patterns with Find

To use a backslash as a literal character in a pattern, place another backslash immediately before it.

3. The `\` functions quite differently in a pattern when it is placed immediately before a digit in the range 1 through 9. Here it refers to the text that matches an earlier component in a pattern (a *subpattern*).

The `\` has no special significance when it appears as part of a set of characters contained within `[ ]`.

## USING PATTERNS WITH FIND

---

To simplify your use of patterns, Cindex provides a set of ready-made ones that you can use alone or in combination when searching with **Find...** To deploy a ready-made pattern, right click or CONTROL click in the box where you enter search text. Cindex will display a contextual menu that offers different kinds of patterns, grouped under **General Patterns**, **Character Properties**, and **Scripts**. When you choose a pattern Cindex enters it in the search box. You can edit the pattern, or combine it with others chosen from the menu.

Remember these points when searching with patterns:

- Cindex searches for text that matches a pattern only when you have checked the **Pattern** box.
- Any match to a pattern will lie wholly within a single field of a record. Cindex will not find a match that straddles two fields.
- Cindex will always find the *longest* sequence of characters that matches a pattern, unless you have used `?` to specify that the match be the shortest that satisfies the pattern. See “`?` (question mark)” on page 235.

## USING PATTERNS WHEN REPLACING TEXT

---

To search for and replace sequences of characters that match a pattern use **Replace...** from the Edit menu, and construct the pattern exactly as you would using **Find...**, as described in the previous section.

A special advantage of patterns in search-and-replace operations is that Cindex can include the characters that match the pattern in the replacement text. That is, the text you are looking for can be put back in the record, augmented by other text, or transformed in one of several ways. The following sections provide examples.

### *Adding Volume Numbers to Page References*

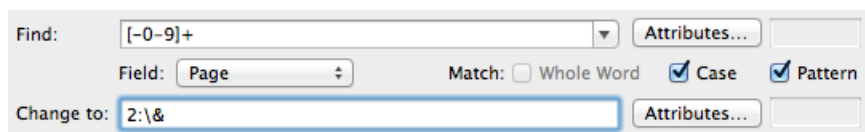
Suppose that you have indexed a work in a single volume and have used simple page references, and now need to incorporate the index into a larger one in which references have to be tagged with the number of the volume in which they appear. Consider a series of references such as:

**45, 66, 89-91, 200**

that you want to convert to

**2:45, 2:66, 2:89-91, 2:200**

You can easily add a volume number to each reference with the following pattern:



The pattern tells Cindex to find (in the locator field) the longest sequence that contains one or more digits and possibly a hyphen. In other words the pattern describes a simple page reference or a range of references.

The characters \& (backslash, ampersand) in the replacement sequence denote the text that matched the pattern. When Cindex makes the substitution it incorporates this text in the replacement sequence. Thus Cindex replaces each reference by itself, preceded by the characters 2:.



---

## Using Patterns when Replacing Text

**NOTE:** To include the `\` (backslash) as a literal character in replacement text, it must be preceded by itself (`\\`). This restriction applies only when you use a pattern. In making ordinary replacements, `\` is treated as a literal character.

### Case Conversion

You can use `\&` together with the `+` and `-` signs to convert words and phrases from lowercase to uppercase and *vice-versa*. Suppose you have an index in which the first character of every main heading is a lowercase letter and you want to convert it to uppercase. You can do this quite simply with the following replacement:

Find: `^[:ll:]`

Change to: `\&+`

This causes Cindex to replace every lowercase letter that occurs at the beginning of a main heading with its uppercase counterpart.

**NOTE:** You need never actually make a change of the kind just shown. Cindex can automatically capitalize the leading letters of headings when it displays or prints a formatted copy of the index. “Typography and Punctuation of Headings” on page 180 explains how.

You could capitalize all of the first word of each main heading with

Find: `^[:ll:]+`

Change to: `\&+`

This causes Cindex to find the longest continuous sequence of letters from the beginning of the main heading, then convert it to uppercase.

You can convert a whole field (for example the main heading field) to uppercase letters with

---

## Using Patterns when Replacing Text

Find:           `^.*$`

Change to: `\&+`

**NOTE:** You need never actually make a change of the kind just shown. Cindex can automatically capitalize headings when it displays or prints a formatted copy of the index. “Typography and Punctuation of Headings” on page 180 explains how to do this.

If you include `\&-` in the replacement text, Cindex will convert to lowercase any letters in the sequence of characters that matches the pattern.

A later section explains how to capitalize the initial letters of every word in a heading.

**NOTES:** The `&` in the replacement sequence is interpreted specially only if preceded by `\`. The `+` or `-` has its special effect only if it appears immediately after `\&`. You can disable the special effect of `+` or `-` by placing `\` immediately before either character (e.g., `\+ or \-).`

If the segment of text matched by a pattern is very long, there might not be sufficient space in the record to accommodate it in a replacement phrase. If this happens, Cindex marks the record and displays a warning message when it has finished making replacements.

### *Including Parts of Matched Text in the Replacement*

When you replace text matched by a pattern you can incorporate selected parts of the matched text in the replacement sequence. The following examples exploit this capability.

#### Changing the Format of References

Suppose that your index contains references to pages in several volumes and that each reference has the form `vol: ppp`, as in

**3:55, 3:66, 4:72, 5:60-63**

and you want to change the references so that the volume number appears in parentheses, as in

(3)55, (3)66, (4)72, (5)60-63

You need to find one or more digits followed by a colon, then replace what is matched by that pattern with the same digits enclosed in parentheses. You can do this by exploiting a feature that allows you to include in the replacement text only a part of the sequence of characters that matched the pattern. In this instance you will include just the digits that represent the volume number.

The following operation replaces each volume number and its terminating colon with the same number enclosed in parentheses:

Find: `([1-9][0-9]*)`:

Change to: `\(\1\)`

The `()` (parentheses) enclose a part of the pattern (a *subpattern*) that matches the volume number. The character pair `\1` in the replacement sequence tells Cindex that the replacement text should include the characters that matched the first subpattern. Thus the above replacement text can be read as “whatever was matched by the first subpattern, enclosed in parentheses.” The colon is discarded during the replacement.

You can define and use up to nine subpatterns. For more information on subpatterns see “Properties of Subpatterns” on page 234.

### Capitalizing Initial Letters of Words

To capitalize the initial letter of every word in the main heading you could use

Find: `([!:])([!:]*)`

Change to: `\1+\2`

---

## Using Patterns when Replacing Text

This causes Cindex to find every continuous sequence of letters that start with a lowercase letter, by matching the first letter with subpattern 1 and any remaining letters with subpattern 2. Cindex then replaces the first letter with its uppercase version and replaces all the others by themselves.

The above operation does not guarantee that all letters after the first in each word will be lowercase—were these uppercase to begin with, Cindex will have left them alone. To ensure that all letters after the first are made lowercase, use the following replacement sequence:

Find: `([:ll:])([:!:]*)`

Change to: `\1+\2-`

### Rearranging the Format of Dates

The following example illustrates how you can use several subpatterns to rearrange the forms of references. Suppose your entries had dates in the form *year:month day* (e.g., 1992:Jun 15) and wanted them to read *day month year* (e.g., 15 Jun 1992). You can define a pattern to recognize a date, identifying each component as subpattern, then rearranging the components by forming a replacement sequence built from text matched by the subpatterns.

Here the three components of the date are matched by three subpatterns connected by the appropriate punctuation:

Find: `{[12][90][0-9][0-9]}:([ADFJMNOS][a-z][a-z]) ([1-9][0-9]*)`

Change to: `\3 \2 \1`

`{[12][90][0-9][0-9]}` identifies a year in the 20th or 21st century.

`{[ADFJMNOS][a-z][a-z]}` identifies a three letter sequence beginning with the initial capital letter from the name of a month. (A more elaborate subpattern would be necessary to identify months uniquely, but in the context of the overall pattern the form shown here would almost certainly be sufficient.)

---

## Using Patterns when Altering References

`{{1-9}[0-9]*}` identifies a day. (This subpattern does not uniquely identify a legitimate date, because it permits a match to more than 2 digits, but in the context of the overall pattern it is sufficient.)

By forming the replacement sequence from the text elements matched by the subpatterns, but in the reverse order of their appearance in the original record, you have rearranged the dates:

## USING PATTERNS WHEN ALTERING REFERENCES

---

When you use **Alter References...** (from the Tools menu) to adjust page references, Cindex normally changes the first number (or range) that falls within the range you specify. If records contain multi-part page references you will probably want to restrict the alterations to a particular segment. You can do this by using patterns, as shown in the following examples.

### *Changing Page Numbers in Selected Volumes*

Suppose you have an index with page references like these:

**MED: 45-47, ART: 325, ART: 4, ENG: 257-261, HIST: 3**

and you want to change all references in the “ART” volume, but not in any others. You can confine alterations to the correct references by specifying a **Matching Pattern** in the panel (shown in full in Figure 26 on page 87):

A screenshot of a software interface showing a label 'Matching Pattern:' followed by a text input box containing the text 'ART:'. The input box has a blue border and a small blue square at the end, indicating it is active or selected.

Matching Pattern: ART:

Cindex will disregard references that do not contain the characters “ART:”. After alteration the references will look like:

**MED: 45-47, ART: 326, ART: 4, ENG: 257-261, HIST: 3**

---

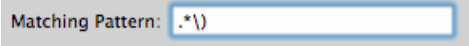
## Using Patterns when Altering References

When you specify a pattern Cindex examines each reference for characters that match the pattern. If part of the reference matches the pattern, Cindex examines the remainder of the reference (i.e., the part that lies to the right of the section matched) and makes the required adjustment if it is in the correct range.

No special pattern-matching characters (e.g., ^ \* \$) were used in the above illustration, but you may use them as required. For example, to adjust every page number (the last element) in compound references such as

1988(3)55, 1988(4)66, 1988(5)72, 1988(4)60-63

you could use the following pattern to exclude all components of the reference up to and including the closing parenthesis:



Matching Pattern: .\*\\)

### *Removing References to Entries in Selected Volumes*

You might on occasion need to remove references to selected volumes from the index to a multi-volume work. You can do this very easily with **Alter References...** by defining a pattern that identifies the volume for which you want to remove references, and then subtracting a very large number from each reference in that volume. Cindex will automatically remove any reference to a page number that would be less than 1. If removing such a reference leaves a locator field empty, Cindex marks the record for deletion. Consider an index in which references had the following form:

1987: Jun 555; 1988: Oct 1032; 1989: Jan 22

To remove from records all references to 1988 set up this adjustment:

---

## Using Patterns when Altering References

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Alter References". It is divided into two main sections: "Scope" and "Action". In the "Scope" section, the "All References" radio button is selected. Below it, the "Range" section has two empty text boxes separated by the word "through". The "Matching Pattern" text box contains the pattern "1988[^0-9]\*". In the "Action" section, the "Adjust Only" radio button is selected. Below it, the "Remove References" radio button is unselected, and the "Hold Higher Values" checkbox is also unselected. At the bottom of the dialog, there is a "Adjustment:" label followed by a text box containing "-10000". To the right of the adjustment box are "Cancel" and "OK" buttons. A help icon (?) is located at the bottom left of the dialog.

The pattern identifies any reference beginning with 1988 and includes all of it up to the page number. For every reference that satisfies this pattern, Cindex will subtract 10000 from the page number. This would make the page numbers less than 0, so Cindex will remove all references to pages in the 1988 volume. Cindex deletes records from which it removes all references.

### *Indexing with Temporary Page Numbers*

Sometimes you will have to index a book before final pagination is known. In such a case you can assign temporary references while you make entries and when you later learn the initial page numbers of chapters you can use **Alter References...** to make the conversion automatically.

When you index with temporary page numbers you should include with each reference some distinctive means to identify the chapter to which it belongs. For example, if you were indexing chapter 6 you might identify a reference to page 32 with 06%32, where the 06% provides a distinctive identifier. You can use an equivalent notation to identify references to other chapters (e.g., 14%). (You can use other forms of tag to identify a chapter, but you should choose a character or sequence of characters that would not otherwise appear in a reference.) You should identify the chapter with as many digits as there are in the highest numbered chapter, e.g., if the highest-numbered chapter were 23, you would use two digits, placing a leading 0 before any chapter numbered between 1 and 9. Each reference should have its chapter tag placed immediately in front of it.

---

## Using Patterns when Altering References

**NOTES:** When making a reference to a range of pages (e.g., 54-57) place a temporary marker before the first member of the range only (e.g., 06%54-57).

Be sure that Cindex knows what character you use to separate page references. “Specifying the Structure of Page References” on page 124 explains how to specify this.

When you know the correct first page for chapter 6 (e.g., 189), choose **Alter References...** from the Tools menu, and set up an adjustment of this sort (see “Adjusting References” on page 86):

The dialog box is titled "Alter References". It is divided into two main sections: "Scope" and "Action".

**Scope:**

- ☒ All References
- ☐ Range: [ ] through [ ]
- Matching Pattern: 06%

**Action:**

- ☒ Adjust Only
- ☐ Remove References
- ☐ Hold Higher Values

At the bottom, there is a "Adjustment:" field with the value "188", and "Cancel" and "OK" buttons.

This will add 188 to all references that have 06% immediately before them. (We add 1 less than the number of the starting page of the chapter, because temporary page numbers began with 1). Use the same method for other chapters, substituting the appropriate chapter identifier and starting page.

When you have made all your alterations you can remove your temporary chapter markers. If you have used a consistent scheme to mark chapters (e.g., the chapter number always ends with %) you can remove all of them in a single operation. Use **Replace...** (from the Edit menu) to search for the following pattern (confined to the locator field), and replace each match with nothing:

Find: [0-9]+%

Change to:

This finds in the locator field a number followed by %; it then removes both the number and the % (leaving behind the unadorned page reference).



## CHAPTER 14 *Reference*

---

This chapter begins with a discussion of principles common to a broad range of operations that Cindex undertakes, then briefly summarizes the function of menu items, in their order of appearance in menus.

Where a topic is discussed fully elsewhere in the Guide, a page reference appears in square brackets in the left margin, thus: [155].

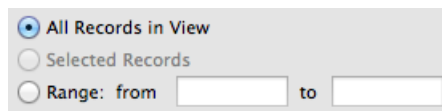
### SCOPE OF OPERATIONS

---

When you choose a menu item that initiates some action on multiple records (such as replacing text, or checking spelling) Cindex confines that action to records accessible in the current view. For example, if the view is set to show only a group of records, the action is confined to that group. Certain actions can be undertaken only when the view shows all records.

#### Confining Action to Parts of the Index

You can restrict the scope of many actions to a subset of the records accessible in the current view. For example, when using **Find...**, or **Replace...**, or **Count...**, or certain options of **Save As...**, Cindex will provide you with options of the following sort:



The image shows a screenshot of a software dialog box. It contains three radio button options. The first option, 'All Records in View', is selected and has a blue dot next to it. The second option, 'Selected Records', is unselected and has a grey dot. The third option, 'Range: from', is unselected and has a grey dot, followed by two empty text boxes and the word 'to' followed by another empty text box.

- To permit the operation on all records accessible in the current view, click **All Records in View**.

---

## Scope of Operations

**NOTE:** When you work with a fully formatted view, deleted records are never accessible, and labeled records are accessible according to your settings of **Hide by Attribute...** (View menu). For more information see “Displaying Labeled Records” on page 55.


- To confine the operation to records you have selected, click **Selected Records** (this is dimmed if no records are selected).
- To confine the operation to a range of records in the view, specify the starting and ending records in **From** and **To**. You can specify a range of headings by entering leading text, e.g., Abr through Doc. You can also specify a range of record numbers (e.g., 55 through 79) within which Cindex should confine the operation. To look among specified headings, you need only provide as much of the beginning text as will identify a record uniquely. You can specify leading text from a subheading by appending a semicolon to the heading text then adding subheading text. To specify a heading that begins with digits, place a \ before the first digit; Cindex will otherwise interpret leading digits as a record number.

If you omit the first part of the range Cindex will start at the first record in the view and stop at the record at the end of the range. If you omit the second part of the range, Cindex will start at the specified record and continue until it reaches the last record in the view.

**NOTE:** When Cindex operates on a specified range of records, it proceeds in whatever order the records are displayed on the screen. Before beginning the operation it checks that the last record in the range appears after the first. If the last record appears before the first, Cindex will display a warning message.

### Confining Action by Record Modification Date

When searching for text with **Find...** or **Replace...**, Cindex offers a further option to control the scope of the search: you can confine the search to records made or modified between certain dates:

A screenshot of a software interface for specifying a date range. It features two radio buttons. The first is labeled "All Dates" and is selected, indicated by a blue dot. The second is labeled "Range:" and is unselected. To the right of the "Range:" radio button are two empty text input boxes separated by the word "to".

To search among records last modified between specified dates and/or times, type the starting and ending dates or times in the date boxes labeled **from** and **to**. Cindex interprets dates and times in the form appropriate to the country you are working in (e.g., month, day, year or day, month, year) and can accept dates and times in a wide variety of forms (e.g., Jan. 1 96, 1/1/96, 1 January 96, January 1 1996, today, 3 pm). If you omit the year Cindex assumes the current

---

## Cindex Menu

year.; if you omit the month, Cindex assumes the current month; if you omit the day (providing only a time), Cindex assumes today. If you leave the starting date blank, Cindex assumes January 1, 1970; if you omit an ending date, Cindex assumes a date far in the future.

### Confining Action to Records with Specified Attributes

In many operations (such as searching for text, or counting records), you can confine action to records that possess specified attributes. Several of the panels Cindex displays offer one or more check boxes for the following attributes. If you check an attribute, Cindex attends only to records that possess that attribute.

- **New Records.** Records added to the index in your current session with Cindex.
- **Modified Records.** Records changed during your current session with Cindex.
- **Deleted Records.** Records that are deleted.
- **Marked Records.** Records that have been marked because some operation could not be completed (usually because there was insufficient space in the record). The mark remains on the record until you edit it.
- **Generated Records.** Records that contain automatically-generated cross-references.
- **Labeled Records.** Records that you have labeled. When you use Find or Replace you can also specify a particular label.

## CINDEX MENU

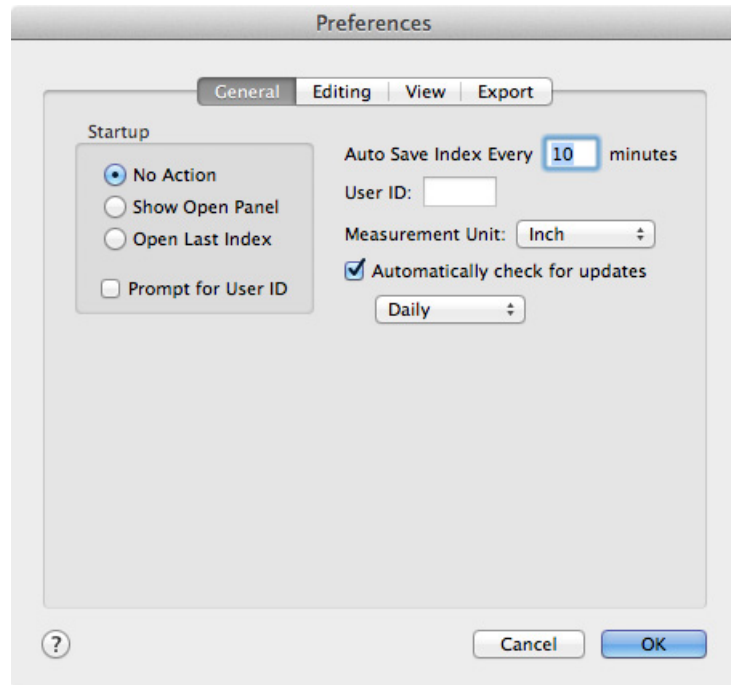
---

### Preferences

This displays a panel (Figure 68) through which you make settings that govern the general behavior of Cindex.

#### General

The first tab contains general settings:



**FIGURE 68.** General Preferences

---

- [9] Startup Action.** This determines what Cindex does when it starts up. Choose **Show Open Panel** to make Cindex display the Open panel; choose **Open Last Index** to make Cindex automatically open the last index you worked on (unless you started Cindex by double-clicking an index).
- [12] Prompt for User ID.** This specifies whether or not Cindex will prompt you for a user identifier each time you begin a session. You can provide up to four identifying characters that Cindex will attach to each record that you make or modify. Cindex displays these characters on the status line in the record window.
- [9] Auto Save Index Every...** This specifies the interval (in minutes) at which Cindex automatically saves indexes to disk. To disable automatic saving set this to 0.

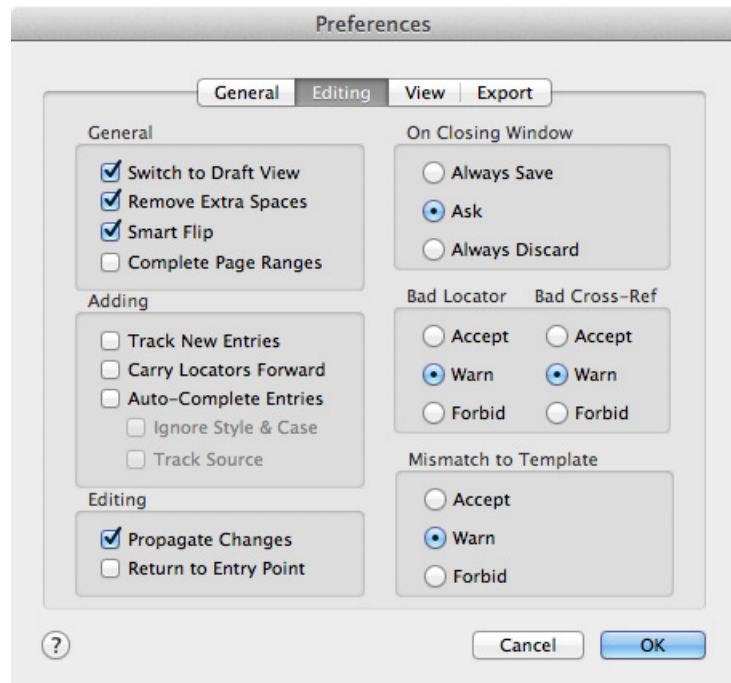
---

## Cindex Menu

- [12] User ID.** This contains up to four identifying initials that will be attached to every record the user creates or modifies.
- Measurement Unit.** This specifies the preferred unit in which dimensions are expressed when you make settings.
- [5] Automatically check for updates.** Check this to make Cindex check automatically and notify you when an update is available. Choose from the pop-up menu the frequency with which Cindex will check for updates.

### Editing

Items in the second tab control how Cindex behaves when you add or edit records through the record window.



**FIGURE 69.** Editing Preferences

---

---

## Cindex Menu

- [57] Switch to Draft View.** When this is checked, and the main window shows fully formatted entries, Cindex will temporarily switch the view to show records in draft format when it opens the record window.
- [36] Remove Duplicate Spaces.** When this is checked, Cindex will reduce multiple spaces between words to a single space, whenever multiple spaces are entered in records.
- [39] Smart Flip.** When this is checked, Cindex will intelligently adjust the case of leading letters and the positions of prepositions and articles when it swaps the contents of two record fields.
- [37] Complete Page Ranges.** When this is checked, Cindex will automatically complete a page range when you type the connecting character that follows the first part of the range
- [26] Track New Entries.** When this is checked, Cindex immediately displays each new entry in its sorted position in the main index window.
- [37] Carry Locators Forward.** When this item is checked, the locator field of each new record you make is automatically loaded with the contents of the locator field from the record most recently added or edited.
- [35] Auto-Complete Entries.** When this is checked, Cindex will attempt to complete any record field when what you have typed matches an entry already in the index.
- [35] Ignore Style & Case.** When this is checked, Cindex will auto-complete entries if what you have typed matches and existing entry, regardless of letter style and case.
- [35] Track Source.** When this is checked, will display in the main view window the entry that provides the source of the text used in auto-completion.
- [40] Propagate Changes.** When this is checked, Cindex will propagate editing changes to any following records in which fields originally matched those that were changed.
- [34] Return to Entry Point.** When this is checked, after editing a series of records Cindex restores the main index display to show the entries it contained when you started editing.

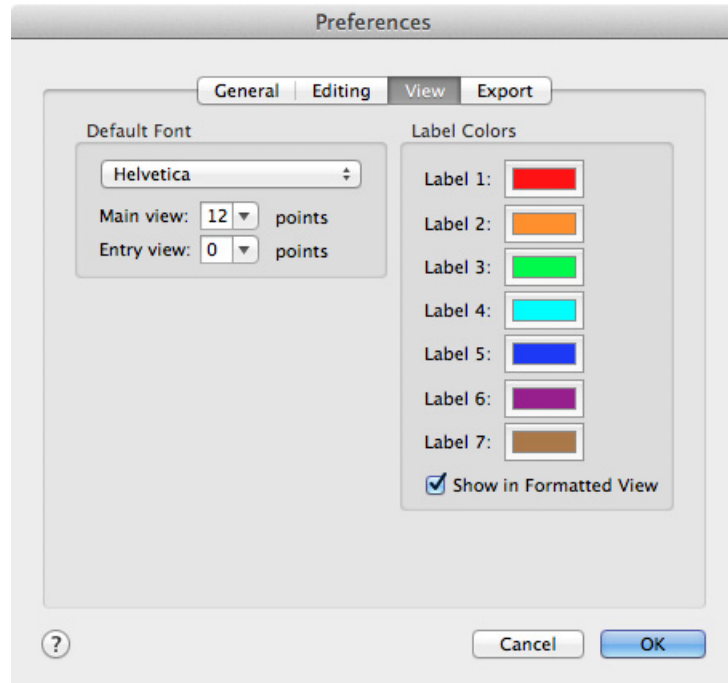
---

## Cindex Menu

- [24] On Closing Window.** The active button determines how Cindex behaves when you close the record-editing window by clicking its close box, or by choosing **Close** from the File menu.
- [41] Bad Locator.** The active button determines what Cindex does when you attempt to save a record that has an empty locator field, or a badly-formed locator.
- [42] Bad Cross-Ref.** The active button determines what Cindex does when you attempt to save a record containing a cross-reference that has no target.
- [212] Mismatch to Template.** The active button determines what Cindex does when you attempt to save a record in which the contents of a field do not match a template specified for it.

## View

Settings made through the View tab determine the appearance of entries in the main window and in the record window.



**FIGURE 70.** View Preferences

---

- [11] Default Font.** This menu specifies the font Cindex will use initially as the standard font for displaying entries a new index.
- [11] Main view.** This specifies the type size Cindex will use initially to display entries in a new index.
- [11] Entry view.** This specifies the type size Cindex will use when it displays entries for editing in the record window. Set 0 to make Cindex use whatever type size is set for the main window.
- [50] Label Colors.** Click a color well to display a panel through which you can specify the color in which records carrying that label will be displayed.



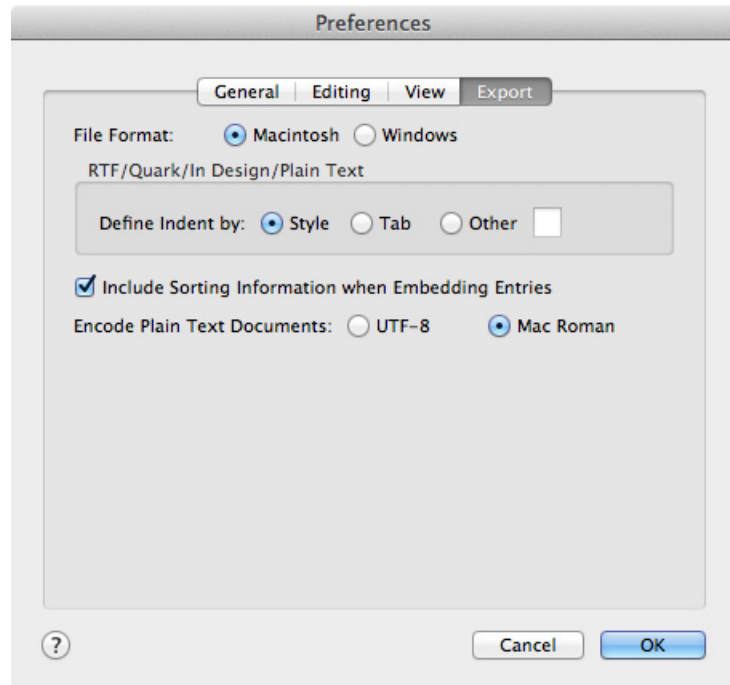
---

## Cindex Menu

- [50] Show in Formatted View.** Check this to make Cindex display labeled records in their distinctive color when using a formatted view.

### Export

The Export tab contains default settings for encoding entries in exported documents.



**FIGURE 71.** Export Preferences

- [190] File Format.** This determines how Cindex represents the end of a line in a formatted entry.
- [190] RTF/Quark/InDesign/Plain Text.** The item chosen here determines how Cindex will form the leading indents to subheadings when it saves formatted indexes in Rich Text Format, as plain text, or in the tagged text formats used by QuarkXPress or Adobe InDesign.

---

## File Menu

- [198] Include Sorting Information when Embedding Entries.** Check this to make Cindex include with embedded entries information about how they should be sorted.
- [187] Encode Plain Text Documents.** Specifies the character representation (UTF-8 Unicode or Mac Roman) Cindex will use when saving plain documents.

## Check for Update

- [5]** Checks whether a Cindex update is available.

## Quit Cindex

- [9]** This saves and closes all open documents, then shuts down Cindex.

---

## FILE MENU

## New...

- [9]** This creates a new index. Cindex displays a standard panel through which you specify the name and location of the index.

## Open...

- [9]** This opens one of several kinds of document that Cindex works with. Cindex displays a standard panel through which you can choose the document and the folder that contains it.

## Open Recent

This contains a list of the most recently used indexes. To open a recently-used index choose it by name from the submenu.

## Close

- [9]** This closes the active window. **Close** has the same effect as clicking the close (red) button at the left corner of the window's title bar.

## Save

- [9]** This saves to disk the document displayed in the active window.

## Save To...

This saves the document in the active window under another name, and/or another format. The **File Format** pop-up menu provides for saving different types of documents.

### Saving Indexes

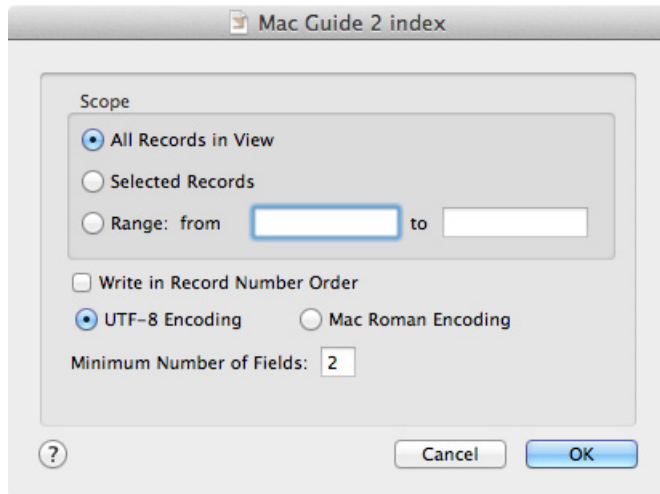
Cindex can save indexes in several formats. These are summarized below. In some cases Cindex provides options that allow you to specify more precisely what should be saved or how it should be saved.

- [9] Cindex Index.** Cindex saves a copy of the active index.
- [215] Cindex Template.** Cindex saves a description of the index (information about record structure, how records are sorted, and the layout of entries in the finished index) but no records, in a file that you can use as a template for creating another index.
- [200] XML Records.** Cindex saves index records in a compact format from which you can recreate an index when necessary. This format is useful for backup storage. (For **Options** see page 260).
- [200] Cindex Archive.** Cindex saves index records in a compact format that you can use for interchange with earlier versions of Cindex. (For **Options** see page 260).
- [200] Delimited Records.** Cindex saves the text of index records as a plain text document that can be read by database programs. The text of each record is contained on a single line, with each field separated from the next by a 'tab' character. (For **Options** see page 260).
- [187] Plain Text.** Cindex saves the text of the index as it would appear in the fully formatted view, but without any style or font information, and without breaking long lines to form runaway lines. (For **Options** see page 261).
- [186] Rich Text Format.** Cindex saves the fully formatted index along with information about fonts, styles and layout of headings. The RTF document contains the information a word-processor or desktop publishing program would need to display a fully formatted index. (For **Options** see page 261).
- [187] QuarkXPress.** Cindex saves the index as an XPress tagged document for use by QuarkXPress. (For **Options** see page 261).
- [187] InDesign.** Cindex saves the index as a tagged document for use by Adobe InDesign.

- [187] XML Tagged Text.** Cindex saves the fully formatted index as an XML document, marked-up with tags you have specified. (For **Options** see page 261).
- [187] SGML Tagged Text.** Cindex saves the fully formatted index with embedded tags for typesetting or display by a publishing system. Cindex uses tags you have specified. (For **Options** see page 261).

Options for Saving  
Unformatted  
Documents

For saving unformatted documents, Cindex will display a panel that contains the following or similar elements, depending on the type of document:



**FIGURE 72.** Options for saving unformatted documents

---

Items under **Scope** define the collection of records to be saved. For more information on this see “Scope of Operations” on page 249.

- [202] Include Deleted Records.** Cindex does not normally save deleted records. Check this item to include deleted records in the saved document.
- [202] Write in Record Number Order.** Check this item to make Cindex put records in the document in order of record number. Otherwise Cindex uses the order in which records appear in the current view.

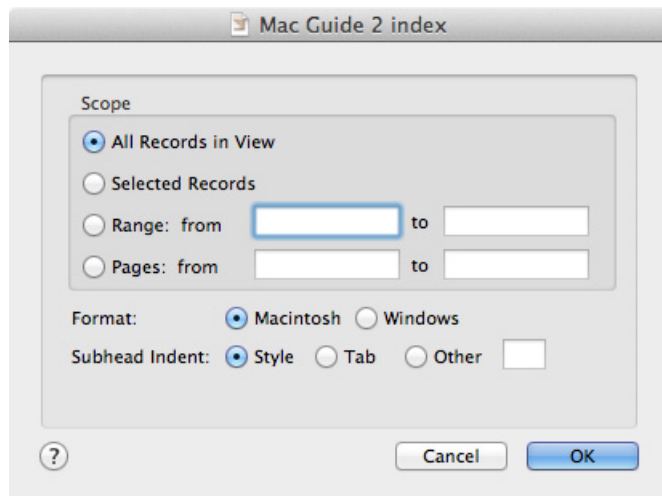
---

## File Menu

- [202] UTF-8 Encoding/Mac Roman Encoding.** Specifies whether character values are encoded using UTF-8 (Unicode) or the Mac Roman character set.
- [202] Minimum Number of Fields.** Plain text records can be written with a minimum number of fields (blank fields are inserted before the locator field if a record contains fewer than the specified minimum).

### Options for Saving Formatted Documents

For saving formatted documents, Cindex will display a panel that contains the following elements:



**FIGURE 73.** Options for saving formatted documents

---

- [189] Range/Pages.** Items define the collection of records to be saved. For more information on this see “Scope of Operations” on page 249.
- [190] Format.** Click **Macintosh** to make a document in which the Mac convention is used to define the end of a text paragraph; click **Windows** to use the convention employed by other kinds of computers.
- [190] Subhead Indent.** Click the appropriate button to specify how Cindex will define leading indents to subheadings in the saved document.

## Save A Copy...

- [9] This saves a copy of the document in the active window under another name. The active document does not change.

## Revert to Saved

- [10] This restores the index to its last-saved state (its state when you last saved it with **Save...** or when Cindex last saved it automatically).

## Save Style Sheet...

- [183] This saves a style sheet that contains all the settings that govern the layout of entries in the formatted index. Cindex saves these settings: **Margins & Columns, Headers & Footers, Grouping Entries, Style & Layout, Headings, Cross-References, Page References** and **Styled Strings**.

To apply a style sheet to the active index choose **Open...** from the File menu.

## Import...

- [203] This imports index records into an index. Cindex can read several document formats, and can usually recognize the format by examining the document's contents.

## New Group

- [63] This makes a temporary group from the records selected in the main index window. This item is dimmed if no records are selected.

## Save Group...

- [64] This converts to a permanent group the temporary group displayed in the main index window. Cindex displays a panel in which you type the name you want to give the group. This item is dimmed unless the view shows a temporary group.

## Page Setup...

- [78] This displays the standard OS X panel through which you specify paper settings for your printer.

## **Print...**

- [78]** This displays, with some additional items that are special to Cindex, the standard OS X panel through which you specify how you want the document printed.

## **EDIT MENU**

---

## **Undo**

In any window containing editable text this undoes your last action (**Cut**, **Paste**, etc.) or redoes the last action that you undid. Actions on other windows cannot be undone. This item is dimmed if the last action cannot be undone.

## **Redo**

In a window in which you are editing text this redoes the last action that you undid.

## **Cut**

- [36]** This cuts selected text in a window that contains editable text. This item is dimmed if nothing can be cut.

## **Copy**

This copies the selected items in the active window.

- [48]** If the main index window is active, Cindex copies selected records.  
**[36]** If a text-editing window is active, Cindex copies selected text.

## **Paste**

This pastes previously copied items into the active window. This item is dimmed if there is no previously-copied object of a kind that can be pasted into the active window.

- [48]** If the main index window is active, Cindex pastes records.

---

## Edit Menu

- [36]** If an editable text window is active, Cindex pastes the text at the insertion point (or replaces any selected text).

## Delete

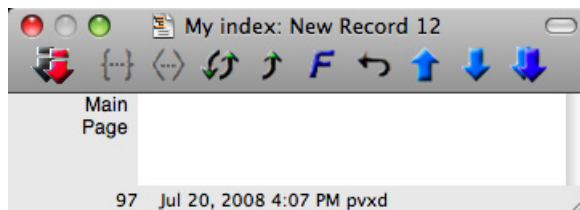
Removes editable text or an item that can be deleted in the active window.

## Select All

This selects all items in the active window.

## New Record

- [18]** This opens a window (below) that contains a new, empty record.



**FIGURE 74.** Window for adding or editing records

---

## Edit Record

- [33]** If a main index window is active, Cindex opens a window that contains the text of the first selected record.

## Duplicate

- [48]** If the main index window is active, this duplicates the selected record(s). If you duplicate a single record, Cindex immediately opens it for editing; if you duplicate several records, Cindex puts them in a temporary group and displays that group in the main window. This item is dimmed if nothing is selected.
- [47]** If the record window is active and contains an existing record (not a new one), this saves the record and leaves a copy of it.



## **Deleted**

- [49]** When the main index window is active, this deletes or undeletes selected records. Deleted records are invisible in a formatted view, but remain in the index until you compress it with **Compress...** from the Tools menu. In any draft view of the index, a deleted record is identified by a **≠** beside it.

When the record window is active, this deletes or undeletes the record (the status line at the bottom of the window will show 'Deleted' if the record is deleted).

## **Labeled**

- [49]** When the main index window is active, this applies the specified label to selected records if the first record in the selection does not already carry that label; otherwise it removes the specified label from all selected records that carry it.

When the record window is active, this applies the specified label or removes a label from the active record (the status line at the bottom of the window will show 'Labeled' if the record is labeled).

## **New Abbreviation**

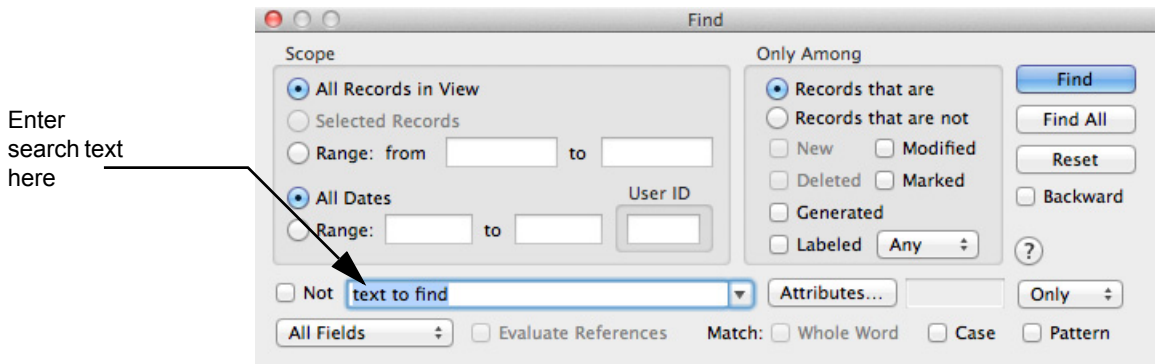
- [44]** When text is selected in the record-editing window, this opens a panel through which you can define an abbreviation for the selected text.

## **Find...**

When the main index window is active, this displays a panel (Figure 75) through which you can search for text in records.

---

## Edit Menu



**FIGURE 75.** Find panel

---

### Scope

Items in the **Scope** box control the scope of the search. For more information on most of these see “Scope of Operations” on page 249.

- [72] User ID.** To limit the search to records that were made or edited by a particular user, enter the identifying initials here.

### Confining the Search to Records with Specified Attributes

Items in the **Only Among** box specify the attributes records must have to be included in or excluded from the search. For more information see “Scope of Operations” on page 249. If any attributes are checked, you can find records that have (or lack) these attributes simply by specifying no search text.

- [68] Find/Find Again.** Click to find the first/next occurrence of the search text (or the first record with the checked attributes, if no search text is specified).
- [70] Find All.** Click to find the all records that contain the search text (or have the checked attributes, if no search text is specified). Cindex makes a temporary group for the records.
- [68] Reset.** Click to clear the current settings and set up for a new search.

### Specifying the Search Target

Enter the search text in the box marked in Figure 75. The following items govern how Cindex treats this text.

---

## Edit Menu

- [75] Not.** When this is checked Cindex finds records that *do not* contain the specified text or the specified text attributes.
- [70] Attributes.** Click this to display a panel through which you can specify the attributes of the text for which you are searching. When an attribute has been specified, Cindex identifies it in the sunken box beside the button.
- [73] Field menu.** This menu identifies the record fields that Cindex will examine when searching for text.
- [73] Evaluate References.** When this is checked, Cindex treats the search text as specifying a locator (or range of locators) and will find any record that contains a reference falling within the range. This item is dimmed unless the search is confined to the locator field.
- [74] Match Whole Word.** When this is checked, Cindex matches only a whole word (a continuous sequence of letters or numbers). This item is dimmed if the search text contains anything other than letters or numbers.
- [74] Match Case.** When this is checked Cindex finds text in which the case of letters matches the target text.
- [74] Match Pattern.** When this is checked Cindex treats the text as a pattern to be matched.
- [75] Only/And/Or.** Items in this pop-up menu determine whether Cindex searches for the specified text alone or in conjunction with some other text. Choose *And* or *Or* to extend the window to accommodate the specification of a second segment of text. You can specify up to four segments altogether.

## Find Again

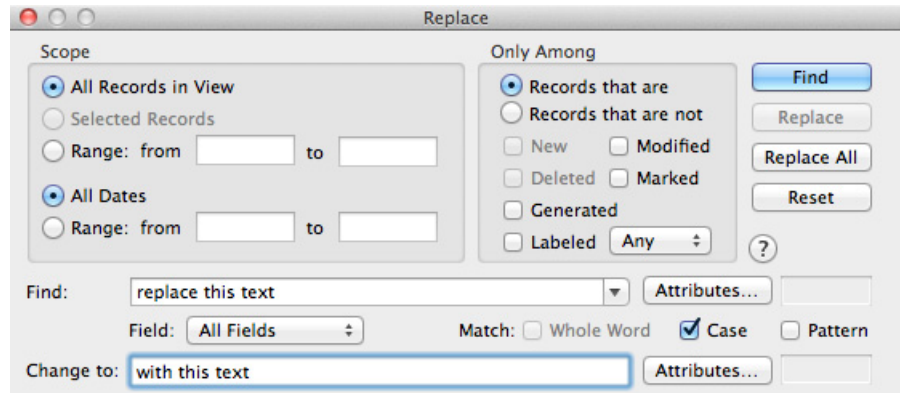
- [68]** Finds the next occurrence of the search target previously specified with **Find**.

## Replace...

When the main index window is active, this brings up a window (Figure 76) through which you can search for and replace text in records.

---

## Edit Menu



**FIGURE 76.** Replace panel

---

### Scope

Items in the **Scope** box control the scope of the search. For more information on them see “Scope of Operations” on page 249.

### Confining the Search to Records with Specified Attributes

Items in the **Only Among** box specify the attributes records must have to be included in or excluded from the search. For more information on them see “Scope of Operations” on page 249.

- [81] Find.** This contains text for which Cindex searches.
- [81] Find/Find Again.** Click to find the first/next occurrence of the search text.
- [81] Replace.** Click to replace the search text in the highlighted record. Cindex automatically looks for the next occurrence after replacing the text.
- [81] Replace All.** Click to replace every occurrence of the search text in records.
- [81] Reset.** Click to clear the current settings and set up for a new search and replace.

### Specifying the Search Target and Replacement

Enter the search text in the **Find** box in Figure 76. Type the replacement text at **Change to**. The following items govern how Cindex treats the search text.

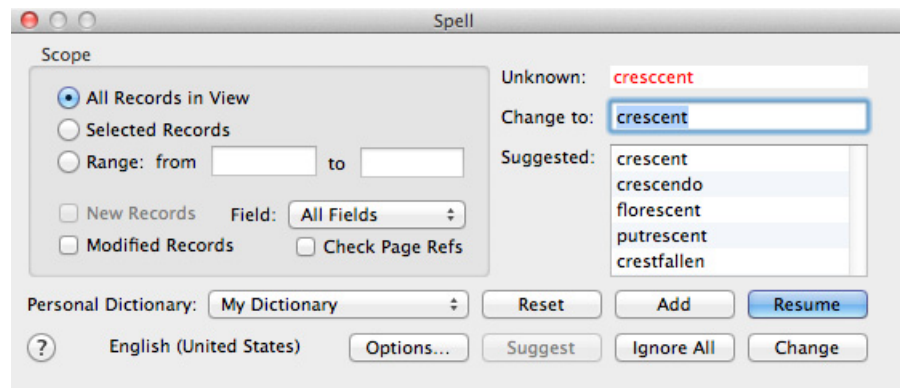
---

## Edit Menu

- [83] Attributes** (search). Click this to display a panel through which you can specify the attributes of the text for which you are searching. When an attribute has been specified, Cindex identifies it in the sunken box beside the button.
- [86] Field.** Use this menu to choose which fields in records Cindex examines when searching for text.
- [86] Match Whole Word.** When this is checked, Cindex matches only a whole word (a continuous sequence of letters or numbers). This item is dimmed if the search text contains anything other than letters or numbers.
- [86] Match Case.** When this is checked Cindex finds text in which the case of letters matches the target text.
- [86] Match Pattern.** When this is checked Cindex treats the text as a pattern to be matched.
- [83] Attributes** (replacement). Click this to display a panel through which you can specify the attributes to be added or replaced.

## Spelling...

When the main index window is active, this opens a window (Figure 77) through which you can check the spelling of text in records.



**FIGURE 77.** Spelling panel

---

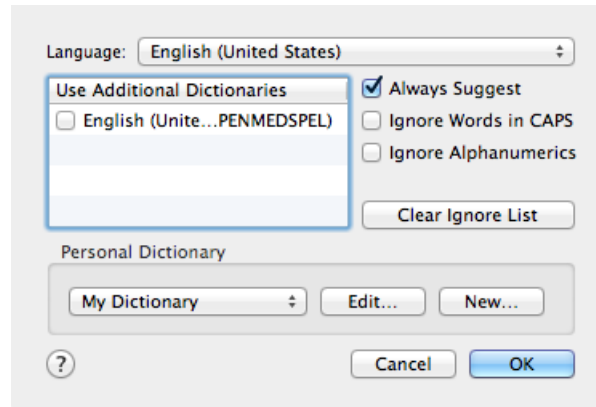
---

## Edit Menu

Scope	<p>Items under <b>Scope</b> control the scope of the examination. For more information on most of these see “Scope of Operations” on page 249.</p> <p><b>[100] Field.</b> The chosen item determines which field or fields Cindex will check.</p> <p><b>[100] Check Page Refs.</b> If this is checked Cindex will check the spelling of text in the locator field, whether or not the text is a cross-reference. If this item is unchecked, Cindex checks only cross-references.</p>
Dictionaries	<p><b>[97] Personal Dictionary.</b> The chosen item identifies the personal dictionary (if any) that Cindex will use in addition to the main language dictionary.</p>
Buttons	<p><b>[102] Suggest.</b> Clicking this causes Cindex to suggest alternative spellings for an unrecognized word. The button is dimmed if Cindex is set to suggest alternatives whenever it encounters an unknown word (see “Setting Options [101]” on page 270).</p> <p><b>[95] Start/Ignore/Delete/Resume.</b> Clicking this starts spell-checking, or (if spell-checking is already under way) causes Cindex to ignore a word it has not recognized, or delete a repeated word.</p> <p><b>[96] Change.</b> Clicking this causes Cindex to change the misspelled word to the word displayed at <b>Change To</b>.</p> <p><b>[99] Reset.</b> Clicking this resets spelling checker for a new pass through the index.</p> <p><b>[97] Ignore All.</b> Clicking this causes Cindex to ignore all further occurrences of the unknown word in your current session.</p> <p><b>[97] Add.</b> Clicking this adds the unknown word to the active personal dictionary.</p>
Setting Options	<p><b>[101]</b> Click <b>Options...</b> to display the sheet shown in Figure 78.</p>

---

## Edit Menu



**FIGURE 78.** Spelling Options sheet

---

- [101] Language.** The chosen item identifies the main language dictionary Cindex will use for checking spelling.
- [101] Use Additional Dictionaries.** This shows any additional specialized dictionaries that can be used with the chosen language.
- [102] Always Suggest.** When this is checked Cindex will always try to suggest alternative spellings for unknown words.
- [102] Ignore Words in CAPS.** When this is checked Cindex will ignore any word that consists entirely of capital letters.
- [102] Ignore Alphanumerics.** When this is checked Cindex will ignore any word that contains both letters and numerals.
- [103] Clear Ignore List.** Clicking this causes Cindex to forget any words it has been told to ignore (via **Ignore All** in the Spelling window).
- [98] Personal Dictionary.** This contains a menu of available personal dictionaries. For the dictionary chosen, **Edit...** displays a panel through which you can edit it. **New...** displays a panel through which you name and create a new personal dictionary.

## Special Characters...

- [22] This displays the palette through which you can view and pick special characters (symbols, etc.) you want to insert into records.

## VIEW MENU

---

## Go To...

- [66] When the main index window is active this brings up a panel (Figure 79) through which you can specify an entry, or a page of entries, you want to bring into view.

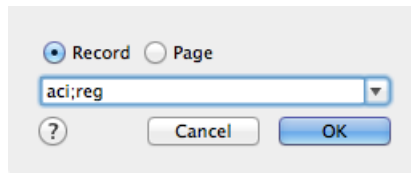


FIGURE 79. Go To panel

---

To display a particular record, click **Record** and specify it by the contents of its headings or by its number (see the discussion under “Scope of Operations” on page 249). To display entries that would fall on a particular printed page of the index, click **Page** and enter the page number.

## All Records

- [62] This sets the view to show all records in the index.

## New Records

- [63] This sets the view to show only new records. This item is dimmed if there are no new records.



## **Group**

- [64]** This submenu identifies groups that belong to the index, and sets the view to show records in the chosen group. This item is dimmed if the index has no groups.

## **Temporary Group**

- [63][70]** This sets the view to show records in any temporary group that Cindex has formed. Temporary groups can be formed from selected records, or by using **Find...**, from the Edit menu. This item is dimmed if the index has no temporary group.

## **Full Format**

- [53]** This sets the view to show fully-formatted index entries.

## **Draft Format**

- [56]** This sets the view to show index entries in draft format.

## **Summary**

- [59]** This sets the view to show entries in summary format (a draft format showing headings and cross-references only). Cindex scans the index before displaying entries in this format.

## **Unformatted**

- [60]** This sets the view to show unformatted records.

## **Hide by Attribute...**

- [55]** Displays a panel through which you can specify the visibility of records carrying particular labels. This item is available only when Cindex displays fully formatted entries.

## **Show Numbers**

- [58]** This shows or hides record numbers in any view except the fully formatted one. This item is dimmed when Cindex displays fully formatted entries.

## **View Depth**

- [58]** The checked item in this submenu identifies the lowest heading level that Cindex will display, in any view but the fully formatted one. This item is dimmed when Cindex displays fully formatted entries.

## **Wrap Lines**

- [61]** This item determines whether Cindex clips, or wraps to the next line, record text that would extend beyond the right margin of the page. This item is available in the unformatted view only; it is dimmed otherwise.

## **Sorted**

- [61]** This item determines whether index entries are displayed in sorted or unsorted order. It is available only when the view is set to show all records, and is dimmed otherwise.

## **Hide/Show Toolbar**

- [13]** This determines whether Cindex shows or hides the toolbar in the main index window or the record-window.

## **Customize Toolbar...**

- [13]** This displays a panel through which you can manage the items available in the toolbar of the active window.

# **FORMAT MENU**

---

## **Show Fonts**

- [31]** This displays a standard panel through which you can choose the font and type size used to display entries in the main window, or the font in which selected text will be set in the record window. (If no text is selected in the record window, the font is applied to the next characters typed.)

---

## Document Menu

The toolbar in the main window also contains standard items through which you can choose the font and type size in which the index is displayed.

### **Bold... etc.**

- [32]** Use these items in the Format menu to apply or remove styles and character attributes to text selected in the record window (items are dimmed if no text is selected).

The style chosen is applied to (or removed from) the currently selected text (if no text is selected the attributes are set for the next characters typed).

## DOCUMENT MENU

---

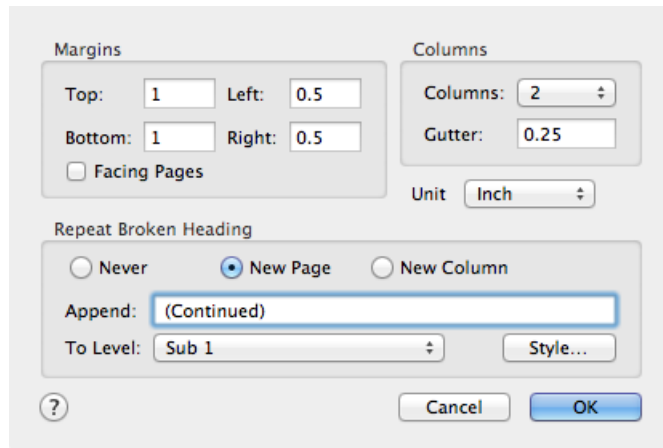
Items in this menu control aspects of the structure or formatting of indexes. If an item is chosen when the main window for an index is active, the settings apply to that index only. If an item is chosen when no index is open, Cindex applies the settings to new indexes when it creates them.

### **Margins & Columns...**

This displays the panel shown in Figure 80.

---

## Document Menu



**FIGURE 80.** Margins & Columns settings

---

- |                 |       |   |
|-----------------|-------|---|
| Setting Margins | [165] | <b>Top.</b> This specifies the size of the top margin, in the unit displayed in the <b>Unit</b> pop-up menu.  |
|                 | [165] | <b>Bottom.</b> This specifies the size of the bottom margin, in the unit displayed in the <b>Unit</b> pop-up menu.  |
|                 | [165] | <b>Left/Inside.</b> This specifies the size of the left or inside margin, in the unit displayed in the <b>Unit</b> pop-up menu.   |
|                 | [165] | <b>Right/Outside.</b> This specifies the size of the right or outside margin, in the unit displayed in the <b>Unit</b> pop-up menu.   |
|                 | [165] | <b>Facing Pages.</b> When this item is checked Cindex formats pages with inside (near binding) and outside (far from binding) margins. When this item is unchecked, all pages are printed with the same left and right margins. |
| Setting Columns | [165] | <b>Columns.</b> This pop-up menu specifies the number of columns that will appear on the printed page. The screen display always shows a single column, but of the correct width.   |
|                 | [165] | <b>Gutter.</b> This specifies the space between columns, in the unit displayed in the <b>Unit</b> pop-up menu.  |

---

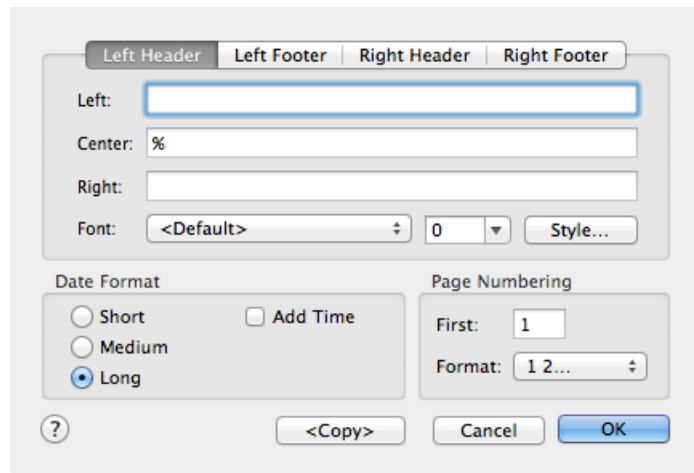
## Document Menu

### Repeating Broken Headings

- [167] **Never/At New Page/At New Column.** These buttons specify the conditions under which Cindex should repeat, at the start of a new column or page, the heading(s) from any entry broken at the foot of the preceding column or page.
- [167] **Append.** Cindex appends this text to each level of heading it repeats after breaking an entry.
- [167] **To Level.** The chosen item in this menu specifies the lowest-level heading that Cindex will repeat if it breaks an entry.
- [167] **Style...** This brings up a panel through which you can set the style of any text Cindex will append to a repeated heading.

## Headers & Footers...

This displays the panel shown in Figure 81.



**FIGURE 81.** Headers & Footers panel

---

- [168] **Header/Footer [Left Header/Left Footer, etc.].** Click the tab to make settings for the appropriate header or footer.
- [168] **Left/Center/Right.** Each of these segments contains text that will appear left-justified, centered, or right-justified in the header or footer line on the left or right page.

---

## Document Menu

When building the header or footer Cindex does not check if the segments of text will overlap.

Unless preceded by \ (backslash), the following characters have special meanings when used in a segment:

- @ denotes the current date/time.
- # denotes the current page number.
- % denotes the name of the index.

**[169] Font.** This specifies the font in which the header or footer line will be printed. The item at the top of the menu (<Default>) represents the standard font in which the index is currently displayed.

**[169] Size.** This specifies the size of text used in the header or footer. 0 means the size used for index entries.

**[169] Style.** This displays a panel through which you can set the style to be applied to text in the header or footer line.

**[168] Copy.** When the index is formatted for facing pages, clicking this copies the settings for the currently selected page (left or right) to the other page. The button is dimmed if the pages have identical headers and footers.

**[170] First Page Number.** This specifies the number (if any) printed on the first page.

**[170] Number Format.** This specifies how page numbers are printed.

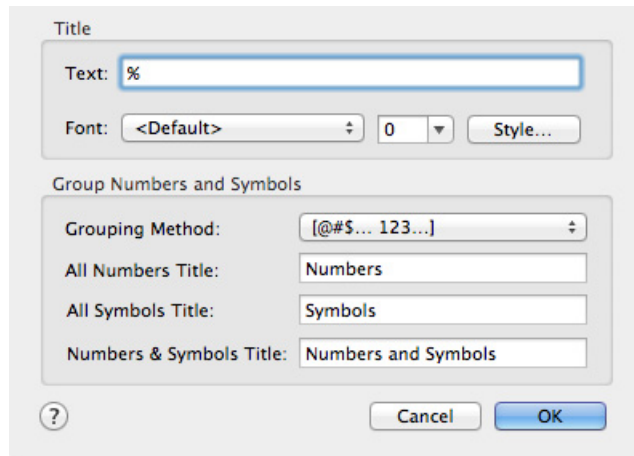
### Date Format

**[170] Short/Medium/Long.** This determines the format in which Cindex will print a date in the header or footer.

**[170] Add Time.** If this is checked, Cindex appends the time to any date it prints in a header or footer.

## Grouping Entries...

The panel shown in Figure 82 contains settings that govern how Cindex groups entries for display in the formatted index. Settings take effect only when the index is displayed in fully formatted view.



**FIGURE 82.** Grouping Entries panel

---

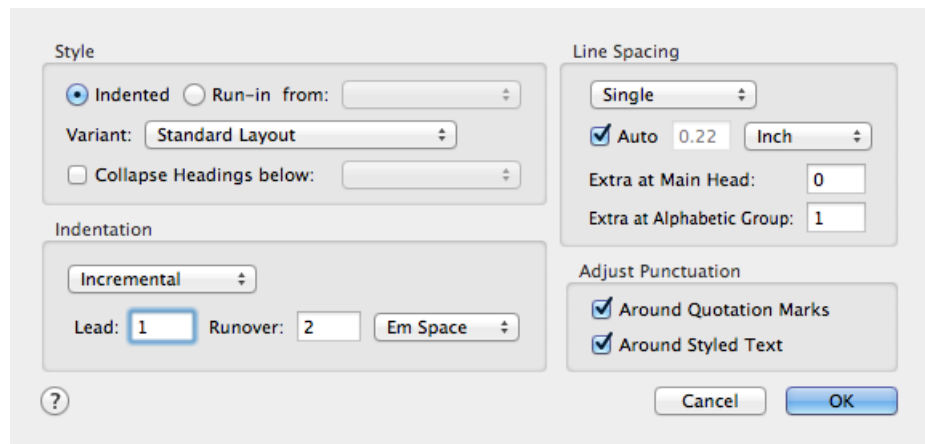
- [170] Text.** Text entered here appears as the title to each group. The character % is understood to represent the character that begins the group. This is the first character under which Cindex sorts an entry.
- [170] Font.** This specifies the font in which Cindex will print any group title. The item at the top of the menu (<Default>) represents the standard font in which the index is displayed
- [170] Size.** This specifies the type size used to display the header. 0 means the size used for index entries.
- [170] Style.** This displays a panel through which you can set the style in which Cindex will print any group title.
- [170] Grouping Method.** The item chosen in the pop-up menu determines how Cindex groups entries that begin with numbers and symbols (each letter of the alphabet

occupies its own group). Elements within a single pair of square brackets are grouped together.

- [170] **Numbers/Symbols Titles.** Specify here any titles to be used for groups that aggregate all numbers, all symbols or all numbers and symbols.

## Style & Layout...

The panel shown in Figure 83 contains settings that govern the style and layout of entries in the formatted index.



**FIGURE 83.** Style & Layout panel

---

### Style

- [173] **Indented/Run-In.** This determines the basic index style, indented or run-in. In run-in style, the pop-up menu specifies the heading level below which entries are run-in (they are indented until that level).
- [174] **Variant.** The item chosen from the pop-up menu specifies any variant on the basic indented or run-in style.
- [176] **Collapse Headings below.** This determines the level below which headings will be suppressed, and their page references and cross-references displayed as though belonging to the last visible heading level.



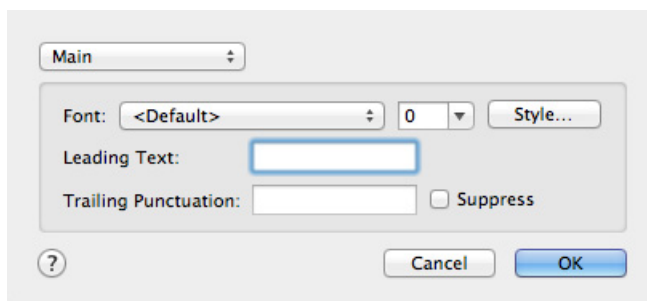
---

## Document Menu

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Indentation           | <p>[176] <b>Type.</b> The pop-up menu determines how Cindex will calculate the indentation of different levels of heading and runover lines. Depending on your choice, Cindex may display an additional menu through which you specify settings for individual levels of heading.</p> <p>[177] <b>Lead.</b> This specifies the size of the indent (in the chosen unit) that Cindex will use before a new level of heading.</p> <p>[177] <b>Runover.</b> This specifies the size of the indent (in the chosen unit) that Cindex will use before a runover (continuation) line.</p> <p>[177] <b>Unit.</b> This determines the unit in which Cindex will calculate the indentation of formatted entries. (An Em space is the width of M in the standard font in which the index is displayed.)</p>   |
| Line Spacing          | <p>[178] The item chosen in the pop-up menu determines how Cindex spaces lines (single, one-and-one-half lines, double).</p> <p>[178] <b>Auto.</b> When this is checked, Cindex calculates the line spacing automatically for the font and size in which entries are displayed. This item is dimmed if the spacing is set to some other value.</p> <p>[178] The text box shows the separation of lines, in the unit chosen from the pop-up menu to its right. The text box is dimmed if <b>Auto</b> is checked.</p> <p>[178] <b>Extra at Main Headings.</b> Cindex inserts this number of extra lines between main headings.</p> <p>[178] <b>Extra at Alphabetic Group.</b> Cindex inserts this number of extra lines between each group of entries. (Groups are identified through settings in “Grouping Entries...” on page 279.)</p> |
| Adjusting Punctuation | <p>[179] <b>Around Quotation Marks.</b> If this is checked Cindex will move a trailing period or comma inside any closing quotation mark when it displays formatted entries.</p> <p>[179] <b>Around Styled Text.</b> If this is checked Cindex will move a trailing punctuation mark inside any closing style (italics, boldface, etc.) when it displays formatted entries.</p>   |

## Headings...

The panel shown in Figure 84 contains settings that govern the punctuation, font and style in which Cindex displays headings at different levels. The settings take effect only when the index is displayed in fully formatted view.



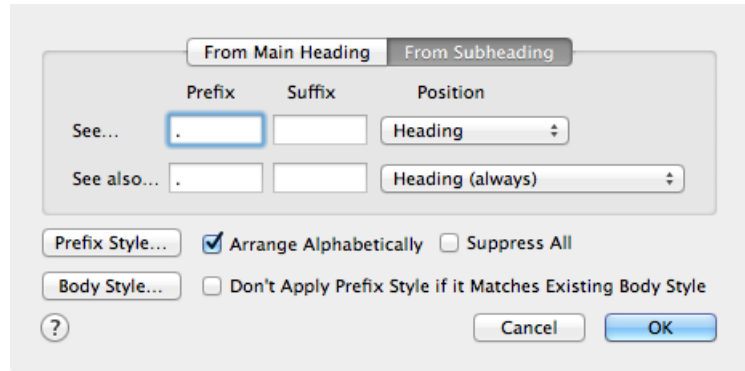
**FIGURE 84.** Heading Format panel

---

- [180] Level.** Choose from the pop-up menu the heading level to which settings will be applied.
- [180] Font.** This specifies the font in which the heading will be displayed. The first item (<Default>) represents the standard font assigned to the index from the font pop-up menu in the toolbar.
- [180] Size.** This specifies the type size used to display the header. 0 means the size used for index entries.
- [180] Style.** This brings up a panel through which you can specify the style in which the heading will be displayed.
- [180] Leading Text.** This contains text that Cindex will insert immediately before the text of the heading.
- [180] Trailing Punctuation.** This contains any punctuation that Cindex will place after a heading that has no immediately following page reference or cross-reference.
- [180] Suppress.** When this is checked, headings at the specified level, and any associated page references or cross-references, are suppressed.

## Cross-References...

The panel shown in Figure 85 contains settings that govern how Cindex displays cross-references. Most settings take effect only when the index is displayed in fully formatted view.



**FIGURE 85.** Cross-References panel

---

- [116] [118] From Main Heading/From Subheading.** Click the tab to make settings for cross-references from the main heading, or cross-references from subheadings.
- [116] [118] Prefix.** Cindex displays the this text (including spaces) before the first cross-reference of the appropriate kind (See, or See also).
- [116] [118] Suffix.** Cindex displays this text (including spaces) immediately after the last cross-reference of the appropriate kind (See, or See also).
- [116] [118] Position.** This determines where Cindex places cross-references: immediately following the heading (after any page references), immediately following the heading (only if there are no page references); as the first subheadings, or as the last subheadings. The setting affects both draft and full-formatted views.
- [119] Prefix Style.** This brings up a panel through which you can specify the style in which Cindex will display the phrase that introduces a cross-reference.
- [119] Body Style.** This brings up a panel through which you can specify the style in which Cindex will display the body of a cross-reference.

- [119] **Arrange Alphabetically.** If this is checked Cindex will arrange cross-references alphabetically when more than one is made from a single heading or subheading. If this item is unchecked, cross-references appear in the order in which they were entered in records.
- [119] **Suppress All References.** If this is checked Cindex will suppress the display of all cross-references (fully-formatted view only).
- [120] **Don't Apply Style Prefix if it Matches Existing Body Style.** If this is checked Cindex will not apply a prefix style if that style is already applied to the body of the cross-reference.

## Page References...

These settings govern how Cindex displays page references, and take effect only when the index is displayed in fully formatted view. Cindex displays the panel shown in Figure 86.

The screenshot shows the 'Page References' dialog box. It has a light gray background and is organized into several sections. The 'Ranges' section on the top left contains three controls: 'Connecting Text' with a text field containing a hyphen, 'Conflate Beyond' with a dropdown menu showing 'Second', and 'Abbreviation Rule' with a dropdown menu showing 'None'. The 'Punctuation' section on the top right contains three text fields: 'Before Single' and 'Before Multiple' both containing a comma, and 'After' which is empty. Below these are two unchecked checkboxes: 'Right Justify' and 'Dot Leader'. The 'Multi-Part References' section on the bottom left contains an unchecked checkbox 'Suppress Repeated Parts', a text field 'Suppress to' which is empty, and a text field 'Concatenate with' containing a comma. To the right of this section are two checked/unchecked checkboxes: 'Arrange in Sorted Order' (checked) and 'Suppress All References' (unchecked). Below these is a 'Style...' button. At the very bottom of the dialog are three buttons: a help icon (?), 'Cancel', and 'OK'.

FIGURE 86. Page References panel

---

### Ranges

- [137] **Connecting Text.** This contains the set of characters that Cindex will display in fully-formatted entries instead of the single character (usually –) used to connect a range in a record.

---

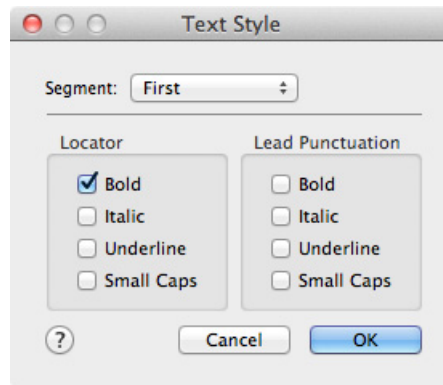
## Document Menu

- [138] **Conflate Beyond.** The chosen item identifies the number of separate references to consecutive pages Cindex must encounter before it conflates them into a range (e.g., 55, 56, 57 becomes 55–57).
- [139] **Abbreviation Rule.** The item chosen determines the rule (if any) Cindex will use to abbreviate the higher number in a connected range (e.g., 325–327 becomes 325–27).
- Punctuation
- [141] **Before Single.** This contains the characters (including spaces) that Cindex will place between a heading and an immediately following single page reference.
- [141] **Before Multiple.** This contains the characters (including spaces) that Cindex will place between a heading and immediately following multiple page references.
- [141] **After.** This contains the characters (if any) that Cindex will place after the last page reference to a heading.
- [141] **Right Justify.** When this is checked Cindex will right-justify page references (within the width of a column). This setting applies only to indexes formatted in indented style.
- [141] **Dot Leader.** When this is checked, Cindex formats right-justified references with a dotted leader when it exports a formatted document.
- Multi-Part References
- [140] **Suppress Repeated Parts.** When this is checked Cindex will suppress leading segments of multi-part references beyond the first in a series (e.g., displaying XIV 55:10; XIV 55:62; XIV 55:79 as XIV 55:10, 62, 79).
- [140] **Suppress to.** This specifies a (possibly disconnected) sequence of characters that determine how much of the beginning of a multi-part reference Cindex will suppress. Cindex suppresses everything that lies before the last character in the sequence.
- [140] **Concatenate with.** Cindex replaces any suppressed leading segments of multi-part references with the characters entered here.
- Other Settings
- [143] **Arrange in Sorted Order.** If this is checked Cindex will display multiple page references from the same heading in sorted order. If this item is unchecked, references appear in their order of entry in records.

- [144] Suppress All References.** If this is checked Cindex will suppress the display of all page references (fully-formatted view only).

Locator Style

- [142] Style...** This brings up the panel shown in Figure 87. Through this you specify the style in which Cindex will display the different components of page references.



**FIGURE 87.** Locator Style panel

---

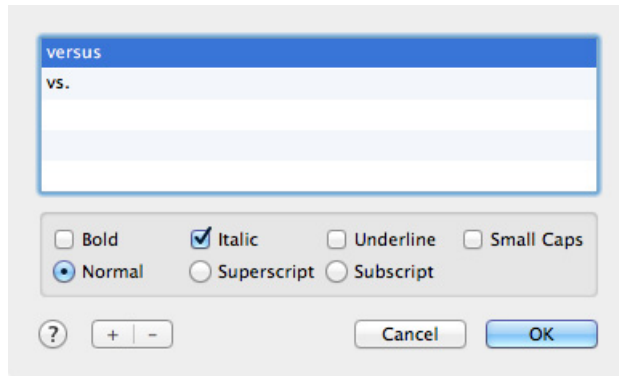
- [142] Segment.** Choose from the pop-up menu the segment of a multi-part reference to which styles will be applied (a simple page reference has only one segment).
- [142] Locator.** Checked styles are applied to the reference element proper.
- [142] Lead Punctuation.** Checked styles are applied to any punctuation that precedes the reference element.

## Styled Strings...

The panel shown in Figure 88 contains a list of words and phrases to which Cindex will apply a style or styles automatically when it displays a formatted index. Settings take effect only when the index is displayed in fully formatted view.

---

## Document Menu



**FIGURE 88.** Styled Strings panel

---

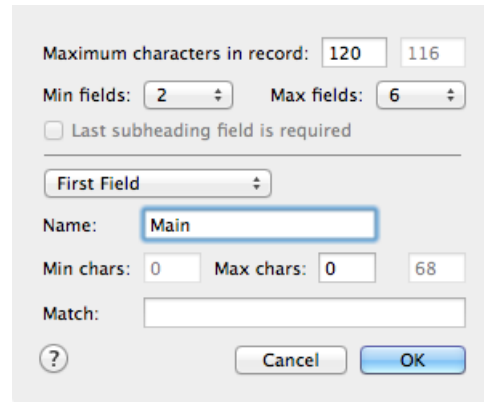
- [182]** The drop-down list contains the words or phrases to which Cindex will automatically apply specified styles. Check boxes and buttons show the styles to be applied to the displayed word or phrase.
- [182]** **+**. This opens a text box in the list for you to add a new word or phrase.
- [182]** **-**. This removes the selected word or phrase from the list. This item is dimmed if no row is selected in the list.

## Record Structure...

The panel shown in Figure 89 contains settings that control the structure of index records.

---

## Document Menu

The image shows a 'Record Structure' panel dialog box. At the top, 'Maximum characters in record' has two input fields with values 120 and 116. Below that, 'Min fields' is set to 2 and 'Max fields' is set to 6, both with up/down arrows. A checkbox labeled 'Last subheading field is required' is unchecked. A 'First Field' dropdown menu is set to 'Main'. Below this, the 'Name' field contains 'Main'. 'Min chars' is 0 and 'Max chars' is 0, with a '68' value to the right. A 'Match' field is empty. At the bottom are a help icon (?), a 'Cancel' button, and an 'OK' button.

**FIGURE 89.** Record Structure panel

---

- [210] Maximum characters in record.** This specifies the maximum number of characters a record can hold. If the index contains records, this number cannot be less than the number of characters contained in the longest record. That number will be shown to the right.
- [210] Min fields/Max fields.** The menu choices specify the minimum and maximum number of fields index records can hold. If the index contains records, the minimum cannot be set to less than the largest number of fields in any record.
- [211] Last subheading field is required.** When this is checked each record will contain a last subheading field (attached to the locator field) that cannot be split or joined to another field. This is dimmed unless the minimum number of fields is at least 3.

**Properties of Fields [211] Field.** Choose from the pop-up menu the field for which you want to make settings in the box below it. Item names identify fields by their order of appearance in records (the locator field is always represented by the last item).

- [211] Name.** This specifies the name Cindex will use to identify the field in the record window and in various pop-up menus.

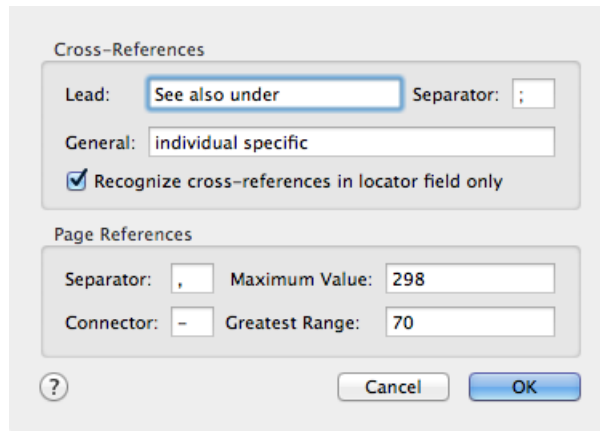
- [211] Min chars/Max chars.** These set the minimum and maximum numbers of characters that the field may contain (a setting of 0 implies no limitation).



- [211] Match.** This contains any pattern to which the contents of the field must conform.

## Reference Syntax...

The panel shown in Figure 90 contains settings that specify the structure of cross-references and page references.



**FIGURE 90.** Reference Syntax panel

---

- Cross-References [106] **Lead.** This contains the words that can form the introductory phrase of a cross-reference.
- [106] **Separator.** This specifies the character that is used to identify the end of a cross-reference when two or more appear sequentially in a record.
- [106] **General.** This contains the individual words that may begin a general cross-reference that refers to no particular entry (e.g., See specific diseases).
- [106] **Recognize cross-references in locator field only.** Check this to prevent Cindex identifying text in a heading as a cross-reference.
- Page References [124] **Separator.** This (single) character separates one page-reference from the next when two or more are contained in a record.

---

## Tools Menu

- [124] Connector.** This character separates the parts of an inclusive range of page references, in records. It need not be the character Cindex displays in formatted entries.
- [41] Maximum Value.** This specifies the maximum value a locator can take. Cindex can check that locators you enter in records do not exceed this value.
- [41] Greatest Range.** This number specifies the maximum span of pages than can be represented in a consecutive range. Cindex can check that the spans of ranges you enter in records do not exceed this value.

## Smart Flip Words...

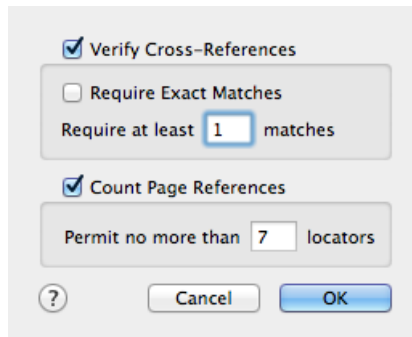
- [39]** The panel contains the words that Cindex may move within and between record fields when it executes a 'Smart Flip'.

---

## TOOLS MENU

## Check References...

This checks that cross-references refer correctly to entries somewhere in the index, and/or that no entry contains more than a specified maximum number of page references. Cindex displays the panel shown in Figure 91.



**FIGURE 91.** Check References panel

---

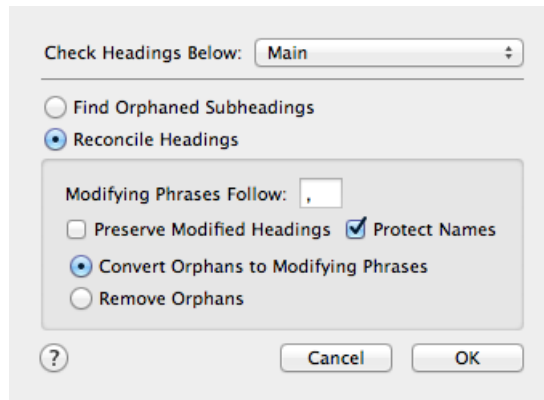
---

## Tools Menu

- Cross References [110] **Require Exact Matches.** If this is checked Cindex requires an exact match between the body of a cross-reference and the entry to which it refers. If this item is unchecked, Cindex accepts shortened or modified matches.
- [111] **Require at least *N* matches.** This specifies the minimum number of target entries that Cindex must find under each heading to which a cross-reference is made. The value must be at least 1.
- Page References [128] **Permit no more than *N* locators.** This specifies the maximum number of locators an entry can contain before Cindex will warn you when it checks the index.

## Reconcile Headings...

This finds orphaned subheadings, or reconciles heading levels in records by adjusting fields so that no record contains more levels of heading than it needs. Cindex displays the panel shown in Figure 92.



**FIGURE 92.** Reconcile Headings panel

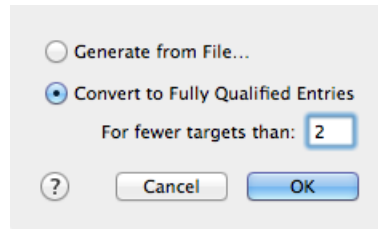
---

- [91] **Check Headings Below.** The chosen item specifies the level below which Cindex may split or join headings.
- [92] **Find Orphaned Subheadings/Reconcile Headings.** Choose whether Cindex will provide a list of orphaned subheadings or will reconcile heading levels.

- [93] **Modifying Phrases Follow.** This specifies the character (usually a comma) that separates a heading from any immediately following modifying phrase.
- [93] **Preserve Modified Headings.** If this is checked, Cindex will not break modified headings before joining fields to remove redundant heading levels.
- [93] **Protect Names.** When this is checked Cindex will never break a field if the text following the potential break point begins with a capital letter.
- [93] **Convert Orphans to Modifying Phrases/Remove Orphans.** Choose how Cindex will deal with orphaned subheadings.

## Manage Cross-References...

This displays the panel in Figure 93, through which you choose to whether to generate cross-references automatically for specified target entries, or convert existing cross-references to fully-qualified entries.



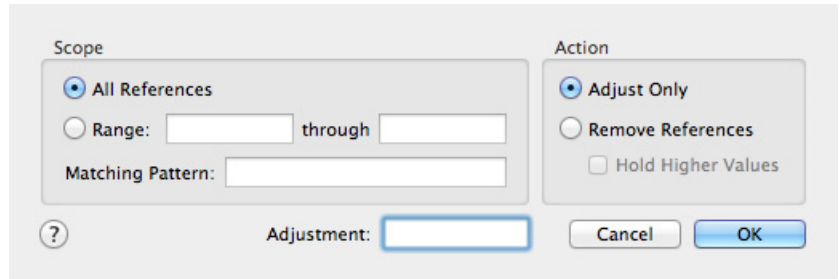
**FIGURE 93.** Manage Cross-References panel

---

- [113] **Generate from File.** This displays an Open panel through which you choose the source of cross-references that Cindex will add to the active index if it contains appropriate target entries. Check **Generate "See" References Only** to make Cindex generate only *See* references, vs. both *See* and *See also* references.
- [111] **Convert to Fully Qualified Entries.** Choose this to make Cindex convert any *see* references with fewer than a specified number of target entries into fully qualified entries.
- [111] **For fewer targets than.** Specify the number of target entries below which Cindex will convert a *see* reference to a fully qualified entry.

## Alter References...

This adjusts references to page numbers contained in the locator fields of records. Cindex displays the panel shown in Figure 94.



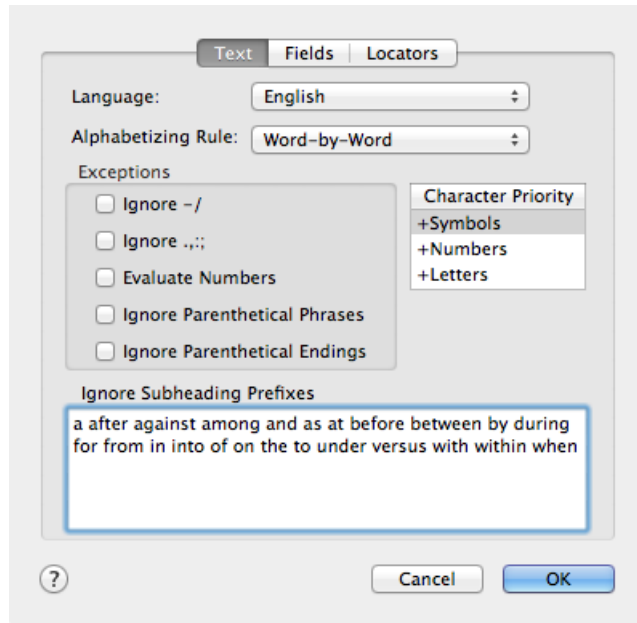
**FIGURE 94.** Alter References panel

---

- [87] [88] All References/Range.** This specifies whether Cindex adjusts all references, or only references falling within a range identified by the beginning and ending page numbers in the boxes.
- [245] Matching Pattern.** This can contain a pattern that specifies any initial parts of a multi-part reference Cindex must skip before the part that it will adjust.
- [89] Adjust Only/Remove References.** This determines whether Cindex adjusts or removes references that match the specification in **Scope**. If **Remove References** is specified, Cindex adjusts references to higher numbered pages to take account of those removed, unless **Hold Higher Values** is checked.
- [87] Adjustment.** This specifies the amount (positive or negative) by which references will be adjusted.

## Sort...

This sorts entries by rules specified via the panel shown in Figure 95.



**FIGURE 95.** Sort panel

---

Text

- [145] **Language.** This specifies the type of alphabetizing rule Cindex will use.
- [156] **Alphabetizing Rule.** This specifies the type of alphabetizing rule Cindex will use.
- [156] **Ignore -/.** If this is checked Cindex will ignore - and / in word-by-word alphabetizing. If this is unchecked Cindex treats - and / as spaces.
- [156] **Ignore ,.:** If this is checked, Cindex will ignore these characters, in letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing only. If this is unchecked, Cindex treats these characters as having higher precedence than spaces.
- [157] **Evaluate Numbers.** If this is checked, Cindex evaluates a series of digits as a number, in letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing only. If this is unchecked, Cindex ignores digits while alphabetizing entries.
- [156] **Ignore Parenthetical Phrases.** When this item is checked, Cindex ignores text in parentheses, in letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing only.

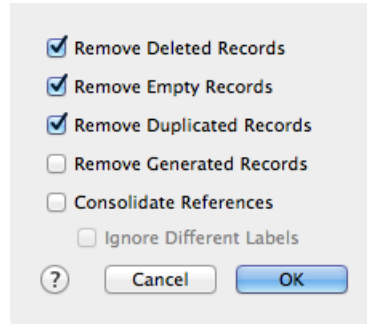
---

## Tools Menu

- [156] **Ignore Parenthetical Endings.** When this item is checked, Cindex ignores parenthetical endings to words, in letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing only.
- [155] **Character Priority.** The position of a character class in this list determines the precedence of that class of characters. (Items in the list can be dragged to new positions.)
- [155] **Ignore Subheading Prefixes.** This list contains words that Cindex will ignore if they appear at the beginnings of subheadings, in letter-by-letter or word-by-word alphabetizing only.
- Fields
- [145] **Order.** The order in which checked items appear in the list determines the order in which Cindex evaluates the corresponding fields in records. Double-clicking an item checks or unchecks it. (Items can be dragged to new positions.)
- [148] **Ignore Lowest.** When this is checked Cindex ignores the contents of the lowest-level text field in a record.
- Locators
- [131] **Segment Order.** This specifies whether, and in what order, Cindex will evaluate a particular segment of a multi-part reference. Cindex evaluates segments appearing at the positions identified by check marks. Double-clicking an item checks or unchecks it. The order in which Cindex evaluates a checked item is determined by the item's position in the list. (Items can be dragged to new positions.)
- [129] **Type Precedence.** This specifies whether or not Cindex will recognize reference components of different classes, and the precedence of the classes Cindex does recognize. Cindex recognizes components of classes that are checked. Double-clicking an item checks or unchecks it. The precedence of a checked item is determined by its position in the list. (Items can be dragged to new positions.)
- [131] **Style Precedence.** This specifies the precedence of otherwise identical locator components that differ in text style. (Items can be dragged to new positions.)
- [134] **Ascending.** When this is checked, low-valued references precede higher valued ones. When this is unchecked, higher valued references precede lower-valued ones.
- [134] **Examine All.** When this is checked Cindex sorts by the lowest (or highest) valued reference (per **Ascending Order**, above). When this item is unchecked, Cindex uses the value of the first reference in a record.

## Compress...

This removes records of specified kinds from the index. Cindex displays the panel shown in Figure 96.



**FIGURE 96.** Compress panel

---

- [221] Remove Deleted Records.** When this is checked Cindex removes deleted records and renumbers records that remain.
- [221] Remove Empty Records.** When this is checked Cindex removes records that contain no text.
- [221] Remove Duplicated Records.** When this is checked Cindex removes any record that is an exact duplicate of another.
- [222] Remove Generated Records.** When this is checked Cindex removes records that contain automatically generated cross-references.
- [222] Consolidate References.** When this is checked Cindex finds records that are identical, except for their page references or cross-references, and consolidates page references or cross-references into as few records as possible. Cindex removes unnecessary records.
- [222] Ignore Different Labels.** Check this to make Cindex consolidate references from identical records, regardless of whether they carry the same label.



Expand

- [219] This generates new records as needed so that no record in the index contains more than one page reference or one cross-reference.

Count Records...

- [218] This counts records of specified kinds. Cindex displays the panel shown in Figure 97.

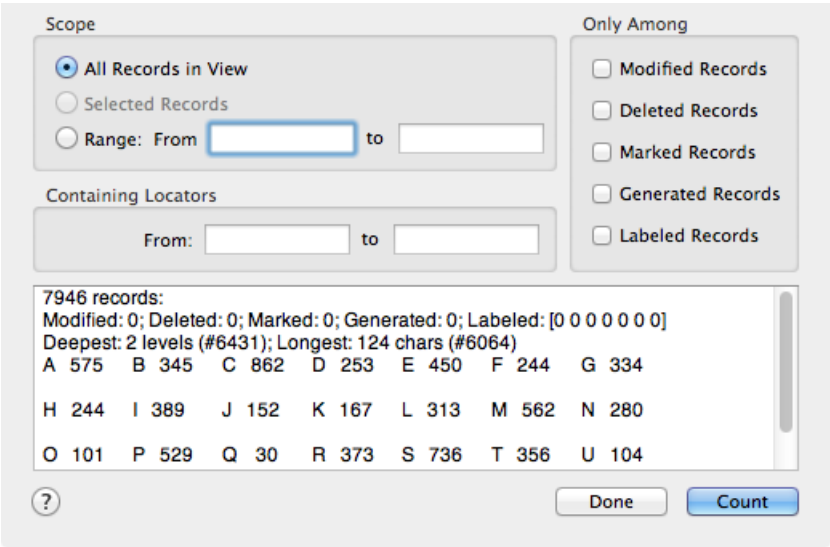


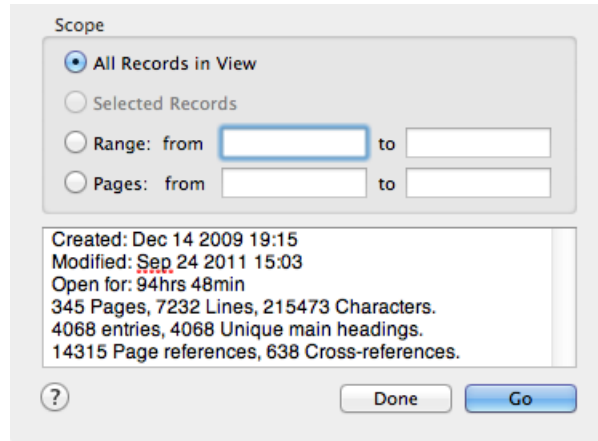
FIGURE 97. Count panel

Cindex counts records within the scope specified under **Scope**, and containing the attributes checked in **Only Among**. For more information on setting the scope and attributes see “Scope of Operations” on page 249.

- [219] **Containing Locators.** This specifies the range of locators for which Cindex will count records. If no range is specified, Cindex counts records regardless of locator value.

## Index Statistics...

**[216]** This provides various statistics about the active index. Cindex displays the panel shown in Figure 98.



**FIGURE 98.** Index Statistics panel

---

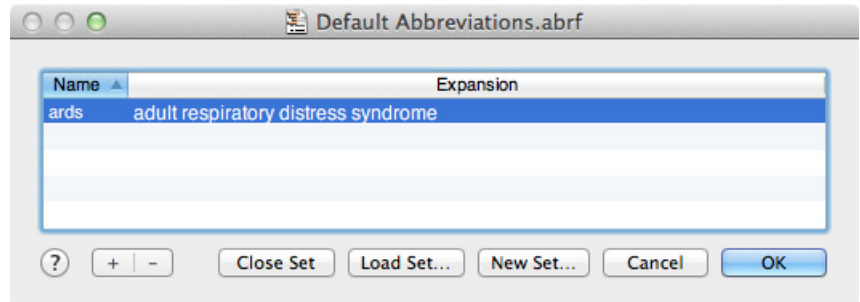
Cindex displays information about the formatted entries within the scope specified in **Scope**. For more information on setting the scope see “Scope of Operations” on page 249.

## Abbreviations...

This opens the panel (Figure 99) through which you manage abbreviations..

---

## Tools Menu



**FIGURE 99.** The Abbreviations panel

---

- [44]** The active set of abbreviations is displayed in the table. Each line shows the abbreviation you would type in a record, then the expanded phrase the abbreviation represents. You can edit these.
- [46]** **Close Set.** Use this to choose a new set of abbreviations to use.
- [46]** **Load Set.** click this to choose a new set of abbreviations to use.
- [46]** **New Set.** Click this to start a new set of abbreviations.
- [44]** **+**. Click this to add a new abbreviation and its associated phrase to the table
- [44]** **-**. Click this to remove abbreviation and its associated phrase

## Function Keys...

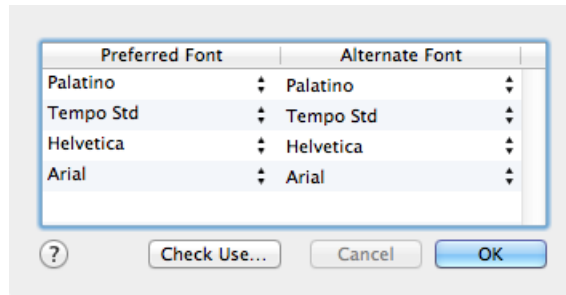
- [43]** This displays a window that shows the text (and style, if any) attached to each function key in the range F1 through F16. You can edit the text attached to any key.

## Fonts...

This displays a panel (Figure 100) through which you can make font substitutions and cleanup unused fonts.

---

## Tools Menu



**FIGURE 100.** Font Management panel

---

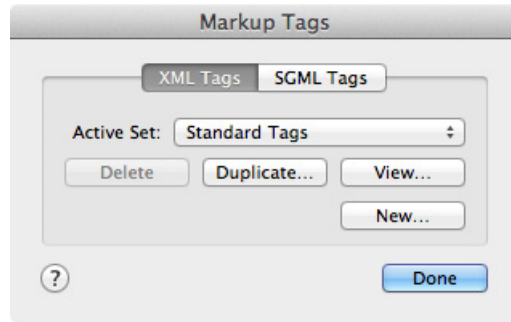
- [212]** Each row in the table displays information about a font used (or previously used) in the index.
- [214]** **Preferred Font.** Type or use the pop-up menu to change the preferred font for the selected row in the list.
- [214]** **Alternate Font.** Use this pop-up menu to change the alternate font for the selected row in the list.
- [213]** **Check Use.** Click this to check that all fonts in the list are currently being used. You can remove unused fonts. (This button is hidden if only the default font and Symbol font are in the list.)

## Markup Tags...

This displays a panel (Figure 101) through which you can inspect and edit tag sets for marking-up different elements of a formatted index.

---

## Tools Menu



**FIGURE 101.** Tag Set Selection panel

---

- [191] XML Tags/SGML Tags.** Determines which kind of markup tags to manage.
- [191] Active Set.** This menu shows all tag sets that Cindex possesses. The chosen item specifies the set on which various operations will be undertaken.
- [191] New...** Cindex creates and opens a new tag set. Cindex asks you to provide a name for the new set. All new tags except Character Tags are empty.
- [191] View.../Edit...** This opens the selected tag set for viewing (if the set is built-in) or editing (if you have created the tag set).
- [191] Duplicate...** This duplicates the selected tag set. Cindex asks you to provide a name for the new set.
- [191] Delete.** Deletes the selected tag set.

### XML Tags

When you view or edit an XML tag set, Cindex displays the panel shown in Figure 102.

---

## Tools Menu

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Standard Tags" with two tabs: "Structure Elements" (selected) and "Other Elements". The "Structure Elements" tab contains the following fields and checkboxes:

Field	Value
Index:	index
Group:	group
Heading:	heading
Level 0:	level1
Level 1:	level2
Level 2:	level3
Level 3:	level4
Level 4:	level5
Level 5:	level6
Level 6:	level7
Level 7:	level8
Level 8:	level9
Level 9:	level10
Level 10:	level11
Level 11:	level12
Level 12:	level13
Level 13:	level14
Level 14:	level15
Page ref:	locator
Crossref:	xref

Below the fields are four checkboxes:

- ☐ Identify Level with Attribute
- ☒ Nest Subheadings
- ☐ Tag Individual References
- ☐ Suppress Leading and Trailing Text in References

At the bottom right are "Cancel" and "OK" buttons. A help icon (?) is at the bottom left.

**FIGURE 102.** XML Tag Set panel

---

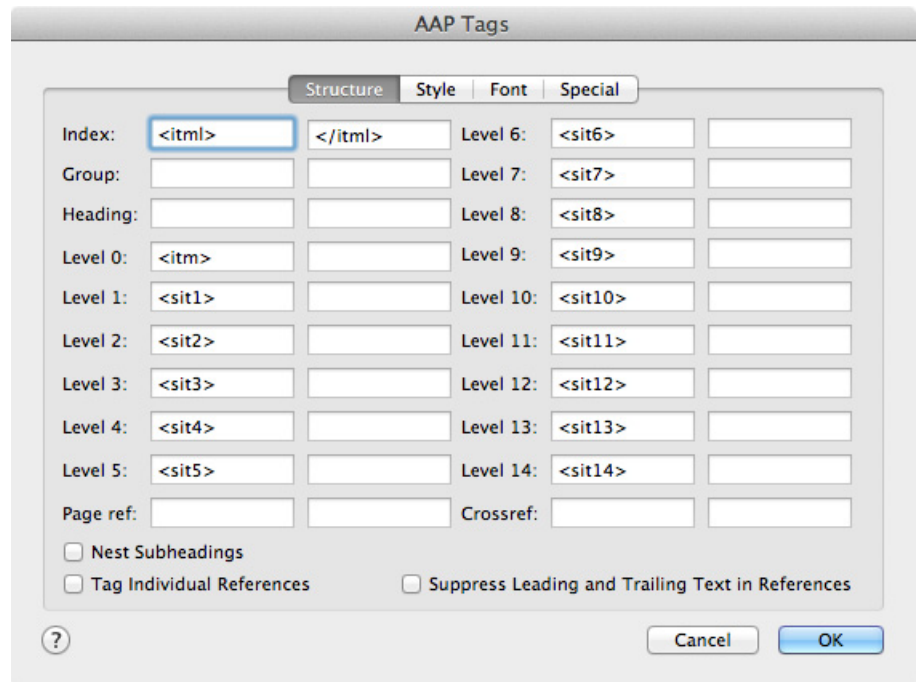
- [195] Structure Elements.** This tab contains tags that identify major structural elements of the index (beginning, end, levels of heading, etc.), together with settings that specify how tags are used.
- [196] Other Elements.** This tab contains tags that identify type styles (italics, boldface, etc.) and fonts used in entries.

### SGML Tags

When you view or edit an SGML tag set, Cindex displays the panel shown in Figure 102.

---

## Tools Menu

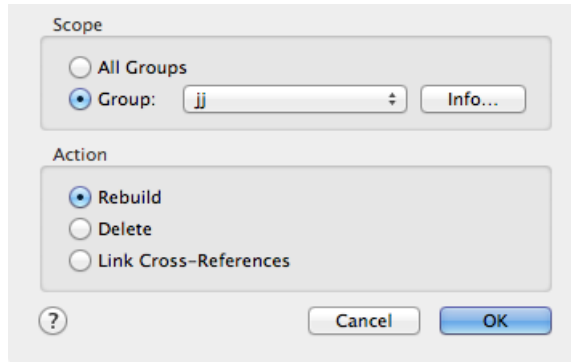


**FIGURE 103.** SGML Tag Set panel

- [195] Structure Tags.** This tab contains tags that identify major elements of the index (beginning, end, levels of heading, etc.).
- [196] Style Tags.** This tab contains tags that identify type styles (italics, boldface, etc.).
- [196] Font Tags.** This tab contains tags that identify different fonts.
- [197] Special Tags.** This tab contains special tags, such as those that represent characters used to form tags, and settings for additional options that determine how Cin-dex produces the tagged document.

## Groups...

This displays a panel (Figure 104) through which you can manage the groups that belong to the active index. This item is dimmed if the index has no groups.



**FIGURE 104.** Manage Groups panel

---

- [223] All Groups/Group.** The chosen item defines the scope of the action—on all groups or the one chosen in the pop-up menu.
- [224] Info...** Click this to obtain information about a particular group.
- [224] Rebuild.** Cindex will rebuild the specified group(s) if it can, using information stored within the group(s) about how they were originally formed.
- [224] Delete.** Cindex will delete the specified group(s).
- [225] Link Cross-References.** Cindex will examine the whole index to find records that contain cross-references to records in the specified group or groups. Records that contain qualifying cross-references are added to the group.



## Index

The following typographical conventions are used in the index: **Tempo** typeface denotes a menu item or an item in a window or panel; SMALL CAPS identify a key or keystroke combination; *f* and *t* identify figures and tables, respectively. The index was typeset from a file produced by Cindex.

---

- *See* Hyphen/Minus (-)  
; *See* Semicolon (;)  
: *See* Colon (:)  
? *See* Question mark (?)  
. *See* Period (.)  
@, in header/footer template, 169  
\*, in patterns, 234–235  
/ *See* Slash (/)  
\ *See* Backslash (\)  
&, in replacement patterns, 240, 241  
# *See* Pound sign (#)  
% *See* Percent symbol (%)  
•, indicating modified record, 26  
+ *See* Plus (+) key; Plus (+) symbol  
≠, in draft index view, 49  
, denoting unknown character, 207  
\$, in patterns, 239  
[ ] *See* Square brackets ([ ])  
| *See* Vertical bar (|)  
– button  
    Abbreviations panel, 299  
    Styled Strings panel, 287  
+ button  
    Abbreviations panel, 299  
    Styled Strings panel, 287  
^, in patterns, 233, 237–238  
← key, 20*t*  
→ key, 20*t*  
↑ key, 20*t*, 66*t*  
↓ key, 20*t*, 66*t*  
[ key, in editing shortcuts, 20*t*  
] key, in editing shortcuts, 20*t*  
< > *See* Angle brackets (< >)  
{ } *See* Braces ({ })

~ *See* Tilde (~)

### A

AAP markup standard, 187

Abbreviation(s)

    page references, 127, 139–140

        month names in, 126

    in spelling check, 102

    spelling out, in sorting, 160–161, 162*f*

    as text entry shortcuts, 43–47. *See also* Abbreviation sets

**Abbreviation Rule** pop-up menu, 285

Abbreviation sets

    icon, 6

    loading, 46

    saving, 45

**Abbreviations** Tools menu item, 298–299

Accented letters, 22

    entering in records, 22

    sorting, 150

Acronyms

    conflict with abbreviations, 47

    exchange text, 38

    in spelling check, 102

Activating inactive index, 11

**Active Set** pop-up menu, 301

**Add** button, Spelling panel, 270

**Add Time** check box, 278

Adding records to index, 18–32. *See also* New records

**Adjust Only** button, 293

Adjusting punctuation, 179–180

Adjusting references, 86–91

    adding volume numbers, 240–241

---

Adjusting references (*Continued*)

- breaking an index into parts, 228
- compound locators, 88, 245–247
- connecting and separating characters, 87
- cumulating and combining indexes, 226
- group of records, 89–91
- movement of chapters or sections, 89–91
- range of records, 88–89
- removing, 89, 246–247
- reorganizing parts, 242–243
- temporary page numbers, 247–248
- using patterns, 245–248

**Adjustment** text box, 293

Adobe InDesign document format, 187, 188

**After** text box, 285

Alignment. *See* Justification

**All Groups/Group** buttons, 304

**All Numbers Title**, 280

All records, viewing, 63

**All Records** View menu item, 272

**All References/Range** buttons, 293

**All Symbols Title**, 280

Alphabetical groups of records

- formatting, 170–172, 171*f*

- SGML markup tag for, 196

- XML markup tag for, 193

Alphabetizing, 149–157. *See also* Sorting

- abbreviations

  - expanding, 162*f*

  - sorting as expanded, 160–161

  - spelling out, 160–161, 162*f*

- ignoring text while

  - characters or words, 158–160, 159*f*, 160*f*

  - leading words in subheadings, 155–156

- language conventions, 145

- letter-by-letter. *See* Letter-by-letter alphabetizing

- modifying basic rules, 154–157

- in page references, 126

- principles, 150–153

- punctuation, 156

- simple. *See* Simple alphabetizing

- symbols and numbers, 162–163, 162*f*

  - as spelled-out, 160–161, 161*f*

- unusual spellings, 160–161, 162*f*

- word-by-word. *See* Word-by-word alphabetizing

**Alphabetizing Rule** pop-up menu, 294

Alphabets, foreign. *See* Accented letters

Alphanumeric sequences, spelling check, 102

**Alter References** Tools menu item, 293, 293*f*

Altering references. *See* Adjusting references

Alternate font, 212–213

**Alternate Font** pop-up menu, 300

Alternative spellings, 96–97, 102

**Always Suggest** check box, 271

Ampersand (&), in patterns, 240, 241

“and,” conditional searches, 75–78, 76*f*

Angle brackets (< >)

- checking entries with, 26

- in exported tab-delimited records, 200

- in exported XML records, 200

- in imported Macrex records, 206

- in imported SKY Index records, 205

- in imported tab-delimited records, 205

- as literal characters, 23, 197

  - sorting, 163

- and page reference separator, 125

- in SGML markup tags, 197

- sorting entries with, 158–160, 159*f*, 160*f*, 163

- sorting page references, 135–136, 136*f*

- in XML tag name, 194

**Append** text box, 277

Arabic numerals. *See* Numerals; Page references

Archive. *See* Cindex Archive

**Around Quotation Marks** check box, 281

**Around Styled Text** check box, 281

**Arrange Alphabetically** check box, 284

**Arrange in Sorted Order** check box, 285

Articles, ignoring in subheading, 155–156

**Ascending** check box, 295

Ascending order, page references, 134

ASCII characters, SGML markup tags for, 197

Association of American Publishers (AAP) markup standard, 187

Asterisk (\*), in patterns, 234–235

At (@) symbol, in header/footer template, 169

**Attributes** buttons

- Find panel, 266

- Replace panel, 269, 269

**Auto** check box, 281

**Auto Save Every** text box, 252

**Auto-Complete Entries** check box, 254

Automatic operations

- Cindex update notification, 5, 12

- complete page range, 37–38

- completion of entries, 35–36

- generation of cross-references. *See* Generated records

---

line spacing, 178  
opening last-used index, 11  
propagation of editing changes, 40–41  
removing leading/trailing spaces in fields, 21, 24, 38  
saving of entries, 9  
switching to draft formatted view, 57  
text style application. *See* Text style, automatically applied  
**Automatically check for updates** check box, 253

## B

Backing up, 9, 10  
Backslash (\)  
    in header/footer template, 169  
    identifying headings beginning with numerals, 250  
        exporting formatted entries, 190  
        exporting records, 202  
    finding, 67, 71  
    index statistics, 217  
    printing, 79–80  
    when replacing text, 84  
as literal character, 23, 169  
    sorting, 163  
locating records in page order sort, 148  
with page reference separator, 125  
in patterns, 233–236, 238–242  
Backup format, Macrex, importing records from, 205–206  
**Bad Cross-Ref** buttons, 255  
**Bad Locator** buttons, 255  
Badly-formed records, import warnings, 206–207  
Bar (|)  
    in custom run-in headings, 176  
    in patterns, 237  
Beep. *See* Warnings  
**Before Multiple** text box, 285  
**Before Single** text box, 285  
Beginning an index, 8–14. *See also* New document  
Beginning of entry  
    ignoring when sorting entries, 159–160, 160f  
    locating record by, 66–68  
Blank fields. *See* Empty record fields  
Blank records. *See* Empty records  
Blocks of entries, selecting, 61–62, 62f  
**Body Style** button, 283  
Boldface italic style  
    SGML markup tag for, 196  
    XML markup tag for, 194  
Boldface style. *See also* Text style

    applying to text, 32–33  
    unavailable in font, 33  
Bookmarks, in embedded index entries, 199  
Boolean operators. *See* Conditional searches  
**Bottom** text box, 276  
Braces ({ })  
    checking entries with, 26  
    in exported tab-delimited records, 200  
    in exported XML records, 200  
    in imported Macrex records, 206  
    in imported SKY Index records, 205  
    in imported tab-delimited records, 205  
as literal characters, 23  
    sorting, 163  
in patterns, 236  
sorting entries with  
    expanding abbreviations and unusual spellings, 160–161, 162f  
    page references, 135, 135f  
    spelling out numbers, symbols and abbreviations, 160–161  
Brackets. *See* Angle brackets (< >); Braces ({ }); Square Brackets ([ ]); Square brackets ([ ]) *]*  
Breaking an index into parts, 227–228  
Breaking fields. *See also* Reconciling headings  
    editing records, 21, 38–39  
    reconciling heading levels, 91–94  
Bullet (•), in draft index view, 26  
Buttons. *See* Toolbar buttons; *named panel buttons*

## C

Capitalizing. *See* Case conversion  
Caret (^), in patterns, 233, 237–238  
**Carry Locators Forward** check box, 254  
Case conversion, 33. *See also* Initial Capital letter; Lowercase letters; Uppercase letters  
    automatic  
        in formatted cross-references, 119–120  
        in formatted headings, 181  
    flipping fields, 39–40  
    using patterns, 241–244  
Case-sensitivity  
    when replacing text, 86  
    searching with, 74  
**Change To** text box  
    in Replace panel, 268  
    in Spelling panel, 270  
Changing preferences. *See* Preferences

- 
- Changing records. *See* Editing records
- Chapters, rearranged, adjusting references for, 89–91
- Character(s). *See also* Keystrokes; Letters of alphabet; Special characters
- count, in longest record, 218–219
  - denoting inclusive page number range, 29, 125
  - filing order, 155
  - fixed number on line, 167
  - forbidden in abbreviations, 46–47
  - for lead indents to subheadings, 189*f*, 190–191
  - number in formatted index, 217
  - permissible
    - in records
      - restricting, 211
      - total number, 18, 210
    - in SGML markup tags, 196
    - in XML markup tags, 194
  - reserved, 23
  - separating multiple cross-references, 107
  - separating multiple page references, 124–125
  - sorting, 150–152. *See also* Sorting
  - space available for, in record, 19
  - unknown, 207
- Character classes, in patterns, 230–232
- Character encoding. *See also* Mac Roman character set; Unicode characters
- importing tab-delimited records, 204–205
  - saving plain text documents, 187–188
  - saving tab-delimited records, 202
- Character palette, 23*f*
- Character Priority** drag list, 295
- Character set, in patterns, 230–232
- Check for Update** Cindex menu item, 257
- Check Headings Below** pop-up menu, 291
- Check Page Refs.** check box, 270
- Check References** Tools menu item, 290–291, 290*f*
- Check (+) symbol. *See* Plus (+) symbol
- Check Use** button, 300
- Checking
- cross-references. *See* Verifying cross-references
  - page references. *See under* Checking records
  - records. *See* Checking records
- Checking for updates to Cindex, 5, 12
- Checking index integrity, 10
- Checking records
- cross-references, 42. *See also* Verifying cross-references
  - importing records, 206–207
  - match to template, 26–27
  - page references, 41–42, 73–74, 128
  - missing or badly formed, 74
  - page order sort, 148
  - for undifferentiated strings, 128
  - typographical errors while adding/editing, 26–27
- Chicago Manual of Style*
- abbreviating page references, rules for, 139–140
  - alphabetizing principles, 153
- Chronological order, sorting subheadings by page reference number, 147–148, 160–161
- Cindex Archive
- icon, 6
  - importing records, 203
  - saving records, 200
- Cindex Archive*, pop-up menu item, Save To panel, 259
- Cindex for DOS, importing records from, 206
- Cindex for Windows, exchanging indexes with, 200
- Cindex Index*, pop-up menu item, Save To panel, 259
- Cindex menu
- Preferences**, 251–256, 252*f*
  - Check for Update**, 258
  - Quit Cindex**, 258
- Cindex Template*, pop-up menu item, Save To panel, 259
- Cindex updates, checking for, 5, 12
- Circular cross-references, detecting, 108–111
- Circumflex (^), in patterns, 233, 237–238
- Clear Ignore List** button, 271
- Clicking. *See also* Double-clicking
- opening contextual menu, 34
  - selecting entries, 61, 62*f*, 110, 128
  - selecting text, 20*t*
- Close** File menu item, 258
- Closing indexes, 9
- Closing punctuation. *See* Trailing punctuation
- Closing type style, adjusting punctuation around, 179
- CMS. *See Chicago Manual of Style*
- Codes. *See* Markup
- Collapse Headings below** pop-up menu, 280
- Collapsing headings, 176
- Collation. *See* Alphabetizing
- Colon (:)
- in pattern character set specification, 230–232
  - sorting, 151
  - ignoring in letter-by-letter sorting, 156
- Colors, labeled records, 51
- Columns. *See* Margins and columns
- Columns** pop-up menu, 276
- Combining fields
-

- 
- adding/editing record, 21
  - reconciling heading levels, 39, 91–94
  - Combining indexes, 225–226
  - Combining page references, 138–139
  - Comma (,)
    - identifying modified headings, 93, 110–111
    - separating page references, 124
    - sorting, 151
      - ignoring in letter-by-letter alphabetizing, 156
  - COMMAND key, in editing shortcuts, 20
    - with RETURN key, 24, 27, 28
  - Commands, summarized, 251–304
  - Comments, in records, 30, 211
  - Compatibility, Mac and Windows documents, 6, 200
  - Complete Page Ranges** check box, 254
  - Completion, of record fields, automatic, 35–36
  - Complex locators. *See* Multi-part references
  - Compound references. *See* Multi-part references
  - Compress** Tools menu item, 296, 296*f*
  - Compressing index entries, 220–223
    - invalidating groups of records, 221
    - restrictions, 64
  - Concatenate with** text box, 285
  - Conditional searches, 75–78
    - “and,” 75–78, 76*f*
    - evaluation order, 77–78
    - grouping elements, 76–77
    - “not,” 75–78, 75*f*
    - “or,” 75–78, 76*f*
  - Configuration. *See* Preferences
  - Confining actions. *See* Scope of operations
  - Conflate Beyond** pop-up menu, 285
  - Conflation of page references, 138–139
    - with suppressed leading parts, 141
  - Conjunctions, ignoring in subheading, 155–156
  - Connecting character, for inclusive range of page numbers, 29, 137–138
  - Connecting Text** text box, 284
  - Connector** text box, 290
  - Consecutive pages, conflating references, 138–139
  - Consolidate References** check box, 296
  - Consolidating references from multiple records, 222–223
  - Containing Locators** text boxes, 297
  - Context-sensitive menus, 34
  - Continuation lines
    - indentation, 176–178
    - in records, 24
    - in saved formatted indexes, 186
  - “Continued” headings, 167–168
  - CONTROL key
    - activating context-sensitive menu, 34
    - in editing shortcuts, 20*t*, 39–40
      - retrieving text from previous record, 37
      - flipping record fields, 39–40
  - CONTROL-click, 33
  - Conversion
    - cross-references to fully-qualified entries, 111–112
    - orphaned subheadings to modifying phrases, 91–94
  - Convert Orphans to Modifying Phrases** button, 292
  - Convert to Fully Qualified Entries** button, 292
  - Copy** button, 278
  - Copy** Edit menu item, 263
  - Copying. *See also* Drag-and-Drop; Duplicating
    - documents, 9
    - embedding index entries, 198–199
    - formatted entries, 198
    - records, 47–49
    - text, 36
  - Correcting entries. *See* Editing records
  - Correcting spelling. *See* Spelling check
  - Count Records** Tools menu item, 297, 297*f*
  - Counting main headings, 211
  - Counting page references
    - in Index Statistics, 216–217
    - undifferentiated, 128
  - Counting records, 218–219
  - Creating
    - abbreviations, 44–45, 44*f*
    - dictionary, spelling check, 97–98
    - groups of records, 63–64
    - indexes. *See* New document
    - markup tag sets, 192
    - records. *See* New records
  - Cross-references, 105–121
    - adding to groups, 225
    - automatically generated. *See* Generated records
    - checking. *See* Verifying cross-references
    - from collapsed headings, 176
    - converting to fully-qualified entries, 111–112
    - count, 217
    - in draft view, 116, 119
    - in embedded index entries, 199
    - entering in records, 29–30, 106, 108
    - flipping record fields, 39–40
    - formatting, 115–121, 115*f*
      - saved settings, 183
-

---

## Cross-references (*Continued*)

- in fully-formatted view, 116, 119
  - general (nonspecific) forms, 107–109
    - automatic styles not applied, 120
    - controlling sorted position, 119
  - identifying, 105–108
  - introductory phrase, 29–30, 105, 107, 120–121
  - from main heading, 116–118
  - position in formatted entries
    - from collapsed headings, 176
    - from main heading, 116–118
    - from subheading, 118
    - as subheadings, 118
  - prefixes, 29–30, 107
  - punctuation
    - between, 106, 107, 220, 222–223
    - before and after, 116, 118
    - in marked-up documents, 194, 196
  - in records imported from Macrex, 206
  - “see” used as other than cross-reference, 108
  - SGML markup tag for, 195
  - sorting, 29–30, 119
    - in draft view, 116
    - general cross references, 107–108
    - with page order sort, 147–148
  - spelling check, 101
  - structure, specifying, 106–108
  - from subheadings, 118
  - in summary view, 59–60
  - suppressing, 119
  - text styles, 29–30, 119–121, 120<sup>f</sup>
  - verifying. *See* Verifying cross-references
  - XML markup tag for, 193
- Cross-References** Document menu item, 283–284, 283<sup>f</sup>
- Cumulating and combining indexes, 225–226
- Curly brackets. *See* Braces ({} )
- Current view, scope of operations. *See* Scope of operations
- Custom tags, document markup, 191–198
- Customize Toolbar** View menu item, 274
- Customizing
- Cindex operations. *See* Preferences
  - toolbars, 18–19, 53
- Cut** Edit menu item, 263
- Cutting and pasting text, 36

## D

- Damaged index, repairing, 10

- Dangling subheadings. *See* Orphaned subheadings
- .dat filename extension, import document, 206
- Database management programs, saving records for, 200–201
- Date
  - in headers and footers, 169, 170
  - index creation/modification, 216
  - month names in references, 126, 129, 131–132
  - rearranging format, with patterns, 244–245
  - record creation/modification, 19<sup>f</sup>; 27
    - finding entries by, 71–72, 250–251
    - replacing entries by, 84–85, 250–251
- Decrement page reference, 38
- Deepest heading level, 218–219
- Default font, 31
  - in headers and footers, 169–170
  - in headings, 181
  - restoring selected text to, 20<sup>t</sup>, 32
  - in search and replace, 84
  - setting, 12
  - SGML markup tag for, 195
  - in style sheets, 183
  - in titles to entry groups, 172
  - XML markup tag for, 194
- Default Font**, pop-up menus, 255
- Default settings, 8, 214–215. *See also* Preferences
  - abbreviation set used, 45
  - index format, 183
  - restoring original, 214–215
  - from stationery pad, 215
- Default size
  - for headings, 181
  - for titles to groups of entries, 171
- DEL key, editing text, 20<sup>t</sup>
- Delay, between keystrokes, 67
- Delete** button
  - Manage Groups panel, 304
  - Markup Tags panel, 301
- Delete** Edit menu item, 264
- DELETE key, editing text, 19, 20<sup>t</sup>, 38, 39
- Deleted** Edit menu item, 265
- Deleted records, 49
  - confining actions to, 251
  - confining search to, 72
    - when replacing text, 85
  - counting, 218–219
  - in draft view, 49
  - excluding from search, 72
    - when replacing text, 85

- 
- in exported document, 202
  - in fully formatted view, 49, 55
  - indicator, 49
    - record window, 19*f*
  - removing from index, 220–222
  - restoring, 49
  - verifying cross-references and, 109
- Deleting
- abbreviations, 45
  - duplicate words, spelling check, 97
  - extra spaces, automatically, 21, 36
  - groups of records, 223*f*; 224–225
  - markup tag sets, 192
  - orphaned subheadings, 93
  - page references, 89, 246–247
  - records, 49. *See also* Deleted records
    - after adjustment of page references, 246
    - text, with replacement, 83
- Delimited format, exporting records in, 200–201
- Delimited Records*, pop-up menu item, Save To panel, 259
- Depth of headings, controlling display of, 58, 59*f*
- Descending order, sorting page references, 134
- Designing markup tags, 191–198
- Desktop publishing. *See* Saving documents
- Destination, copying records, 48
- Diacritical marks. *See* Accented letters
- Dictionaries, spelling check, 95
  - installing additional, 101–102
  - personal, 97–98
- Digits. *See* Numerals
- Discarding
- changes to index, 10, 49, 83, 88, 94
  - changes to record, 34
  - new record
    - duplicate, 48
    - empty, 24
- Displaying. *See* Views and viewing
- Document formats, saving indexes, 186–188
- Document menu, 275–290
  - Margins & Columns**, 275–277, 276*f*
  - Headers & Footers**, 277–278, 277*f*
  - Grouping Entries**, 279, 279*f*
  - Style & Layout**, 280–281, 280*f*
  - Headings**, 282, 282*f*
  - Cross-References**, 283–284, 283*f*
  - Page References**, 284–286, 284*f*
  - Styled Strings**, 286–287, 287*f*
  - Record Structure**, 287–289, 288*f*- Reference Syntax**, 289–290, 289*f*
- Smart Flip Words...**, 290

Documents

  - creating. *See* New document
  - Mac and Windows compatibility, 6
  - opening. *See* Opening documents
  - printing, 78–80
  - saving. *See* Saving documents

Dollar (\$) sign, in patterns, 239

**Don't Apply Prefix Style if it Matches Existing Body Style** check box, 284

DOS, importing records from Cindex for DOS, 206

Double line spacing, 178

Double spaces, removing automatically, 21, 36

Double-clicking, opening entry for editing, 33, 110, 128

Double-posting, 47–49, 108
  - converting cross-references to fully-qualified entries, 111–112

**Draft Format** View menu item, 273

Draft formatted view, 56–59, 57*f*, 59*f*
  - automatic switch to, 57
  - cross-reference display in, 116, 120
  - deleted records in, 49
  - embedding index entries, 198–199
  - labeled records in, 50
  - marked records in, 83
  - modified records in, 26
  - page reference display in, 137, 144
  - record numbers in, showing or hiding, 58*f*
  - toolbar button, 56

Drag-and-drop

  - copying records, 48–49
  - embedding index entries, 198–199
  - formatted entries, 198
  - text, 36–37
    - discarding fonts and styles, 37

Dragging, selecting entries, 61

**Duplicate**

  - button, Markup Tags panel, 301
  - Edit menu item, 264

Duplicate records

  - consolidating references, 222–223
  - removing, 221
  - sorting, 152

Duplicate spaces, removing automatically, 21, 36

Duplicate words, spelling check, 97

---

Duplicating. *See also* Copying  
markup tag sets, 192  
records, 47–49

## E

**Edit** button, 271

Edit menu, 263–273

**Special Characters**, 272

**Redo**, 263

**Undo**, 263

**Cut**, 263

**Copy**, 263

**Paste**, 263

**Delete**, 264

**Select All**, 264

**New Record**, 264

**Edit Record**, 264

**Duplicate**, 264

**Labeled**, 265

**New Abbreviation**, 265

**Deleted**, 265

**Find**, 265–267, 265<sup>f</sup>

**Find Again**, 266

**Replace**, 267–269, 268<sup>f</sup>

**Spelling**, 269–271, 269<sup>f</sup>

**Edit Record** Edit menu item, 264

Editing abbreviations, 44–45

Editing markup tags, 191–198

Editing records, 33–34

    balancing headings. *See* Reconciling headings

    breaking fields, 21, 38–39

    carrying locators, 37–38

    copying records, 47–49

    correcting typographical errors. *See* Spelling check

    cutting and pasting text, 36

    deleting records, 49–50

    draft view for, 57

    dragging-and-dropping text, 36–37

    duplicating records, 47–49

    empty fields, 24, 38

    exchanging (flipping) fields, 39–40

    finding and. *See* Finding entries

    fonts, 31

    function keys, 42

    generated cross-references, 115. *See also* Generated records

    increment/decrement locator, 38

    inserting fields, 21, 38

    joining fields, 39

    keystrokes, 19–21, 20<sup>t</sup>, 27–28, 33–34, 36–40

    labeling records, 50–51

    page references, 37–38

        changing globally. *See* Adjusting References

    propagating changes, 40–41

    removing deleted records. *See* Compressing index entries

    restoring deleted records, 49

    restoring view after, 34

    retrieving a field from last-edited record, 37

    saving changes, 34

    searching and. *See* Finding entries

    shortcuts, 20<sup>t</sup>

    spaces, leading and trailing, 21, 38

    structure, 209–212

    warnings, 41–42

    window. *See* Record window

Elements of an index, 7

    SGML markup tags for, 195–198

    XML markup tags for, 192–194

Embedding index entries, 198–199

Empty record fields, 38

    checking entries for, 24

    finding, 73

    imported, 204

    locator field

        following reference adjustment, 246

        sorting entries in page reference order, 147–148

        warning for, 41

    new entries, 21, 24

    removing, 38

    replacing text with, 83

Empty records

    as new entries, 24

    removing from index, 221

Em-space unit for indentation, 177–178

**Encode Plain Text Documents** buttons, 258

Encoding. *See* Character encoding; Unicode characters

END key, 66<sup>t</sup>

En-dash, connecting character for inclusive ranges, 137

Ending punctuation. *See* Trailing punctuation

End-of-line character, documents for Windows, 190

Enlarging record size, 210

    while importing records, 207

ENTER key, 20<sup>t</sup>. *See also* RETURN key

    new entries, 24

Entering new records, 18–32. *See also* New records

Entity tags. *See* Markup tags, for formatted indexes



---

Entries. *See also* Cross-references; Page references; Record(s)  
automatic completion, 35–36  
changing. *See* Editing records  
counting, 216  
from cross-references, making automatically, 111–112  
defined, 7  
embedding in other documents, 198–199  
filing. *See* Sorting  
making. *See* New records  
printing, 78–80  
**Entry view** pop-up menu, 256  
Erasing entries. *See* Compressing index entries  
Errors. *See also* Warnings  
damaged index, 10  
entering records, 26–27, 41–42  
importing records, 206–207  
typographical. *See* Spelling check  
verifying cross-references, 108–111  
ESC key, 21*t*, 66*t*  
discarding changes to record, 24, 34  
removing highlighting in main view, 61  
European alphabets. *See* Accented letters  
**Evaluate Numbers** check box, 294  
**Evaluate References** check box, 266  
Evaluation order  
conditional searches, 77–78  
page references, 129–136  
Even numbered pages, in index printed by Cindex  
headers and footers, 168–169  
margins, 166  
**Examine All** check box, 295  
Excess page references, 128  
Exchanging documents with other applications, 185–207  
exporting formatted entries, 185–198  
exporting records, 199–203  
importing records, 203–207  
Exchanging (flipping) fields, 39–40  
Exit, from Cindex, 9  
**Expand** Tools menu item, 297  
Expanding abbreviations and unusual spellings, for sorting,  
160–161, 162*f*  
Expanding entries, 219–220  
restrictions, 64  
Exporting, 185–203  
formatted indexes, 185–198  
records, 199–203  
copying between indexes, 48–49  
Expressions

abbreviations for. *See* Abbreviation(s)  
regular. *See* Patterns  
Extensible Markup Language. *See* XML  
**Extra at Alphabetic Groups** text box, 281  
**Extra at Main Headings** text box, 281  
Extra spaces, removing automatically, 21, 36

## F

Facing pages, in indexes printed by Cindex  
headers and footers, 168–169  
margin settings, 166  
**Facing Pages** check box, 276  
**Field** pop-up menu  
Find panel, 266  
Record Structure panel, 288  
Replace panel, 269  
Spelling panel, 270  
Fields. *See* Empty record fields; Locator field; Record Fields  
**File Format** buttons, 257  
File menu, 258–263  
**New**, 258  
**Open**, 258  
**Open Recent**, 258  
**Close**, 258  
**Save**, 258  
**Save To**, 259–261  
**Save A Copy**, 262  
**Revert to Saved**, 262  
**Save Style Sheet**, 262  
**Import**, 262  
**New Group**, 262  
**Save Group**, 263  
**Page Setup**, 262  
**Print**, 263  
Filename extensions  
importing records, 204–206  
saving formatted indexes as tagged text, 198  
Files. *See* New document; Opening documents; Saving documents  
Filing order. *See* Sorting  
Filter, showing/hiding labeled records, 55–56  
**Find Again** Edit menu item, 266  
**Find All** button, Find panel, 266  
**Find** Edit menu item, 265–267, 265*f*  
**Find Orphaned Subheadings** button, 291  
“Finder”  
copying an index, 9

---

“Finder” (*Continued*)

- making stationery pad, 215
- opening an index, 10
- opening stationery pad, 215

**Find/Find Again** button

- Find panel, 266
- Replace panel, 268

Finding entries, 65–78, 69*f*. *See also* Replace

- among deleted records, 72
- among generated records, 72, 115
- among labeled records, 72
- among marked records, 72
- among modified records, 72
- among new records, 72
- among range of records
  - beginning with numerals, 71
  - by modification date, 71–72
  - by modification time, 71–72
  - by record number, 71
- backward search, 74
- by beginning text in headings and subheadings, 66–68, 154
- Boolean searches. *See* Conditional searches
- case sensitive search, 74
- conditional search. *See* Conditional searches
- containing specified text, 69*f*
- continuing previous search, 69–70
- cross-references, automatically generated, 115
- editing found records, 69
- field-specific, 73
- by font, 70–71
- forming groups of records. *See* Groups of records
- keyboard shortcuts for, 65–66
- by locators, 73–74
  - missing, 74
  - multi-part, 73–74, 132–134
- misspellings. *See* Spelling check
- navigation shortcuts, 66*t*
- with page order sort, 148
- by printed index page number, 68
- by record number, 68
- shortcuts, 66*t*
- with text styles, 70–71
- by user ID, 72
- using patterns, 74, 229–239. *See also* Patterns
- whole words only, 74

First (printed) page number, formatting, 170

**First Page Number** text box, 278

Fixed indentation, 177, 178

Flipping fields, 39–40

“Flush right” page references, 142

- SGML markup tag for, 197

Folios, temporary, indexing with, 247–248

Font(s)

- adjusting punctuation around, 179–180
- alternate, 212–214
- changing, 31
- in cross-reference verification, 111
- default. *See* Default font
- discarding
  - in drag-and-drop, 37
  - in paste, 36
- displayed entries, 55
- in drag-and-drop, 37
- in exported records, 200
- finding entries by, 70–71
- for formatted headings, 180–181
- in function key text, 42
- for headers and footers, 169–170
- list, 31
- markup tags for. *See* Font markup tags
- missing, 212–213
- no bold typeface, 33
- no italic typeface, 33
- preferences, 31
- preferred, 212–214
- replacing, 83–84
- restoring default, 32
- size, 31
- substitution, 214
  - imported records from SKY Index, 205
  - importing records, 203
  - opening archive, 203
  - opening XML records, 203
- for titles to groups of entries, 172
- used in index, 213

Font change, adjusting punctuation around, 179–180

Font markup tags, 191

- SGML, 196–197
- XML, 194

**Font** pop-up menu

- Grouping Entries panel, 279
- Headers & Footers panel, 277
- Headings panel, 282

Font size, 31

**Font Tags** tab, 303

Font-based unit for indentation, 177–178

---

**Fonts** Tools menu item, 299–300, 300*f*

Footers. *See* Headers and footers

**For fewer targets than** check box, 292

Forcing sort order

page references, 134–136, 135*f*, 136*f*

special characters for. *See* Angle brackets (< >); Backslash (\);  
Braces ({}); Tilde (~)

Foreign letters. *See* Accented letters

Format

displayed or printed entries. *See* Formatting

document, saving formatted indexes, 186–188

imported records, 203–206

Format menu, 274–275

Formatting, 165–183. *See also* Draft formatted view; Fully formatted view; Saving documents

alphabetical groups, 170–172. *See also* Grouping formatted entries

columns. *See* Margins and columns

cross-references, 115–121, 176

even numbered pages. *See* Even numbered pages, in index printed by Cindex

facing pages. *See* Facing pages, in indexes printed by Cindex

fonts. *See* Font(s)

footers. *See* Headers and footers

grouping entries, 170–172. *See also* Grouping formatted entries

headers. *See* Headers and footers

headings

collapsing, 176

continuing across column and page breaks, in index printed by Cindex, 167–168

font for, 180–181

indentation, 176–178

punctuating, 181

style for, 181

suppressing, 181

indented style, 173–176

left-hand pages. *See* Even numbered pages, in index printed by Cindex

line length, 167

line spacing, 173, 178–179, 178*f*

margins. *See* Margins and columns

odd numbered pages. *See* Odd numbered pages, in index printed by Cindex

page breaks, in index printed by Cindex, 167–168

page numbering, in index printed by Cindex, 170

page references, 136–144. *See also* Page references

punctuation

automatic adjustments, 179–180

cross-references, 116, 118

headings, 181

page references, 141–142

quotation marks, 179

right-hand pages. *See* Odd numbered pages, in index printed by Cindex

run-in style, 173–175

saving settings, 183

default, 215

spacing, 173, 178–179. *See also* Margins and columns

style of index, 173–176

style sheets, 183

text style. *See* Text style

units. *See* Units of measurement

**From Main Heading** tab, 283

**From Subheading** tab, 283

**Full Format** View menu item, 273

Full point. *See* Period (.)

“Full record” warning, 19

Fully formatted view, 53–56, 54*f*. *See also* Formatting

continuing headings across column and page breaks when printing, 167–168

cross-references, 116

deleted records, 49, 55

entry statistics, 216–217

hiding records, 55–56

labeled records, 50

page references, 136–144

printing, 78

saving formatted indexes, 185–198

suppressing reserved characters, 163

toolbar button, 53

Fully-qualified entries, converting cross-references to, 111–112

Function keys, 42

**Function Keys** Tools menu item, 299

## G

General (nonspecific) cross-references. *See* Cross-references, general

**General** text box, 289

**Generate from File** button, 292

**Generate See References Only** check box, 292

Generated records

confining search to, 72

from conversion of cross-references, 112

counting, 218–219

---

Generated records (*Continued*)

- cross-references as, 113–115, 114*f*
  - confining actions to, 251
  - confining search to, when replacing text, 85
  - finding, 72, 115
  - removing, 222
- excluding from search, 72
  - when replacing text, 85

Global actions, 249–251. *See also* Scope of operations

**Go To** View menu item, 272, 272*f*

**Greatest Range** text box, 290

Greek letters. *See* Symbols

**Group** View menu item, 273

Grouping elements, conditional search, 76–77

**Grouping Entries** Document menu item, 279, 279*f*

Grouping formatted entries, 170–172

- line spacing, 178–179
- saved settings, 183
- SGML markup tag for, 195
- titles for, 170
- XML markup tag for, 193

**Grouping Method** pop-up menu, 279–280

Groups of records, 63–65

- adding cross-references to, 225
- adjusting references in, 89–91
- creating
  - by duplicating records, 48
  - from search results, 70
  - from selected records, 63–64
- deleting, 223*f*; 224–225
- information on, 224
- invalid, 220, 221, 224
- limitations, 64
- permanent, 64–65, 70
- rebuilding, 220, 224
- sorting, 64
- temporary, 63–64, 70
- verifying cross-references, 109
- viewing, 63, 64–65

**Groups** Tools menu item, 303, 304*f*

Gutter, between columns, 166, 167

**Gutter** text box, 276

## H

Half flip, 39–40

*Hart's Rules*, 139–140

Hash (#) mark. *See* Pound sign

Header (alphabetic group), 170–172

**Header/Footer** tabs, 277

Headers and footers

- in index printed by Cindex, 168–170
- omitting in saved documents, 186
- saved settings for, 183

**Headers & Footers** Document menu item, 277–278, 277*f*

Headings, 7. *See also* Main heading; Modified headings; Sub-heading(s)

- confining actions to, 250
  - when replacing text, 86
  - search, 73
  - spelling check, 100–101
- "continued," in index printed by Cindex, 167–168
- entering in records, 19–22
- finding entries by, 66–67, 154
- formatting. *See* Formatting, headings
- level of deepest, 218–219
- reconciling levels, 91–94
- record structure, 16
- SGML markup tags for, 195–196
- suppressing, 181
- XML markup tags for, 193

**Headings** Document menu item, 282, 282*f*

Help, 5

Help button, in panels, 5

Hidden records, 55–56, 250

Hidden text

- controlling alphabetizing, 160–161
- embedded index entries as, 199

**Hide by Attribute** View menu item, 273

**Hide Toolbar** View menu item, 274

Hiding. *See also* Suppressing

- characters or words, sorting entries, 158–160, 159*f*, 160*f*
- deleted records, 49, 54
- record numbers, in draft formatted view, 58, 58*f*
- records, 55–56, 250

Highlighting, selecting entries, 61–62, 62*f*

**Hold Higher Values** check box, 293

HOME key, 66*t*

HyperText Markup Language (HTML) markup standard, 187

Hyphen/Minus (-)

- in chapter-page numbering, 125
- denoting inclusive range of pages, 125, 137–138
- in patterns
  - changing case of text, 242
  - inside square brackets ([ ]), 232–233
- in replacement patterns, changing case of text, 242

---

sorting entries with, 151  
ignoring in word-by-word alphabetizing, 156

## I

Icons, document types, 6  
ID. *See* User ID  
Identical records. *See* Duplicate records  
Identifier, user, stamping records with, 27  
Identifying the indexer. *See* User ID  
**Ignore All** button, 270  
**Ignore Alphanumerics** check box, 271  
**Ignore -/** check box, 294  
**Ignore .,:;** check box, 294  
**Ignore Different Labels** check box, 297  
**Ignore Lowest** check box, 295  
**Ignore Parenthetical Endings** check box, 295  
**Ignore Parenthetical Phrases** check box, 294  
**Ignore Style & Case** check box, 254  
**Ignore Subheading Prefixes** text box, 295  
**Ignore Words in CAPS** check box, 271  
Ignoring text  
    during sorting  
        characters or words, 158–160, 159*f*, 160*f*  
        leading words in subheadings, 155–156  
        lowest subheading, 148–149  
        segments of page references, 131–132  
        specified fields, 146–147  
    during spelling check, 102  
        specified fields, 100–101  
**Import** File menu item, 262  
Importing records, 203–207  
Inactive indexes, 11  
Inches. *See* Units of measurement  
**Include Deleted Records** check box, 260  
**Include Sorting Information when Embedding Entries** check box, 258  
Inclusive page ranges. *See* Range of page references  
Increment page reference, 38  
Incremental indentation, 177–178  
Indentation, formatted entries, 176–178, 176*f*  
    in exported documents, 186  
    tab characters for, 190–191  
**Indentation** type, 281  
**Indented** button, 280  
Indented index style, 54*f*, 173–176  
    cross-references in, location and style, 117–119  
    draft view, 57, 57*f*  
    overriding, in individual entries, 176

    “runback” style, 175  
    toolbar button, 54  
*InDesign*, pop-up menu item, Save To panel, 259  
InDesign document tags, 187  
Index, icon, 6  
Index pages, printed by Cindex, 78–80  
    numbering, in headers and footers, 169, 170  
    ranges  
        finding entries on, 68  
        saving formatted entries for, 189

**Index Statistics** Tools menu item, 298, 298*f*

Indexer, identifying, 12

Indicators, record window, 19

**Info** button, 304

Information

    about index, 215–219

    about record groups, 224

Initial capital letter, 33

    cross-references, 120

    headings, 181

    pattern for conversion, 243–244

Initial page number, in index printed by Cindex, 170

Initial settings. *See* Default settings

Inserting

    abbreviations, 46

    fields, 21, 38

    text, function keys for, 42

Inside margins, 166

Insufficient record space

    adjusting references, 88

    entering text, 19–21

    reconciling heading levels, 94

    when replacing text, 83

Intelligent flip, 39–40

International Standards Organization (ISO), alphabetizing  
    principles, 153

Invalid record groups, 220, 221

ISO alphabetizing principles, 153

Italic style. *See also* Text style

    applying to text, 32–33

    unavailable in font, 33

## J

Joining fields, reconciling heading levels, 39, 91–94

Justification

    headers and footers, in index printed by Cindex, 169

    page references, 142

---

## K

Keyboard preferences, 67  
Keystrokes. *See also* Accented letters; Symbols  
    adjusting time delay between, 67  
    for editing, 19–21, 20*t*  
    for finding entries, 66  
    function keys, 42

## L

**Label Colors** buttons, 256

**Labeled** Edit menu item, 265

Labeled records, 50–51  
    colors for, 50–51  
    confining actions to, 251  
    confining search to, 72  
        when replacing text, 85  
    consolidating references, 222  
    counting, 218–219  
    excluding from search, 72  
        when replacing text, 85  
    finding, 72  
    formatted display, 55  
    indicator, 19*f*

Landscape orientation, printing in, 78

Language  
    collation convention for sorting, 145  
    lowercase vs. uppercase collation order, 150  
    for spelling check, 101  
        choosing, 101  
        installing dictionary, 101–102

Language and Text settings, System Preferences, 170

**Language** pop-up menu, 271, 294

**Last subheading field is required** check box, 288

Last-saved index, reverting to, 10, 49, 83, 88, 94

Last-used index, automatically opening, 11

Layout. *See* Formatting; Headers and footers; Indented index  
    style; Margins and columns; Run-in index style; Views and  
    viewing

**Lead Punctuation** check boxes, 286

**Lead** text box

    Reference Syntax panel, 289

    Style & Layout panel, 281

Leading characters

    finding records by, 66–67

    ignoring while sorting entries, 159–160, 160*f*

Leading punctuation, heading prefix, 181

**Leading text**, text box, 282

**Left/Center/Right** text boxes, 277–278

Left-hand pages. *See* Even numbered pages, in index printed by  
    Cindex

**Left/Inside** text box, 276

Length

    of index, 216–218

    of index record, 210

    of lines, formatted entries, 167

    of text, new entries, 24

Letter-by-letter alphabetizing, 149, 152–154. *See also* Alphabet-  
    izing

    overriding rules for, 158–161

Letters of alphabet. *See also* Character(s)

    accented. *See* Accented letters

    counting records falling under, 218–219

    grouping entries under, 170–172

    sorting, 150

**Level** pop-up menu, Headings panel, 282

Levels. *See* Headings; Record fields

Limits. *See also* Maximum number

    abbreviations, 44

    record size and structure, 209–212

Line(s)

    length, formatted index, 166–167

    number, 216

    spacing, 173, 178–179

Line-breaks

    run-over lines, omitting in saved documents, 186

    in text-only documents, saving formatted indexes, 188

**Link Cross-References** button, 304

Linking cross-references, 225

**Load Set** button, 298

Locating records. *See* Finding entries

**Locator** check boxes, 286

Locator field, 17, 27–29

    confining search to, 73

        when replacing text, 86

    cross-references in, 29–30, 106, 108, 119

    empty, 41

    ignoring while sorting entries, 160

    imported records, 204

    page references in, 29, 123–124, 127

    sorting on, 147–148

    spelling check, 101

Locators. *See* Cross-references; Page references; Multi-part refer-  
    ences

Longest record, 218–219

---

limiting, 210  
Lowercase letters. *See also* Case-sensitivity  
collation order, 150  
conversion to or from uppercase. *See* Case conversion  
in page references, 126  
sorting, 150

## M

Mac Roman character set, 188, 201, 202, 204

Macintosh character set, 201, 204

imported records, 204

**Macintosh** or **Windows** buttons, 261

Macrex, importing records from, 205–206

Macros. *See* Abbreviation(s); Function keys

Main heading(s). *See also* Headings

cross-references from, 116–118

finding records by, 66–68, 154

SGML markup tags for, 195–196

in summary view, 59

unique, number of, 216

XML markup tags for, 193

**Main view** pop-up menu, 256

Main window. *See also* Views and viewing

duplicating records from, 47–48

navigation shortcuts, 66*t*

Malformed locators, 41

finding, 74

**Manage Cross-References** Tools menu item, 292

Margins and columns, 165–168

headings repeated at column breaks, in index printed by Cin-  
dex, 167–168

omitting column breaks, when saving formatted indexes, 186

saved settings, 183

**Margins and Columns** Document menu item, 275–277, 276*f*

Marked records

after adjusting references, 88

after reconciling heading levels, 94

after repairing index, 10

after replacing text, 83

confining search to, 85

confining actions to, 251

confining search to, 72

counting, 218–219

excluding from search, 72

when replacing text, 85

finding, 72

Markup tags, for formatted indexes, 186, 187

built-in, 192

creating sets, 192

examining and modifying, 192–198

invoking, 192

removing, 192

**Markup Tags** Tools menu item, 300–303, 301*f*

Master indexes, cumulating and combining indexes for, 225–  
226

**Match Case** check box

Find panel, 267

Replace panel, 269

**Match Pattern** check box

Find panel, 267

Replace panel, 269

**Match** text box, 289

**Match Whole Word** check box

Find panel, 267

Replace panel, 269

**Matching Pattern** text box, 293

**Max chars** text box, 288

**Max fields** pop-up menu, 288

**Maximum characters in a record** text box, 288

Maximum number. *See also* Limits

characters in a field, 212

characters in record, 210

fields in records, 210–211

in page reference, 41–42

page references per entry, 128

**Maximum Value** text box, 290

.mbk filename extension, import document, 205

Measurement, units. *See* Units of measurement

**Measurement Unit** text box, 253

Medical dictionary, 101

Menu(s). *See also* entries for specific menus

context-sensitive, 34

items (summarized), 251–302

Microsoft Word, embedding index entries in, 198–199

Millimeters. *See* Units of measurement

**Min chars** text box, 288

**Min fields** pop-up menu, 288

Minimum number

characters in a field, 212

fields in records, 211

export documents, 202

target entries, for verifying cross-references, 111

**Minimum Number of Fields** text box, 261

Minus (-) key, 40. *See also* Hyphen/Minus (-)

---

## Mismatch

- angle brackets or braces, 26
- parentheses or square brackets, 26
- quotation marks, 26

## **Mismatch to Template** buttons, 255

## Missing font, 212–213

## Missing locators

- finding, 74
- warning, 41

## Misspellings, finding. *See* Spelling check

## Modification date. *See also* Modified records

- confining actions by, 250–251
- finding entries by, 71–72
- index, 216
- replacing text by, 85

## Modified headings

- reconciling heading levels, 91–94
- verifying cross-references to, 110–111

## Modified records. *See also* Modification date

- bullet (•) denoting, 26
- confining search to, 72
  - when replacing text, 85
- counting, 218–219
- excluding from search, 72
  - when replacing text, 85
- finding, 72
- new entries and, 26
- when replacing text, 85
- spelling check, 100

## **Modifying Phrases Follow** text box, 292

## Month names, in locators, 126, 129, 131–132

- rearranging format of, 244–245

## Mouse. *See* Clicking; Double-clicking

## Mouse pointer, 62

## Moving chapters or sections, adjusting references following, 89–91

## Moving through index. *See* Navigation

## Multi-part references, 123*f*, 125–126

- adjusting parts, 88, 245–247
- evaluation order for sorting, 131–132
- finding entries, 74, 132–134
- formatting, 140–141
  - abbreviating, 139–140
  - conflating, 140–141
  - suppressing repeated parts, 140–141
- patterns, 245–247
- type styles, 142–143

## Multiple columns. *See* Margins and Columns

## Multiple indexes, concurrent work on, 10–11

## Multiple references

- consolidating in single record, 222–223
- single record for each, 219–220
- sorting cross-references, 119
- sorting page references, 134

## Multiple spaces, in records, 36

## N

## **Name** text box, 288

## Names

- index name in headers and footers, 169
- months, in page references, 126
- proper, when reconciling headings, 93

## Naming

- dictionary, spelling check, 98
- documents, saving formatted indexes, 188–189
- markup tag sets, 192
- new indexes, 8, 215
- permanent groups, 64–65
- record fields, 211

## Navigation, 65–68, 66*t*

- record entry, 27–28
- searching backward through index, 74
- shortcuts, finding entries, 66–68, 66*t*

## **Never/At New Page/At New Column** buttons, 277

## **New Abbreviation** Edit menu item, 265

## **New** button, 271

- Markup Tags panel, 301

## New document. *See also* Saving documents

- index, 8
  - initial settings, 214–215
  - from stationery pad, 215
- personal dictionary, spelling check, 97–98

## **New** File menu item, 258

## **New Group** File menu item, 262

## **New Record** Edit menu item, 264

## New records

- adding to index, 18–32. *See also* Editing records
  - display options, 26
- confining actions to, 251
- excluding from search, 72
- identifying in draft view, 26
- replacing text in, 85
- searching among, 72
- spelling check among, 100
- viewing, 63



---

**New Records** View menu item, 272

**New Set** button, 299

“not,” conditional searches, 75–78, 75*f*

**Not** check box, 267

Notational conventions, *User's Guide*, 5

Notes, in records, 30, 211

Number(s). *See also* Numerals

characters in fields, 212

characters in record, 18, 210

available, 19

longest, 218–219

fields in records, 17–18

exporting records, 202

importing records, 204, 207

limits, 210–211

pasting records, 49

formatted entries, 216

index statistics, 216–218

page references and cross-references, 217

in patterns, 236

records, 218–219

Roman. *See* Roman numerals

Numbering

printed index pages, 169, 170

records, 16

**Numbers & Symbols Title**, 280

Numerals. *See also* Page references; Roman numerals

in alphabetizing, 151–152

evaluating, 157

filing order vs. letters and symbols, 155

filing under, 162–163

spelling out, 160–161, 161*f*

grouping formatted entries under, 171

headings beginning with

finding by, 67–68, 71, 84

printing, 79–80

spelling check, 99–100

identifying subpatterns, 234

ignoring in spelling check, 102

## O

Obligatory field, for special text, 30, 211

Odd numbered pages, in index printed by Cindex

headers and footers, 168–169

margins, 166

**On Closing Window** buttons, 255

**Only/And/Or** pop-up menu, 267

On-screen help, 5

**Open** File menu item, 258

**Open Last Index** radio button, 252

Open... panel, on startup, 11

Opening documents. *See also* New document

abbreviation, 46

archive, 203

index, 9

automatically on startup, 11

index template, 215

stationery pad, 215

style sheet, 183

OPTION key

drag-and-drop text, 37

in editing shortcuts, 20*t*–21*t*

forming special characters, 22

modifying PAGE DOWN, 27, 28, 47

**Options** button

Save To panel, 260–261, 260*f*, 261*f*

Spelling panel, 270–271, 271*f*

“or,” conditional searches, 75–78, 76*f*

**Order** drag list, 295

Ordering entries. *See* Sorting

Orientation, printing, 78

Orphaned subheadings

converting to modified heading, 93

finding, 92

removing, 93

**Other Elements** tab, 302

Outside margins, 166

Overflow, text in record, 19–21

Overriding

abbreviations, expansion of, 47

font, 55

sorting rules. *See* Sorting

suppression of redundant headings, 175

type size, 55

Overview, Cindex, 1–4

## P

Page breaks

“continued,” headings, in index printed by Cindex, 167–168

omitting, when saving formatted indexes, 186

PAGE DOWN key, 20*t*, 27–28, 34, 66*t*

Page field. *See* Locator field

- 
- Page layout  
for exported formatted index, 185–186  
for indexes printed by Cindex. *See* Headers and footers; Margins and columns
- Page locators. *See* Multi-part references; Page references
- Page numbers  
on index pages printed by Cindex, 169, 170  
in records. *See* Page references  
temporary folios, compiling index from, 247–248
- Page order sort, 147–148  
shortcut, 149
- Page proofs  
adjusting references to rearranged sections and chapters, 89–91  
average entry count per page, 219  
temporary folios, compiling index with, 247–248
- Page references, 123–144. *See also* Multi-part references  
abbreviating, 29, 127, 139–140  
carrying forward into page field, 37  
changing. *See* Adjusting references  
checking, 41–42, 74  
for undifferentiated strings, 128  
conflating, 138–139, 141  
counting, 217  
in cumulative indexes, 225–226  
deleting. *See* Adjusting references  
in embedded index entries, 199  
entering in records, 21, 28–29  
finding, 74  
multi-part, 132–134  
formatting, 136–144  
saved settings, 183  
forms, 123–126  
ignoring  
sorting entries, 160  
spelling check, 100  
inclusive range. *See* Range of page references  
increment/decrement shortcut, 38  
letters in, 126  
malformed, 41  
finding, 74  
markup tag for, with leading/trailing punctuation, 196  
maximum per entry, 128  
maximum value, 41  
missing, 41  
after altering references, 246  
month names, 126, 131–132  
multiple, individual records for, 219–220  
multiple in entry  
counting, 128  
display order, 143–144  
punctuation  
denoting inclusive range, 125  
preceding, 141–142  
separating successive, 29, 124–125, 220, 222–223  
in SGML marked-up documents, 196  
in XML marked-up documents, 194  
range. *See* Range of page references  
recognizing, 123–126  
reorganizing via patterns, 242–243  
Roman numerals, 126  
SGML markup tag for, 196  
sorting entries by, 129–136  
spelling check, 101  
suppressing, 144  
temporary, 247–248  
text styles, 127–128, 142–143  
too many undifferentiated, 128  
warnings, 41  
XML markup tag for, 193  
with leading/trailing punctuation, 194
- Page References** Document menu item, 284–286, 284*f*
- Page setup, for printing, 78
- Page Setup** File menu item, 262
- Page size, 78
- PAGE UP key, 21*t*, 27–28, 34, 66*t*
- Pagination. *See* Page numbers
- Paper, for printing, 78
- Paragraph style. *See* Run-in index style
- Paragraphs  
end of, SGML markup tag, 197  
imported records prepared on word processor, 204  
styles, for markup, 186
- Parentheses  
exchange text content with acronym, 38  
ignoring contents, in sort, 156  
mismatched, in records, 26
- Parentheses ( ( ) ), defining subpatterns, 233–234
- Paste** Edit menu item, 263
- Pasting  
records, 48–49  
text, 36
- Patterns, 229–248  
adjusting references, 88, 245–248  
character sets, 230–232  
finding entries, 74

- 
- minimum match, 236
  - pre-formed elements, 239
  - ready-made, 239
  - replacing text, 86, 239–245
  - sample, 239
  - special characters in
    - finding text, 230–239
    - replacing text, 241–242
  - specifying record structure, 212
  - subpatterns, 233–234, 242–245
  - Percent symbol (%)
    - in header/footer template, 169
    - representing alpha group header, 171
  - Period (.)
    - in patterns, 230
      - with asterisk (\*), 235
      - within square brackets ([ ]), 233
    - sorting, 151
      - letter-by-letter alphabetizing, 156
  - Permit no more than *N* locators** text box, 291
  - Personal dictionaries, spelling check, 97–98
  - Personal Dictionary** pop-up menu, 271
  - Phrases
    - abbreviations representing. *See* Abbreviation(s)
    - attaching to function keys, 42
    - finding, 68–78, 69*f*
    - replacing. *See* Replace
    - type style automatically applied to, 182–183
  - Picas. *See* Units of measurement
  - Plain text
    - in exported records, 200–201
    - in imported records, 204–205
    - page references, 126
    - removing styles, 33
    - saving formatted indexes, 187–188
  - Plain Text*, pop-up menu item, Save To panel, 259
  - Plus (+) character, in patterns, 235
    - replacing text, 241–242
  - Plus (+) key, 20*t*, 39–40
  - Plus (+) symbol, in drag list, 130, 146
  - Pointer, mouse, 62
  - Points. *See* Units of measurement
  - Portrait orientation, printing in, 78
  - Position** pop-up menu, 283
  - Pound sign (#)
    - in header/footer template, 169, 170
    - identifying marked record, 83, 88
  - Preferences. *See also* Default settings
    - adding records, 24
    - auto-completion of entries, 36
    - automatic saving interval, 12
    - editing records, 25*f*, 36–38, 40–42, 57
    - font, 31
    - general, 11–13, 11*f*
    - labeled records, 51
    - new indexes, 214–215
    - new record display, 26
    - restoring original, 215
    - toolbars, 13–14
  - Preferences** Cindex menu item, 251–257, 252*f*
  - Preferred font, 212–214
  - Preferred Font** pop-up menu, 300
  - Prefix Style** button, 283
  - Prefix text
    - for cross-references, choosing style for, 119–121
    - for headings, 181
  - Prefix** text box, 283
  - Prepositions
    - flipping record fields with, 39–40
    - ignoring in subheading, 155–156
  - Preserve Modified Headings** check box, 292
  - Print** File menu item, 263
  - Printed pages. *See* Index pages
  - Printing, 78–80
    - page setup, 78
    - specified entries, 79–80
  - Prompt for User ID** check box, 252
  - Propagate Changes** check box, 254
  - Propagating changes, 40–41
  - Protect Names** check box, 292
  - Protecting names, when reconciling heading levels, 93
  - Punctuation
    - adjusting automatically, 179–180
    - cross-references, 106, 107, 116
    - expanding abbreviations, 46
    - headings, 181
    - page references, 124–125, 141–142
    - patterns for, 231
    - in sorting, 151, 156
    - spelling check, 96
- Q**
- QuarkXPress*, pop-up menu item, Save To panel, 259
  - QuarkXPress document format, 187
-

---

Question mark (?), in patterns, 235–236

finding minimum match, 239

**Quit Cindex** Cindex menu item, 258

Quitting Cindex, 9

Quotation marks

closing punctuation around, 179

expanding abbreviations, 46

mismatched, 26

## R

**Range** button, 249–250

Range of page references, 125

abbreviating, 127, 139–140

adjusting, 88–89

automatically completing, 37–38

character denoting, 29

checking, 42

conflating, 138–139, 141

in embedded index entries, 199

entering, 29

formatting, 137–140

limiting span, 42

searching among multi-part references, 132–134

Range of records

checking spelling in, 99–100

confining actions to, 249–251

counting among, 219

exporting, 201–202

printing, 79–80

replacing text in, 84–85

saving as formatted index, 189–190

searching in, 71–72

Reading records (importing), 206–207

**Rebuild** button, 304

Rebuilding groups of records, 70, 220, 224

Recent documents, opening, 10

**Recognize cross-references in locator field only** check box, 289

**Reconcile Headings** button, 291

**Reconcile Headings** Tools menu item, 291–292, 291*f*

Reconciling headings, 39, 91–94

proper names, protecting, 93

restrictions, 64, 148

Record(s), 7, 17*f*

comments in, 30, 211

counting, 218–219

average number per manuscript page, 220

damaged, 10

deleted. *See* Deleted records

editing. *See* Editing records

empty. *See* Empty records

exporting, 199–203

fields. *See* Record fields

finding. *See* Finding entries

hidden, 55–56

new. *See* New records

obligatory subheading field, 30, 211

overview, 15–18

range. *See* Range of records

removing permanently, 220–223

saving. *See* Saving

selecting, 61–62, 62*f*

size. *See* Record size

sorting. *See* Sorting

special text fields in, 30, 211

structure, 16–18, 17*f*, 209–212

default settings, 214–215

viewing. *See* Views and viewing

web address in, 30–31, 211

Record fields, 16–18

confining actions to

replacing, 86

searching, 73

spelling check, 100–101

content restriction, 18

empty. *See* Empty record fields

evaluation order, sorting entries, 145–149

exchanging/flipping, 39–40

inserting, 21, 38

joining, 39, 91–94

length, 18, 212

naming, 17, 211

number, 17–18

in exported records, 202

limits, 210–211

obligatory, 30, 211

retrieving from last-edited record, 37

splitting, 38–39, 91–94

Record number, 16

change after compressing entries, 221

with deepest heading, 218–219

exporting records by, 202

longest record, 218–219

showing or hiding, in draft view, 58, 58*f*

specifying records to find, 250

viewing records by, 61

- 
- Record size, 18  
    changing, 210  
    consolidating references from multiple records and, 222–223  
    importing records and, 207  
    longest record, 218–219  
    transferring records between indexes and, 49
- Record Structure** Document menu item, 287–289, 288*f*
- Record window, 17*f*, 18–22, 19*f*. *See also* Editing records; New records  
    buttons. *See* Toolbar buttons  
    closing, 24–25  
    duplicating records, 47–48  
    keyboard shortcuts in, 20–21  
    moving through entries, 27–28  
    status line, 19, 49  
    verifying cross-references in, 110
- Recto pages. *See* Odd numbered pages, in index printed by Cindex
- Redo** Edit menu item, 263
- Redundant subheadings. *See* Orphaned subheadings
- Reference Syntax** Document menu item, 289–290, 289*f*
- References. *See* Cross-references; Multi-part references; Page References
- Refreshing groups, 70
- Regular expressions. *See* Patterns
- Remove Deleted Records** check box, 296
- Remove Duplicate Spaces** check box, 254
- Remove Duplicated Records** check box, 296
- Remove Empty Records** check box, 296
- Remove Generated Records** check box, 296
- Remove Orphans** button, 292
- Remove References** button, 293
- Removing  
    abbreviations, 45  
    orphaned subheadings, 93  
    record groups, 223*f*; 224–225  
    records, 220–223, 221*f*  
        generated, 115, 222  
    redundant subheadings, 91–94  
    references to entries in selected volumes, 246–247  
    references to specified page numbers, 89  
    spaces, automatically, 36  
    text, by replacing, 83
- Renumbering. *See also* Adjusting references  
    indexed (proof) pages, 247–248  
    records, following index compression, 221
- Repagination of text, changing entries following, 247–248
- Repair index, 10
- Repeating headings  
    after page or column break, in index printed by Cindex, 167–168  
    in formatted display, 175
- Replace, 81–86. *See also* Finding entries  
    fonts, 83–84  
    removing text, 83  
    repeating search, 82  
    styles, 83–84  
    temporary page numbers, 247–248  
    undoing changes, 83  
    using patterns with, 86, 239–245
- Replace All** button, Replace panel, 268
- Replace** Edit menu item, 267–269, 268*f*
- Require at Least *N* Matches** text box, 291
- Require Exact Matches** check box, 291
- Reserved characters. *See* Angle brackets (< >); Backslash (\); Braces ({}); Tilde (~)
- Reset** button  
    Find panel, 266  
    Replace panel, 268  
    Spelling panel, 270
- Restoring  
    deleted records, 49  
    index to last-saved version, 10, 49, 83, 88, 93  
    original Cindex settings, 215
- RETURN key, 20*t*  
    breaking fields, 21, 38–39  
    expanding abbreviation, 47  
    inserting fields, 38  
    new entries, 21, 24  
    opening entry for editing, 69, 110, 128
- Return to Entry Point** check box, 254
- Revert to Saved** File menu item, 262
- Reverting  
    edited record, 34  
    to last-saved index, 10, 49, 83, 88, 94
- Rich Text Format*, pop-up menu item, Save To panel, 259
- Rich Text Format (RTF), 186–187  
    for embedding index entries, 198–199
- Right justified page references, 142  
    SGML markup tag for, 197
- Right Justify** check box, 285
- Right mouse button, 34
- Right-click, 34
- Right-hand pages. *See* Odd numbered pages
- Right/Outside** text box, 276
-

---

Roman numerals, 131  
in headers and footers, 170  
in locators, 126, 131

RTF. *See* Rich Text Format (RTF)

**RTF/Quark/InDesign/Plain Text** buttons, 257

**Run-in** button, 280

Run-in index style  
cross-references, 118  
formatting, 173–175  
for specified entries, 176  
toolbar button, 54

Running head  
in index printed by Cindex, 167–168  
omitted in saved formatted index, 186

Runover lines. *See* Continuation lines

**Runover** text box, 281

## S

Sample patterns, 239

**Save A Copy** File menu item, 262

**Save** File menu item, 258

**Save Group** File menu item, 262

**Save Style Sheet** File menu item, 262

**Save To** File menu item, 259–261

Saved index, reverting to, 10, 49, 83, 88, 94

Saving documents  
abbreviations, 46  
archives, 200  
for Cindex for Windows, 200  
exporting records, 199–203  
formatted indexes, 185–198  
Adobe InDesign, 187, 188  
part of index, 189–190  
plain text documents, 188  
Rich Text Format, 186–187  
tagged text. *See* Markup tags, for formatted indexes  
for Windows, 190  
XPress tagged, 187  
style sheet, 183

Saving index entries, 24–25  
automatically, at regular intervals, 9, 12  
changes to, 34

SBL (Society of Biblical Literature), alphabetizing principles, 153

Scope of operations, 249–251  
counting records, 219  
entry statistics, 219

exporting records, 201–202  
finding entries, 71–72  
replacing text, 84–85  
saving formatted indexes, 189–190  
spelling check, 99–100

Scripts, in pattern search, 232

Search. *See* Finding entries; Replace

Sections of book rearranged, adjusting references to, 90–91

“See,” other than in cross-reference, 108

*See also* references. *See* Cross-references

*See* references. *See* Cross-references

**Segment Order** drag list, 295

**Segment** pop-up menu, 286

Segments, page references, 125–126, 129–134. *See also* Multi-part references

**Select All** Edit menu item, 264

Selecting entries, 61–62, 62*f*

Selecting text of entry, shortcuts for, 20*t*

Semicolon (;)

finding entries by beginning text in subheadings, 66, 250

separating cross-references, 106, 107

sorting, 151, 156

Separating punctuation

cross-references, 106, 107

page references, 124–125

**Separator** text box

Cross-References, 289

Page References, 289

Serial publications, cumulating indexes to, 225–226

Set-out style. *See* Indented index style

Sets of records. *See* Groups of records

SGML. *See* Markup tags, for formatted indexes

*SGML Tagged Text*, pop-up menu item, Save To panel, 260

**SGML Tags** tab, 301

SHIFT key, 66*t*

dragging and dropping text, 37

in editing shortcuts, flipping fields, 40

pasting text, 36

reversing flip mode, 40

selecting entries, 61

selecting text, 20*t*

while starting Cindex, restoring original settings, 215

Shortcuts

adding and editing entries, 20*t*

automatic completion of record fields, 35–36

customizing toolbars, 13–14

finding records, 66*t*

function keys, 42

- 
- increment/decrement locator, 38
  - Short/Medium/Long** buttons, 278
  - Show Fonts** Format menu item, 274–275
  - Show in Formatted View** check box, 257
  - Show Numbers** View menu item, 273
  - Show Open Panel** radio button, 252
  - Show Toolbar** View menu item, 274
  - Simple alphabetizing, 149
    - restrictions, 156, 157, 158
  - Single line spacing, 178
  - Size. *See also* Record size
    - indentation units, 177–178
    - index statistics, 216–218
    - limits, abbreviations, 44
    - paper, for printing, 78
    - text. *See* Text size
  - Size** pop-up menu
    - Grouping Entries panel, 279
    - Headers & Footers panel, 278
    - Headings panel, 282
  - Sky Index, importing records from, 205
  - .sky7 filename extension, 205
  - Slash (/), sorting, 151
    - ignoring in word-by-word sort, 156
  - Small caps. *See also* Text style
    - applying to text, 32–33
    - display in record-entry window, 33
    - in *User's Guide*, 5
  - 'Smart' flip, 39–40
  - Smart Flip** check box, 254
  - Smart Flip Words** Document menu item, 290
  - Society of Biblical Literature (SBL)*, alphabetizing principles, 153
  - Solidus (/). *See* Slash (/)
  - Sort** Tools menu item, 293–296, 294f
  - Sorted view, 61
    - status indicator, 54f
    - toolbar button, 61
  - Sorted** View menu item, 274
  - Sorting, 145–163
    - alphabetically. *See also* Alphabetizing
      - toolbar button, 61
    - cross-references. *See* Cross-references
    - embedded index entries, 199
    - field evaluation order, 145–149
    - identical records, 152
    - ignoring fields, 146–147, 160
    - ignoring lowest subheading, 148–149
    - letter-by-letter. *See* Letter-by-letter alphabetizing
    - letters, 150
      - in page references, 131–132
      - precedence, 155
    - numbers, 151–152, 157
      - as literal characters, 162–163, 162f
      - precedence, 155
      - spelling out, 160–161, 161f
    - overriding sorting rules, 158–161
    - in page reference order, 147–148
      - toolbar button for, 61, 149
    - page references. *See* Sorting page references
    - punctuation, 156
    - saving preferred settings for, 214–215
    - shortcuts, 149
    - simple. *See* Simple alphabetizing
    - symbols
      - as literal characters, 162–163, 162f
      - precedence, 155
      - spelling out, 160–161
    - word-by-word. *See* Word-by-word alphabetizing
  - Sorting page references, 129–136, 143–144
    - ascending/descending, 134
    - ignoring, 160
    - letters in, 131–132
    - multi-part
      - precedence of segment types, 129–131
      - segments evaluation order, 131–132
    - multiple in entry, display order, 143–144
      - forcing, 134–136, 135f, 136f
    - overriding standard rules, 134–136, 135f, 136f
    - by text styles, 131
  - Space character
    - in alphabetizing, 150
    - leading and trailing, 21, 26
    - omitting between references, 21
    - superfluous, removing, 36
  - Spacing
    - alphabetical groups, 178–179
    - columns, 166, 166f
    - lines, 173, 178–179
    - main headings, 179
  - Special characters
    - angle brackets (< >). *See* Angle brackets (< >)
    - backslash (\). *See* Backslash (\)
    - bar (|), to override format, 176
    - braces ({}). *See* Braces ({})
    - in headers and footers, 169
    - in patterns, 230–239
-

- 
- Special characters (*Continued*)
- in replacement patterns, 240–245
  - tilde (~). *See* Tilde (~)
  - in titles to groups of entries, 171
- Special Characters** Edit menu item, 271
- Special tags, document markup, 197
- Special Tags** tab, 303
- Special text field, for comment or URL, 30, 211
- Spelling check, 95–103
- alphanumeric sequences, 102
  - among specified records, 99–100
  - capital letters, 102
  - clearing list of words to be ignored, 103
  - cross-references, 101
  - dictionaries, 95
    - medical terms, 101
    - personal, 97–98
  - duplicate words, 97
  - languages, 95, 102
  - numerals, 102
  - page references, 101
  - in specified record fields, 100–101
  - suggesting alternatives, 96–97
    - enabling/disabling, 102
- Spelling** Edit menu item, 269–271, 269*f*
- Spelling out numbers, symbols, and abbreviations, 160–162, 161*f*
- Spin-off indexes, 227–228
- Splitting index into parts, 227–228
- Splitting record fields, 38–39, 91–94. *See also* Reconciling headings
- Spreads of page references. *See* Range of page references
- Square brackets ([ ])
- mismatched, in records, 26
  - in patterns, 230–233
  - in *User's Guide*, 5
- Stamping records
- date and time, 27
  - user ID, 27
- Standard dictionary, spelling check, 95
- Standard font. *See* Default font
- Standard settings. *See* Default settings; Preferences
- Start/Ignore/Delete/Resume** button, 270
- Starting an index, 8–14
- Startup, opening indexes on, 11–12
- Stationery pad. *See* Template
- Statistics, 215–218, 216*f*
- record groups, 218*f*, 224
- Status line, 54*f*
- record window, 19, 19*f*, 49
- Storing text
- on function keys. *See* Function keys
  - for recall via abbreviation. *See* Abbreviation(s)
- Strings. *See* Text strings
- Structure
- cross-references, 106–108
  - page references, 124–125
  - records, 16–18, 209–212
- Structure Elements** tab, 302
- Structure markup tags, 195–196
- SGML, 195–196
  - XML, 191, 193–194
- Structure Tags** tab, 303
- Style
- index, 172–180, 173*f*. *See also* Indented index style; Run-in index style
  - saved settings, 183
  - text. *See* Text style
- Style and Layout** Document menu item, 280–281, 280*f*
- Style** button
- Grouping Entries panel, 279
  - Headers & Footers panel, 278
  - Headings panel, 282
  - Margins & Columns panel, 277
  - Page References panel, 286
- Style Precedence** drag list, 295
- Style sheet, 183
- icon, 6
- Style tags
- SGML document markup, 196
  - XML document markup, 194
- Style Tags** tab, 303
- Styled Strings** Document menu item, 286–287, 287*f*
- Subhead Indent** buttons, 261
- Subheading(s), 7. *See also* Sub-subheadings
- creating, from modified headings, 91–94
  - cross-references as, 108
    - displaying in formatted view, 117–118
  - cross-references from, formatting, 118
  - display in draft view, 58–59
  - entering in records, 21
  - finding entries by, 66–67, 250
  - formatting
    - draft view, 58
    - indentation, 176–178
    - styles, 173–176



---

limiting text replacement to, 86  
obligatory, 30, 211  
orphaned (redundant), 92–94  
searching among, 73  
SGML markup tags for, 195–196  
sorting, 145–147, 155–156  
    ignoring, 146–149  
    ignoring leading words, 155–156  
special last, 30, 211  
verifying cross-references to, 110–111  
XML markup tags for, 193  
Subpatterns, 233–234  
    in replacement, 242–245  
Subscript characters, 32–33. *See also* Text style  
Subsets of records. *See* Groups of records  
Substitute  
    font. *See* Font, substitution  
    text. *See* Replace  
Sub-subheadings  
    modified indented style, 175  
    modified run-in style, 174–175  
    orphaned (redundant), 91–94  
**Suffix** text box, Cross-References panel, 283  
**Suggest** button, 270  
Suggested alternatives, spelling check, 96–97, 102  
Summary view, 59–60, 59*f*  
**Summary** View menu item, 273  
Superscript characters, 32–33. *See also* Text style  
**Suppress all References** check box  
    Cross-References panel, 286  
    Page References panel, 286  
**Suppress** check box, Headings panel, 282  
**Suppress Repeated Parts** check box, 285  
**Suppress to** text box, 285  
Suppressing. *See also* Hiding  
    components of multi-part references  
        leading parts, display, 140–141  
        in sorting, 131–132  
    cross-references, 119  
    deleted entries, 49  
    headings and subheadings, 181  
    leading/trailing punctuation in references, 194, 196  
    page references, 144  
    repeated headings, overriding, 175  
Suspect cross-references, 109–110  
**Switch to Draft View** check box, 254  
Symbol font, imported records, 205  
Symbols

entering in records, 22  
grouping formatted entries, 171  
patterns for, 231  
sorting, 151  
    filing order, 155  
    as literal characters, 162–163, 162*f*  
    spelling out, 160–161  
System preferences, Keyboard, 67

## T

Tab character  
    as lead indent to subheading, 190–191  
    markup tag for, 197  
TAB key, 21, 66*t*  
    editing text, 20*t*  
    expanding abbreviation, 46  
Tab-delimited text  
    exported records, 200–201  
    imported records, 204–205  
.tag filename extension, export document, 198  
Tags. *See* Markup tags, for formatted indexes  
Template  
    icon, 6  
    index format. *See* Formatting  
    index structure, 215  
    for new index, 215  
    for patterns. *See* Patterns  
    record fields, 212  
    suppressing parts of multi-part references, 140–141  
Temporary group of records, 48, 63–64, 70  
**Temporary Group** View menu item, 273  
Temporary page numbers, indexing with, 247–248  
Text editor, importing records from, 204–205  
Text fields. *See* Record fields  
Text size  
    default settings, 12, 31  
    displayed entries, 55  
    in headers and footers, 169–170  
    for headings, 181  
    in style sheets, 183  
    for titles to groups of entries, 172  
Text strings  
    finding in entries, 68–78, 69*f*  
    replacing in entries, 81–86  
    style automatically applied, 182–183, 182*f*

- 
- Text style, 32–33
- adjusting punctuation around, 179–180
  - automatically applied
    - cross-references, 29–31, 119–120
    - headings, 180–181
    - page references, 142–143
    - specified words and phrases, 182–183, 182<sup>f</sup>
  - in automatically completed entries, 36
  - boldface italic
    - SGML markup tag for, 196
    - XML markup tag for, 194
  - in cross-reference verification, 111
  - cross-references, 29–30, 120. *See also* Cross-references
    - in imported records, 206
  - discarding
    - in drag-and-drop, 37
    - in paste, 36
  - in drag-and-drop, 37
  - in embedded index entries, 199
  - in exported records, 200
  - finding entries using, 70–71
  - in function key text, 42
  - headers and footers, 169–170
  - headings, 181. *See also* Headings
  - hidden, 199
  - missing from font, 33
  - page references, 127–128, 142–143
    - sorting, 131
  - preferences, 183
  - removing, 33
  - replacing, 83–84
  - SGML markup tags for, 196
  - for titles to groups of entries, 172
  - XML markup tags for, 194
- Text** text box, Grouping Entries panel, 279
- Text-only documents, saving formatted indexes, 187–188
- Tilde (~)
- as literal character, 23, 163
  - in records imported from Macrex, 206
  - with smart flip prefix/suffix, 40
  - in sorting entries
    - overriding ignored subheading prefixes, 156
    - reserved characters as literal characters, 163
    - symbols and numbers as literal characters, 162–163, 162<sup>f</sup>
  - suppressing cross-reference recognition, 108
- Time
- in headers and footers, in index printed by Cindex, 170
  - between keystrokes, 67
  - record creation/modification, 27
    - finding entries by, 71–72
    - replacing entries by, 84–85
  - work on index, 216
- Title. *See also* Headers and footers
- to group of entries, 170–172
- To Level** pop-up menu, 277
- Toolbar buttons
- main window
    - alphabetical sort, 61
    - default font, 31
    - draft formatted view, 56
    - formatted view, 53
    - index style, 54
    - page number sort, 61
    - view all records, 63
  - record entry window
    - flipping fields, 39
    - hiding text from sorting, 159
    - including text for sorting, 161
    - moving through records, 27–28, 34
    - propagating changes, 40
    - restoring record text, 34
- Toolbars. *See also* Toolbar buttons
- customizing, 13–14
  - hiding/showing, 14
- Tools menu, 290–303
- Check References**, 290–291, 290<sup>f</sup>
  - Reconcile Headings**, 291–292, 291<sup>f</sup>
  - Manage Cross-References**, 292
  - Alter References**, 293, 293<sup>f</sup>
  - Sort**, 293–295, 294<sup>f</sup>
  - Function Keys**, 299
  - Compress**, 296, 296<sup>f</sup>
  - Expand**, 297
  - Count Records**, 297, 297<sup>f</sup>
  - Index Statistics**, 298, 298<sup>f</sup>
  - Abbreviations**, 298–299, 299<sup>f</sup>
  - Function Keys**, 299
  - Fonts**, 299–300, 300<sup>f</sup>
  - Markup Tags**, 300–303, 301<sup>f</sup>
  - Groups**, 304, 304<sup>f</sup>
- Top** text box, 276
- Track New Entries** check box, 254
- Track Source** check box, 254
- Trailing punctuation
- cross-references, 116, 118
  - headings, 181
-

---

page references, 141  
**Trailing Punctuation**, Headings panel, 282  
Trailing spaces, 21, 26  
Translating characters  
    connecting inclusive page ranges, 137–138  
    importing records, 206, 207  
Triple-clicking, selecting field, 20*t*  
**Type Precedence** drag list, 295  
Type size. *See* Text size  
Type style. *See* Text style  
Typeface  
    in index entries. *See* Font(s); Text style  
    in *User's Guide*, 5  
Typesetting. *See* Saving documents  
Typographical errors, correcting. *See* Spelling check  
Typography. *See* Font(s); Text size; Text style

## U

UCP markup standard, 187  
Underlining. *See also* Text style  
    applying to text, 32–33  
Undifferentiated page reference strings, checking, 128  
Undo. *See also* Reverting  
    discarding changes to records, 34  
    drag or paste records, 49  
**Undo** Edit menu item, 263  
Unformatted view, 60–61, 60*f*  
**Unformatted** View menu item, 273  
Unicode characters  
    character categories, 231  
    entering in records, 22  
    in exported formatted index, 188  
    in exported index records, 201, 202  
    in imported index records, 204  
    ordering, 150, 155  
    script sets, 232  
    in SGML tagged text, 197  
    sorting accented letters, 150  
    translation, 206  
    in XML tagged text, 192  
Unique main headings, count, 216  
**Unit** pop-up menu  
    Margins & Columns panel, 276  
    Style and Layout panel, indentation, 281  
Units of measurement  
    indentation, 176*f*; 177–178  
    line spacing, 178–179, 178*f*

    margins and columns, 166, 166*f*  
University of Chicago Press markup standard, 187  
Unknown character (), 207  
Unnecessary records, compressing index entries, 220–222  
“Unpacking” references, 219–220  
Unsorted view, 61  
Unusual spellings, sorting, 160–161, 162*f*  
Update Cindex, check for, 5, 12  
Uppercase letters. *See also* Case-sensitivity  
    collation order, 150  
    conversion. *See* Case conversion  
    ignoring, spelling check, 102  
    in page references, 126  
    reconciling heading levels and, 93  
    sorting, 150  
URLs, in records, 30, 211  
**Use Additional Dictionaries** check list, 271  
User, finding records made by, 72  
User dictionary, 97–98  
User ID, 12, 19*f*  
    finding records by, 72  
    stamping records with, 27  
**User ID** text box  
    Find panel, 266  
    Preferences, 253  
User preferences. *See* Preferences  
UTF-8. *See* Unicode characters  
**UTF-8 Encoding/Mac Roman Encoding** radio buttons, 261

## V

**Variant** pop-up menu, 280  
Verifying cross-references, 108–111  
    error report, 109–110  
    while entering in record, 42  
Verso pages. *See* Even numbered pages, in index printed by Cindex  
*versus* and *vs.*, automatically italicized, 182  
Vertical bar (|)  
    custom run-in headings, 176  
    in patterns, 237  
**View Depth** hierarchical menu, 274  
View menu, 272–274  
    **Go To**, 272, 272*f*  
    **All Records**, 272  
    **New Records**, 272  
    **Group**, 273  
    **Temporary Group**, 273

---

View menu (*Continued*)

**Full Format**, 273  
**Draft Format**, 273  
**Summary**, 273  
**Hide by Attribute**, 273  
**Unformatted**, 273  
**Show Numbers**, 273  
**View Depth**, 274  
**Wrap Lines**, 274  
**Sorted**, 274  
**Hide/Show Toolbar**, 274  
**Customize Toolbar**, 274

Viewing, markup tag sets, 192

Views and viewing, 53–61. *See also* Draft formatted view; Fully formatted view

adding/editing records, 57  
all records, toolbar button, 63  
defining scope of operation, 249–251  
deleted records, 49, 55  
groups of records, 63  
hidden records, 55–56  
labeled records, 55–56  
multiple columns, displaying, 166  
orphaned subheadings, 92  
printing, 78–80  
in record number order, 61  
restoring after editing, 34  
sorted entries, 61  
summary of entries, 59–60, 59<sup>f</sup>  
unformatted view, 60–61, 60<sup>f</sup>  
unsorted entries, 61

Visibility, of records, 55–56

Volume identifiers. *See also* Page references

adding to page references, using patterns, 240–241  
cumulating and combining indexes, 226  
repeated, suppressing in formatted display, 140–141  
selecting among  
    altering references, 245–246  
    removing references, 246–247

*vs.* and *versus*, automatically italicized, 182

## W

### Warnings

badly-specified range of records, 250  
impermissible text in record field, 26–27, 212  
insufficient text space in record  
    dropping text, 37

expanding abbreviation, 46

function keys, 42

pasting text, 36

mismatched parentheses or square brackets, 26

mismatched quotation marks, 26

missing/malformed page references, 41

Web addresses, in records, 30, 211

Whole words, searching for, 74, 82, 86

Width, margins and columns, 166–167

Windows. *See also* Main window; Record Window

abbreviations, 44

function key strings, 42

Windows\* (Microsoft)

    Cindex files and documents compatible with, 6

    saving formatted indexes for, 190

Word boundary, in pattern, 238

Word processor

    exporting indexes to. *See* Microsoft Word; Saving documents

    importing records prepared on, 204–205

Word-by-word alphabetizing, 149, 152–154. *See also* Alphabetizing

    angle brackets, spaces and hyphens within, 159

    hyphen and slash, treatment of, 151, 156

    overriding rules for, 158–161

Work time, 216

**Wrap Lines** View menu item, 274

Wrapping long entries, unformatted view, 61

**Write in Record Number Order** check box, 260

Writing order, exported records, 202

## X

XML document markup, 186

    tags, 192–194

XML Records, 9

    exporting, 200

    icon, 6

    importing, 203

*XML Records*, pop-up menu item, Save To panel, 259

*XML Tagged Text*, pop-up menu item, Save To panel, 260

**XML Tags** tab, 301

XPress document tags, 187

## Y

Years, rearranging in dates, via patterns, 244–245